



PHILIPS
RESPIRONICS

Trilogy Evo



Clinical Manual

REF 1134483



Respironics Inc.
1001 Murry Ridge Lane
Murrysville, PA 15668 USA

Respironics Deutschland GmbH & Co. KG
Gewerbestrasse 17
82211 Herrsching, Germany



EC REP

1134483 R06
ZL 05/07/2019
EN-INTL

Trilogy Evo

Clinical Manual

For Technical Support and Customer Service, contact Philips Respironics Customer Service:

1-724-387-4000

1-800-345-6443 (toll-free)

+49 8152 93060 (international)

USA

Respironics Inc.

1001 Murry Ridge Lane Murrysville, PA 15668

Email: service@philips.com, clinical@philips.com

Web: www.philips.com/healthcare

Authorized European Representative:

Respironics Deutschland GmbH & Co. KG

Gewerbestrasse 17

82211 Herrsching Germany

+49 8152 93060

Copyright © Koninklijke Philips N.V., 2019. All rights reserved.

This work is protected under Title 17 of the United States copyright code and is the sole property of Philips Respironics. No part of this document may be copied or otherwise reproduced, or stored in any electronic information retrieval system, except as specifically permitted under United States copyright law, without the prior written consent of Philips Respironics.

Trilogy Evo is the registered trademark of Respironics Inc.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Philips Respironics is under license.

Dawn Ultra is a registered trademark of Procter & Gamble.

Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Illustrations and screen images in this document are representative depictions.

Contents

1. Introduction	
1.1 Overview	4
1.2 Device Usage	4
1.3 Package Contents	5
1.4 Warnings	5
1.5 Symbols Glossary	10
1.6 How to Contact Philips Respironics	12
2. About Trilogy Evo	
2.1 Overview	13
2.2 Parts of Trilogy Evo	13
2.3 Parts of the User Interface	16
2.4 Monitoring Window	18
3. Therapy Modes and Controls	
3.1 Overview	20
3.2 Therapy Modes Principles	20
3.3 Control Modes	23
3.4 Spontaneous Modes	28
3.5 Mixed Modes	31
3.6 AVAPS-AE Mode	36
3.7 Therapy Features	38
3.8 Therapy Control Settings	41
4. Device Setup	
4.1 Overview	43
4.2 Placement	43
4.3 Connecting AC Power	43
4.4 Installing Filters	44
4.5 Connecting a Circuit	44
4.6 Connecting External Patient Monitors	48
4.7 Adding Oxygen	48
4.8 Starting Trilogy Evo	49
5. Device Operation	
5.1 Overview	50
5.2 Clinical Assessment	50
5.3 Setting Up a New Patient	50
5.4 About Prescriptions	50
5.5 Starting and Stopping Therapy	52

5.6	Setting the Access Level	53
5.7	Actions During Ventilation.....	54
6.	Alarms and System Messages	
6.1	Overview.....	56
6.2	About Alarms.....	56
6.3	The Alarm List	57
6.4	Setting and Changing Alarms.....	58
6.5	Setting the Alarm Volume.....	59
6.6	Responding to an Alarm	59
6.7	Alarms and System Messages	60
6.8	Patient-related Alarm Availability by Therapy Mode.....	82
6.9	Testing Alarms.....	83
7.	Device Options	
7.1	Overview.....	88
7.2	Device Options.....	88
7.3	Calibration.....	89
7.4	Data Transfer.....	92
7.5	Information	93
7.6	Alarm and Event Log.....	94
7.7	Prescription Preferences.....	95
8.	Cleaning and Disinfection	
8.1	Overview.....	97
8.2	Exterior Cleaning and Disinfection.....	97
8.3	Air Path Disinfection	99
8.4	Cleaning the Detachable Battery.....	99
8.5	Rinsing the Air-Inlet Foam Filter	101
9.	Service and Maintenance	
9.1	Service Overview.....	102
9.2	Disposal	102
9.3	Daily Maintenance.....	102
9.4	Replacing the Air-Inlet Foam Filter	103
9.5	Replacing the Particulate Filter	103
9.6	Preparing the Device for Use by a Different Patient.....	104
10.	Accessories	
10.1	Overview.....	106
10.2	Portability and Travel Accessories	106
10.3	Power Accessories	106
10.4	Patient Circuits and Circuit Accessories.....	106
10.5	Monitors and Sensors.....	108

10.6	Filters	110
10.7	Oxygen	110
10.8	Communications Cables	111
10.9	Remote Alarm and Nurse Call	111
10.10	USB Flash Drive	111
11.	Power Management	
11.1	Overview	112
11.2	AC Power	112
11.3	External Battery	112
11.4	Detachable Battery	113
11.5	Internal Battery	114
11.6	Battery Status	115
11.7	Power Loss	115
11.8	Power Icons	116
12.	Connectivity	
12.1	Overview	117
12.2	External Systems	117
12.3	Wireless	117
12.4	Connectivity Actions	118
13.	Technical Data	
13.1	Overview	119
13.2	Specifications	119
13.3	Pneumatic Diagram	125
14.	Regulatory Information	
14.1	Standards Compliance	126
14.2	EMC Information	127
14.3	Wireless	132
14.4	Software Licensing	133
15.	Glossary	
15.1	Glossary of Terms	134
	Warranty	

1. Introduction

1.1 Overview

The Trilogy Evo ventilator provides invasive and non-invasive, positive pressure ventilation to pediatric through adult patients with a minimum weight of 2.5 kg. It is an electronically controlled, pneumatic ventilation system that is compatible with a range of accessories to provide a variety of therapy modes.

The Trilogy Evo ventilator is a medical device intended for use by qualified, trained personnel under the direction of a physician according to its technical specifications. For training and support materials, see the Trilogy Evo website:

www.usa.philips.com/healthcare/product/HCD52110X11B/trilogyevo

1.2 Device Usage

1.2.1 Intended Use

The Trilogy Evo ventilator provides continuous or intermittent positive pressure ventilation for the care of individuals who require mechanical ventilation. Trilogy Evo is intended for pediatric through adult patients weighing at least 2.5 kg. The ventilator can measure, display, record, and alarm SpO₂, FiO₂, CO₂, and Pulse Rate data when integrated with the appropriate accessories. The ventilator is suitable for use in institutional, home, and nonemergency transport settings for example wheelchair, or personal vehicle. It may be used for both invasive and non-invasive ventilation.

The AVAPS-AE mode is intended for noninvasive use in adult and pediatric patients weighing over 10kg with Obstructive Sleep Apnea (OSA), Respiratory Insufficiency and Respiratory Failure.

1.2.2 Environments of Use

The Trilogy Evo ventilator is intended to be used:

- In both home and institutional environments.
- While attached to a wheelchair, bedrail, gurney, roll stand, or sitting on a flat surface such as a table or nightstand.
- While transporting patients within and between facilities and as needed for home use, such as an automobile or commercial aircraft.

1.2.3 Contraindications

If the patient has any of the following conditions, consult the patient's health care professional before using noninvasive ventilation:

- An inability to maintain a patent airway or adequately clear secretions
- At risk to aspirate gastric contents

- Acute sinusitis or otitis media
- Epistaxis, causing pulmonary aspiration of blood
- Hypotension

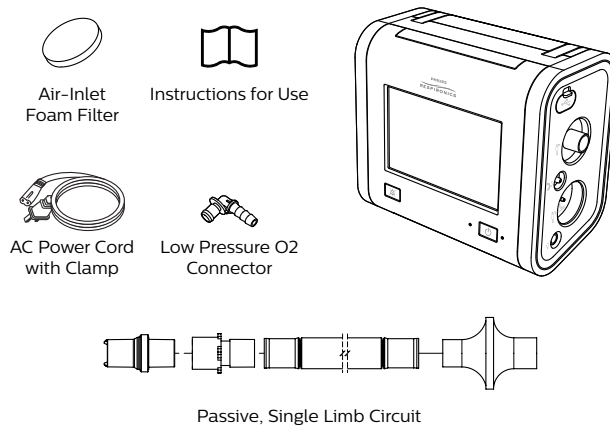
The AVAPS feature is contraindicated for patients less than 10 kg.

1.2.4 Users

Users of the Trilogy Evo ventilator include: patients (adult), properly trained family and non-professional caregivers, clinicians (respiratory and non-respiratory), technicians, physicians, and service providers.

1.3 Package Contents

Package contents may vary based on model.



1.4 Warnings

1.4.1 Environmental

- You should not operate the device in the presence of flammable gasses.
- Do not cover the ventilator or place in a position that affects proper operation.
- Do not block the cooling and intake air vents.
- Do not operate the device in an environment that is outside the specified ranges. Using the ventilator outside of this temperature range or above this altitude can affect the device performance.
- Do not expose the device or detachable battery to temperatures above 60° C (140° F) during use or above 70° C (158° F) during storage. This will reduce battery life and may increase the risk of fire or damage the battery.

- Do not use the device within magnetic resonance (MR) environments. Using the device within MR environments may affect the device or MR device performance, damage the device, or harm individuals.
- The device is not intended for anesthesia applications and is not intended to be permanently mounted in EMS vehicles.
- When disposing of this device or any accessories, ensure you comply with your local regulations. Dispose of any potentially biohazardous waste according to your local regulations.
- This device is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified in “EMC Information.” Ensure the environment is compatible. Portable and mobile RF communications equipment, including cables, should be no closer to any part of the device than the recommended separation distance indicated in “EMC Information.”
- This device is not made with natural rubber latex.
- Do not use the ventilator in a hyperbaric chamber.
- Do not use the ventilator in the presence of nitric or nitrous oxide.
- Do not use the ventilator with helium or in the presence of mixtures in combination with helium.
- Route all cables in a manner to prevent injury, such as tripping or strangulation, to the patient and caregiver.
- If the device has been stored at very high or very low temperatures, allow 2 hours for the device to reach ambient temperature before using. This allows adequate time for the battery to reach its operating temperature range for charging and discharging.
- This device is not defibrillation-proof.

1.4.2 Clinical

- Before placing a patient on the ventilator, perform a clinical assessment. Considerations should include:
 - Choosing alarm settings
 - Whether alternative ventilation equipment is required
 - Whether alternative monitors are required, such as SpO₂, PR, FiO₂, or EtCO₂ monitor with alarm
- Trilogy Evo is a restricted medical device. It is designed for use by respiratory therapists or other trained and qualified caregivers under the supervision of a physician. Only the supervising physician's orders authorize changes to the prescription and other device settings. Before using Trilogy Evo, you must read and understand this manual.
- The caregiver or health care professional is responsible for verifying any changes to the device, prescription, or other settings before applying changes. The caregiver or health care professional is responsible for ensuring settings are correct and compatible with the patient. Using the wrong prescription for a patient may result in improper therapy, lack of appropriate safety monitoring, or risk of death or injury to the patient.

1.4.3 Alternate Ventilation

- To avoid patient death or serious injury, ventilator-dependent patients require immediate access to alternate ventilation equipment, such as a back-up ventilator or manual resuscitator.
- Qualified personnel should monitor ventilator-dependent patients continuously. Personnel should be prepared to provide alternate therapy in the event of ventilator failure or inoperative equipment.

1.4.4 Alarms

- Do not rely on any single alarm to detect a disconnected circuit.
- Respond immediately to any high priority alarm. It may indicate a potentially life-threatening condition.
- Visually monitor the patient and ventilator at all times during an alarm silence period. Allowing alarms to continue without intervention may result in harm to the patient.
- If the high-priority, Low Battery alarm occurs, immediately connect the ventilator to an alternate power source. If no alternate power source is available, immediately place the patient on an alternate source of ventilation.
- When using a remote alarm or nurse call system, fully test the system by verifying that you can hear the ventilator's audible alarms on the remote alarm or nurse call system.
- Test the operation of the circuit disconnect function daily and whenever the patient circuit is changed. An increase in circuit resistance can prevent proper operation of some alarms.
- When adding any components to the breathing system, the flow resistance and dead space of the added components such as humidifiers, speaking valves, Heat Moisture Exchangers (HMEs) and filters should be carefully considered in relation to the potential for adverse effects on the patient's ventilator management and device alarms.
- Do not set the Low Peak Inspiratory Pressure alarm too low, or the system may not detect large circuit leaks or a patient disconnect.

1.4.5 Accessories

- Use Trilogy Evo only with accessories intended for use with this device. For a list of accessories, such as patient interfaces, circuits, exhalation ports, and cables, see the Trilogy Evo accessories guide. Ensure accessories and parts are compatible before you connect a patient to the device. Consult the accessory's instructions before use. Electronic accessories that are not intended for use with this device may cause adverse performance including: increased electromagnetic emissions or decreased electromagnetic immunity of this equipment.
- The air-inlet foam filter is required to protect the ventilator from dirt and dust. See the "Service and Maintenance" chapter for maintenance instructions.
- Be certain that any bacterial filter used with this device complies with ISO 23328-1 and ISO 23328-2. To prevent patient or ventilator contamination, you must use a Philips Respironics-approved main flow bacterial filter on the patient gas outlet port. Filters not approved by Philips Respironics may degrade system performance. For a list of accessories, see the Trilogy Evo accessories guide.

- Nebulization or humidification can increase the resistance of bacterial filters. Monitor the breathing system frequently for increased resistance and blockage.
- Gas added by the use of a pneumatic nebulizer can adversely affect ventilator accuracy.
- When using a passive circuit an exhalation port is required.
- Do not use antistatic or conductive hoses or conductive patient tubing with the device.
- The ventilator system (used with patient circuit accessories, such as patient interface devices, humidifiers, water traps, and circuit tubing) may contain small parts that could result in a choking hazard.
- Be certain that any humidifier in use, including any heated breathing tube, complies with ISO 8185 or ISO 80601-2-74.
- Do not use mouthpiece ventilation for patients less than 5 years old due to physiological and neurological developmental requirements and due to neuromuscular coordination requirements for effective therapy.
- Be certain that any heat and moisture exchanger in use complies with ISO 9360-1 or ISO 9360-2.
- Only connect devices recommended by Philips Respironics to the USB ports. Connecting other devices could result in patient injury or damage to the ventilator.
- The Micro USB port is for service personnel only.

1.4.6 Oxygen

1.4.6.1 High Pressure Oxygen

- This device may be is equipped with an oxygen blender that can deliver oxygen to the patient within a range of 21-100% concentration.
- When using the oxygen blender, use the internal FiO₂ accessory to verify the oxygen concentration in the delivered gas.
- Substantial leaks may reduce the inspired oxygen concentration to less than the expected value. Use appropriate patient monitoring, as medically indicated, such as an alarming pulse oximeter.
- Do not connect the device to an unregulated oxygen source.
- Do not use oxygen while smoking or in the presence of an open flame.

1.4.6.2 Low Flow Oxygen

- Do not use oxygen while smoking or in the presence of an open flame.
- Turn off the low flow oxygen when the device is not in use.

1.4.7 Cleaning and Maintenance

- To avoid electric shock, do not remove the enclosure cover. Only service personnel should remove the enclosure.
- Do not immerse the device or allow liquids into any of the controls or the interior of the enclosure as the device may be damaged. If this occurs, contact your equipment provider for assistance. Use only the agents and methods described in this manual to clean and disinfect the device. After cleaning and disinfecting, ensure the device is completely dry before reattaching accessories and connectors and before reconnecting it to a power source. Do not use solvents, polishes, or any oily substances on the device, as they are flammable.
- If the device has been exposed to rain or dampness, dry the device including the area around the power cord connection with the power cord disconnected from the device before applying AC power.
- Repairs and adjustments must be performed by service personnel only. Unauthorized repairs and adjustments could cause death or injury, invalidate the warranty, or result in costly device damage.
- If you notice any unexplained changes in the performance of the device, if it is making unusual sounds, if the device or detachable battery is dropped, if water is spilled into the enclosure, or if the enclosure is cracked or broken, discontinue use and contact Philips Respironics.
- To avoid electrical shock, always unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before cleaning the ventilator.
- Periodically inspect electrical cords, cables, and the detachable battery pack for damage or signs of wear. Discontinue use and replace if damaged.
- Any changes or modifications made to the device that are not expressly approved by Philips Respironics may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

1.4.8 Power

- An external battery should only be connected to the ventilator using the Philips Respironics approved External Battery Cable. This cable is fused, pre-wired, and properly terminated to ensure safe connection.
- Use only the Philips Respironics Detachable Battery.

1.5 Symbols Glossary

Symbol	Definition	Symbol	Definition
Symbols on the Device Label and Package Label			
	Refer to instruction manual		Manufacturer
	Waste electrical & electronic equipment		Date of manufacture
	For airline use. Complies with RTCA DO-160G section 21, category M		Class II equipment
	Bluetooth® symbol		Type BF applied part
IP22	IP22: protection against finger-sized objects and protected against dripping water when tilted up to 15 degrees.		Serial number
	Catalog number		Humidity limit
	Batch code		Temperature limit
	MR unsafe		
Symbols on the Device			
	On/Off (Standby) button		Low flow oxygen inlet
	Alarm Silence button		Flow sensor cable connection
	USB port		Proximal pressure out
	Nurse call connection		AEV control line
	DC power (direct current)		Patient in

Symbol	Definition	Symbol	Definition
	AC power (alternating current)		Patient out
 O ₂ 41-87 psi (280-600 kPa) 1-150 L/min	High Pressure Oxygen inlet		
Symbols on the Screen – General			
	Prescription settings	100% O ₂	Deliver 100% oxygen
	Home window		Delete prescription
	Options		Touch screen lock
	Help		Edit
	Automatic algorithm restart		Full access indicator
	Device actions menu		Limited access
Symbols on the Screen – Alarms			
	Alarms tab		Medium or low priority alarm
 2:00	Alarm silence		System message
	High priority alarm		Alarm reset
Symbols on the Screen – Connectivity			
	Bluetooth data transfer		USB data transfer
Symbols on the Screen – Monitoring Views See “Monitoring Window” section			
Symbols on the Screen – Power See “Power Icons” section			

1.6 How to Contact Philips Respironics

If you need help setting up, using or maintaining Trilogy Evo, or if this device does not perform as expected, contact Philips Respironics.

Call Philips Respironics Customer Service at:

- 1-724-387-4000
- 1-800-345-6443 (toll-free)
- +49 8152 93060 (international)

Respironics, Inc.
1001 Murry Ridge Lane
Murrysville, PA 15668

Respironics Deutschland GmbH & Co. KG
Gewerbestrasse 17
82211 Herrsching, Germany

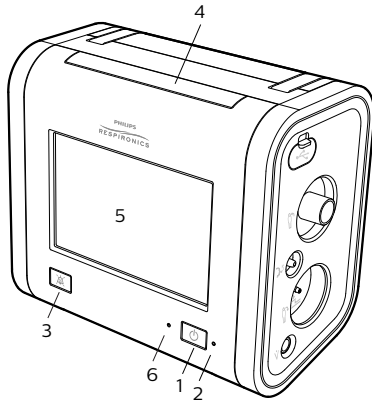
2. About Trilogy Evo

2.1 Overview

This chapter describes the physical parts of the device and the parts of the user interface.

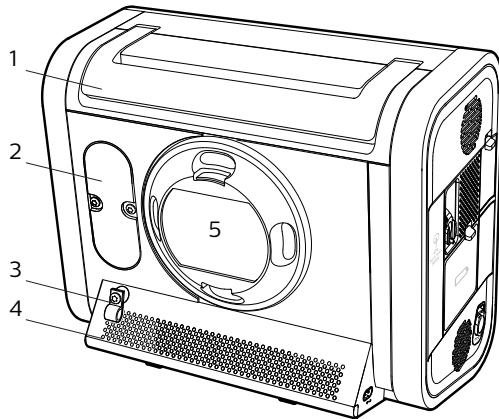
2.2 Parts of Trilogy Evo

2.2.1 Front Panel



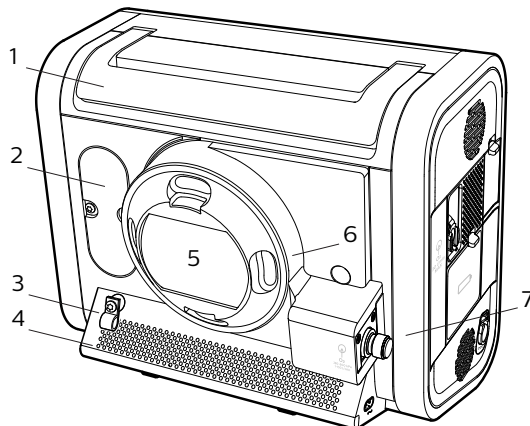
1. On/Off (Standby) button
2. AC power indicator
3. Alarm Silence button/alarm indicator
4. Alarm bar
5. Touch screen
6. Ambient light sensor

2.2.2 Back Panel



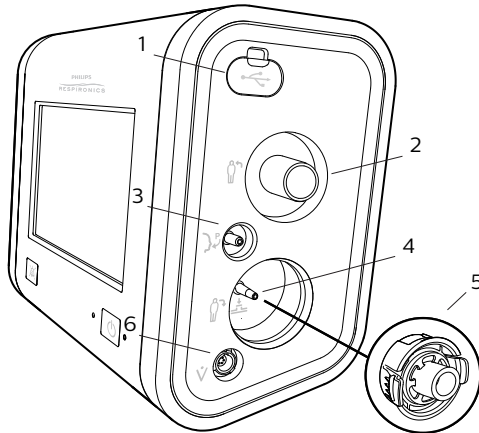
1. Carrying handle
2. FiO₂ sensor access panel
3. Power cord retention clip
4. Air vents
5. Air inlet

2.2.3 Back Panel with Oxygen Blending Module



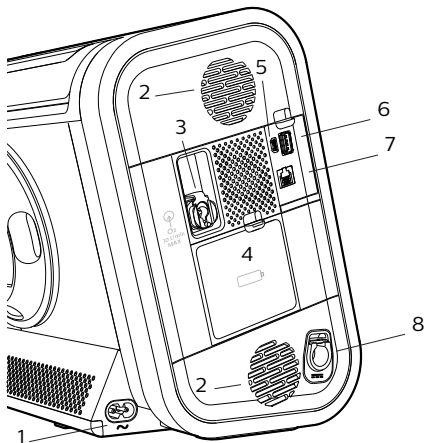
1. Carrying handle
2. FiO₂ sensor access panel
3. Power cord retention clip
4. Air vents
5. Air inlet
6. Oxygen blender
7. High pressure oxygen inlet

2.2.4 Patient Panel



1. USB port
2. Inspiratory port (to patient)
3. Proximal pressure port
4. Active exhalation valve line connection for ActivePAP and Active Flow circuits
5. Dual limb active exhalation valve connection (from patient)
6. Flow sensor cable connector

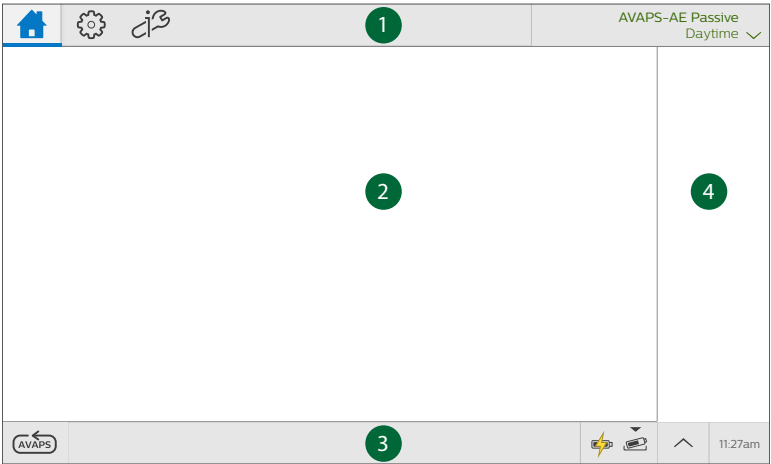
2.2.5 Utility Panel



1. AC power connector
2. Air vents
3. Low flow oxygen inlet
4. Detachable battery access door
5. Micro USB port for device service only
6. USB port
7. Remote alarm or nurse call connector (RJ9)
8. DC power connector

2.3 Parts of the User Interface

2.3.1 Standard Screen Elements



These standard parts appear on most screens.

1. Menu bar
2. Workspace
3. Status Bar
4. Monitored parameters pane

2.3.2 Menu Bar



Use the menu bar to navigate, manage alarms, set device options, and see the active prescription.

The menu bar has the following parts.

1. Tap the **Home** button to go to the home window.
2. Tap the **Prescription Settings** button to work with prescriptions.
3. Tap the **Options** button to work with device options.
4. When in the home window, tap the **Prescription List** to see a list of prescriptions.

2.3.3 Workspace

The workspace contents vary depending on the action you are performing. For example, the workspace can show the standby window, prescription window, or monitoring window.

2.3.4 Monitored Parameters Pane

PIP

27.8

cmH2O

Vte

505

mL

RR

14

BPM

MinVent

7.1

L/min

SpO2

99

%

The monitored parameters pane shows values while delivering therapy. Depending on the accessory, values such as SpO₂ and pulse rate appear during ventilation and standby.

- Parameters that may appear are:
- EtCO₂: end tidal carbon dioxide
 - FiO₂: fraction of inspired oxygen
 - MinVent: minute ventilation
 - PIP: peak inspiratory pressure
 - PR: pulse rate
 - RR: respiratory rate
 - SpO₂: saturation of peripheral oxygen
 - Vte: exhaled tidal volume
 - Vti: inhaled tidal volume

2.3.5 Status Bar

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

100%O₂

100%O₂
2:00

AVAPS

2:00

10:52am

Use the status bar to monitor device status and the availability of manual therapeutic actions.

1	Deliver 100% Oxygen	6	Bluetooth data transfer
2	100% Oxygen timer	7	Alarm silence
3	Automatic algorithm restart	8	Power sources and their status
4	Full access indicator	9	Device Actions menu
5	Bluetooth	10	System time

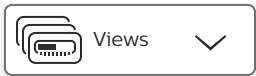
2.4 Monitoring Window

During ventilation, you can view different types of data. In the home window, the Views list shows the data types. Use the list to select the data you want to see.

2.4.1 Selecting a Monitoring View

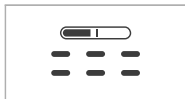
To select a monitoring view, follow these steps.

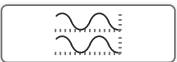
1. In the **Menu Bar**, tap the **Home** button. 
2. In the home window, tap the **Views** button.



3. In the **Views** list, tap the view you want to use.

2.4.2 Types of Monitoring Windows

Views list icon	Monitoring window contents
 Small manometer	• Small manometer pressure indicator • Breath indicator: When the current breath is triggered by the patient, the circle next to the manometer changes from light green to dark green. • Set parameters
 Large manometer with parameters	• Large manometer pressure indicator • Breath indicator: When the current breath is triggered by the patient, the circle next to the manometer changes from light green to dark green. • Six measured and calculated parameters
 Large manometer	• Large manometer pressure indicator • Breath indicator: When the current breath is triggered by the patient, the circle next to the manometer changes from light green to dark green.

Views list icon	Monitoring window contents	
 Battery status	• Battery status • Estimated battery time remaining (for internal and detachable batteries) • Estimated remaining battery power shown as a percent of total capacity (for external battery)	
 Measured and calculated parameters	• Set parameters • Measured and calculated parameters • Additional parameters based on the prescription (including accessories)	
 Manometer and therapy settings	• Manometer pressure indicator • Breath indicator: When the current breath is triggered by the patient, the circle next to the manometer changes from light green to dark green. • Current therapy settings list • Measured and calculated parameters	
 Customizable waveform graphs	To customize the graphs, use the buttons in the window as follows:	
	Button	Description
		Select the waveforms to graph. On the Select Waveforms dialog box, select data for the top and bottom graphs.
		Pause graphing.
		Automatically size the vertical scale to fit the data.
		Tap to change the time scale, and then select a new time scale from the list.

3. Therapy Modes and Controls

3.1 Overview

This chapter describes the therapy modes and controls.

Waveform illustrations in this chapter are to illustrate therapy mode behavior and appear different from waveforms as they appear in the monitoring window. For information on monitoring views, see section “2.4 Monitoring Window.”

3.2 Therapy Modes Principles

3.2.1 Breath Types

Trilogy Evo can deliver the following breath types:

- *Mandatory*: Ventilator-initiated, time-cycled
- *Assist-Control*: Patient-initiated, time-cycled
- *Spontaneous*: Patient-initiated, patient-cycled
- *Automatic Backup*: See “AVAPS-AE Mode” for more details

3.2.2 Triggering and Cycling

3.2.2.1 Patient triggers

Auto-Trak is a combination of multiple triggering algorithms. The parameters of the algorithms are automatically set to synchronize the therapy with a variety of patients.

Sensitive Auto-Trak is a more sensitive version of Auto-Trak.

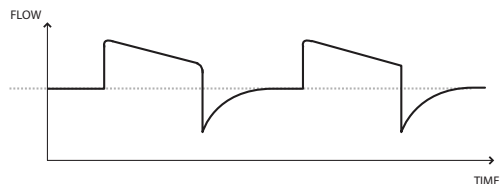
Flow trigger initiates a breath when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting. A lower number is more sensitive. As inspiratory flow begins to decrease, the device cycles to expiration when the patient flow is less than the percentage of peak flow, based on the flow-cycle sensitivity setting.

3.2.3 Ventilator trigger

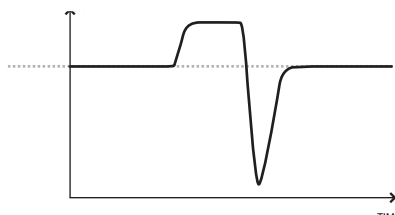
The ventilator trigger is time-based, defined by the Breath Rate setting.

3.2.3.1 Flow patterns

Ramp wave pattern: airflow starts high and decreases throughout inspiration of the breath.



Square wave pattern: airflow is generally constant throughout inspiration of the breath.



3.2.4 Low Tidal Volume Therapy

3.2.4.1 Volume Control Modes

The following volume modes are available for patients who require a tidal volume down to 35 ml:

- A/C-VC
- SIMV-VC

When setting volumes greater than or equal to 50 ml, use any circuit type (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb).

When setting volumes less than 50 ml, use either the active flow or dual limb circuit type with the infant/pediatric external flow sensor. See the instructions included with the sensor.

3.2.4.2 Pressure Control Modes

The following pressure modes are available for patients who require a tidal volume less than 35 ml:

- A/C-PC
- PSV
- CPAP
- S/T
- SIMV-PC

In pressure control modes with tidal volumes less than 35 ml, use either the active flow or dual limb circuit type with the infant/pediatric external flow sensor. See the instructions included with the sensor.

3.2.5 Suctioning During Therapy

During closed-circuit suctioning, the ventilator does not restrict therapy modes or prescription settings.

3.2.6 Therapy Mode Comparison Table

For all modes, the breath type varies based on time of patient inspiration. The breath type is always ventilator-initiated and mandatory when the Trigger Type is set to Off.

Mode	Breath Type	Trigger Source	Inspiration	Cycle	Exhalation
Control Modes					
A/C-PC	Assist-Control	Patient	PEEP + Pressure Control	Inspiratory Time	PEEP
	Mandatory	Ventilator			
A/C-VC	Assist-Control	Patient	Tidal Volume	Inspiratory Time	PEEP
	Mandatory	Ventilator			
Spontaneous Modes					
CPAP	Spontaneous	Patient	CPAP	Patient	CPAP
PSV	Spontaneous	Patient	PEEP + Pressure Support	Patient	PEEP
Mixed Modes					
S/T	Spontaneous	Patient	IPAP	Patient	EPAP
	Mandatory	Ventilator		Inspiratory Time	
SIMV-PC	Spontaneous	Patient	PEEP + Pressure Support	Patient	PEEP
	Assist-Control	Patient	PEEP + Pressure Control	Inspiratory Time	
	Mandatory	Ventilator			
SIMV-VC	Spontaneous	Patient	PEEP + Pressure Support	Patient	PEEP
	Assist-Control	Patient	Tidal Volume	Inspiratory Time	
	Mandatory	Ventilator			

Mode	Breath Type	Trigger Source	Inspiration	Cycle	Exhalation
AVAPS-AE Modes					
AVAPS-AE PC Breath enabled	Assist-control	Patient	AVAPS (Pressure Control based on set tidal volume)	Inspiratory Time	EPAP (variable based on airway resistance)
	Mandatory	Ventilator			
AVAPS-AE PC Breath disabled	Spontaneous	Patient	AVAPS (Pressure Support based on set tidal volume)	Patient	
	Mandatory	Ventilator		Inspiratory Time	
AVAPS-AE PC Breath enabled	Auto-Backup	Ventilator (After the patient completes exhalation)	AVAPS (Pressure Control based on set tidal volume)	Inspiratory Time	EPAP (variable based on airway resistance)
AVAPS-AE PC Breath disabled			AVAPS (Pressure Support based on set tidal volume)	Patient (see AVAPS-AE mode section for more details)	

3.3 Control Modes

3.3.1 A/C-PC: Assisted/Control-Pressure Control

3.3.1.1 Description

The A/C-PC mode provides pressure-controlled mandatory or assist-control breaths. When the Trigger Type is set to Off, the ventilator triggers and cycles all breaths. When the Trigger Type is not set to Off, then the ventilator or the patient can trigger a breath, and the ventilator cycles all breaths.

If you want to use mouthpiece ventilation with the A/C-PC therapy mode, different settings apply. See “Mouthpiece Ventilation (MPV-PC).”

3.3.1.2 Settings

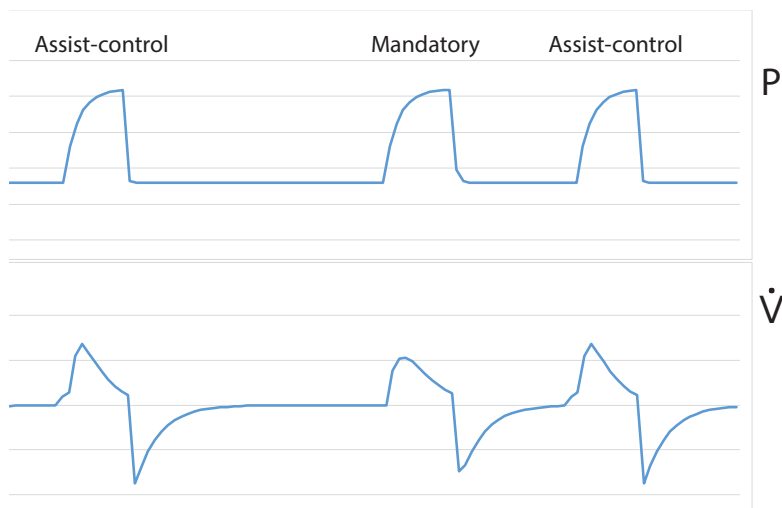
Setting Name	Description
Pressure Control	Inspiratory pressure above PEEP
PEEP	Positive end expiratory pressure

Setting Name	Description
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered.
Breath Rate	Minimum rate of mandatory breaths per minute
Inspiratory Time	Length of the inspiratory phase
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits) • Off
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
FiO ₂ (optional)	Fraction of inspired oxygen. Requires model with oxygen blender.

Settable alarms

- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate

3.3.1.3 Illustration



3.3.1.4 Mouthpiece Ventilation (MPV-PC)

Mouthpiece ventilation provides on-demand ventilation without requiring an exhalation device. When working with mouthpiece ventilation, the *Kiss trigger*® detects when a patient engages the mouthpiece. This trigger does not require patient effort to generate a breath. Because this trigger type is automatically selected, the Trigger Type setting is not available.

When selecting MPV-PC, the circuit type, size, and active humidification settings are not available.

Warning: Mouthpiece patient circuits are intended for use with patients at least 5 years of age, who can place their mouths on the circuit to initiate breaths on their own.

One alarm is available: No Trigger.

The following alarms are not available:

- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate

3.3.2 A/C-VC: Assisted/Control-Volume Control

3.3.2.1 Description

The A/C-VC mode provides volume-controlled mandatory or assist-control breaths. When the Trigger Type is set to Off, the ventilator triggers and cycles all breaths. When the Trigger Type is not set to Off, then the ventilator or the patient can trigger a breath, and the ventilator cycles all breaths. To deliver the set volume in the set time, the ventilator alters the flow rate. The flow pattern setting defines the shape of the flow delivery pattern.

If you want to use mouthpiece ventilation with the A/C-VC therapy mode, different settings apply. See “Mouthpiece Ventilation (MPV-VC).”

3.3.2.2 Settings

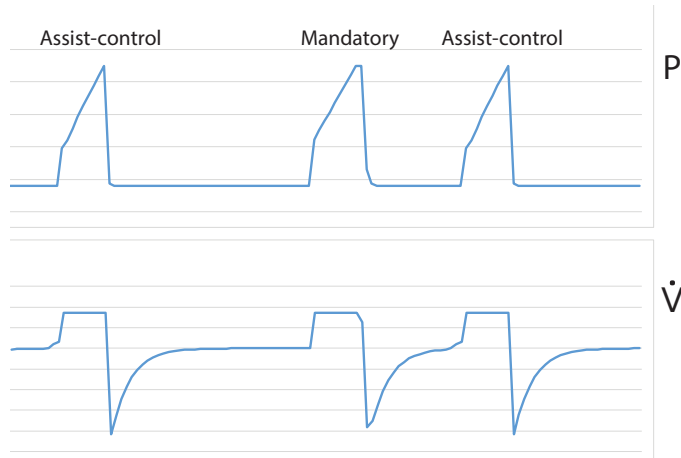
Setting Name	Description
Tidal Volume	Set inspiratory volume
PEEP	Positive end expiratory pressure
Inspiratory Time	Length of the inspiratory phase
Breath Rate	Minimum rate of mandatory breaths per minute
Flow Pattern	Sets the shape of the waveform as a ramp or square
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits) • Off
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
FiO ₂ (optional)	Fraction of inspired oxygen. Requires model with oxygen blender.

3.3.2.3 Settable alarms

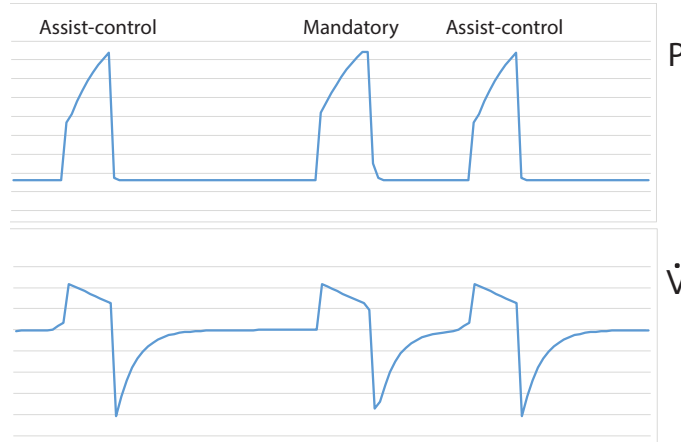
- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate
- High inspiratory pressure
- Low inspiratory pressure

3.3.2.4 Illustration

Square Flow Pattern



Ramp Flow Pattern



3.3.2.5 Mouthpiece Ventilation (MPV-VC)

Mouthpiece ventilation provides on-demand ventilation without requiring an exhalation device. When working with mouthpiece ventilation, the *Kiss trigger*[®] detects when a patient engages the mouthpiece. This trigger does not require patient effort to generate a breath. Because this trigger type is automatically

selected, the Trigger Type setting is not available.

Warning: Mouthpiece patient circuits are intended for use with patients at least 5 years of age, who can place their mouths on the circuit to initiate breaths on their own.

When selecting MPV-VC, the circuit type, size, and active humidification settings are not available.

The following alarms are available:

- No trigger
- High inspiratory pressure
- Low inspiratory pressure

The following alarms are not available:

- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate

3.4 Spontaneous Modes

3.4.1 CPAP: Continuous Positive Airway Pressure

3.4.1.1 Description

In CPAP mode, the pressure delivered to the patient during both inhalation and exhalation is the CPAP pressure setting. All breaths in this mode are spontaneous breaths.

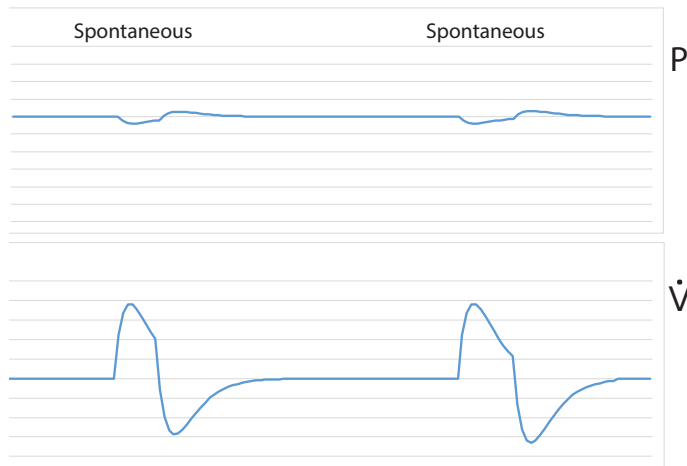
3.4.1.2 Settings

Setting Name	Description
CPAP	Continuous positive airway pressure
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits)
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point, the device cycles to expiration.
FiO ₂ (optional)	Fraction of inspired oxygen. Requires model with oxygen blender.

3.4.1.3 Settable alarms

- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate

3.4.1.4 Illustration



3.4.2 PSV: Pressure Support Ventilation

3.4.2.1 Description

PSV mode is patient-triggered, pressure-limited, and flow-cycled. With this strategy, breaths are assisted by a set inspiratory pressure that is delivered until inspiratory flow drops below a set threshold.

In the PSV mode, the ventilator delivers spontaneous, pressure-supported breaths. The ventilator functions as a demand flow system, with the patient triggering breaths and determining their timing and volume. The ventilator can support the breaths with the set pressure support.

The Pressure Support setting defines the applied pressure above PEEP. The patient determines the breath timing. It is recommended that you set backup ventilation in PSV mode.

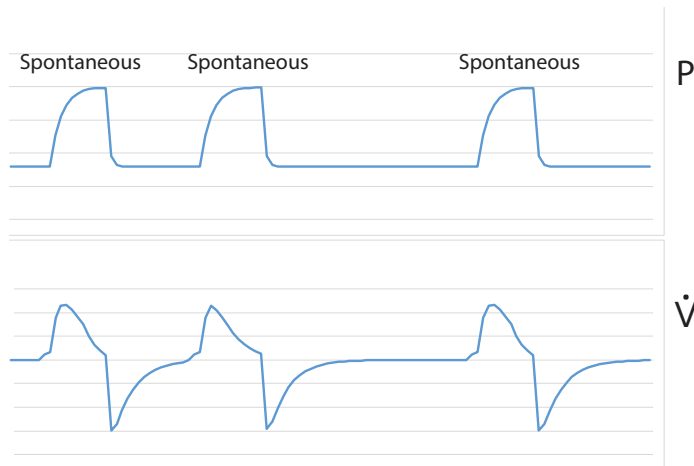
3.4.2.2 Settings

Setting Name	Description
Pressure Support	Pressure that the device delivers during the inspiratory phase of a spontaneous breath
PEEP	Positive end expiratory pressure
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered. May impact patient comfort and volume delivered.
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits)
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point, the device cycles to expiration.
FiO ₂ (optional)	Fraction of inspired oxygen. Requires model with oxygen blender.

3.4.2.3 Settable alarms

- Circuit disconnected
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate

3.4.2.4 Illustration



3.5 Mixed Modes

3.5.1 S/T: Spontaneous/Timed

3.5.1.1 Description

A bi-level therapy mode where each breath is patient-triggered and patient-cycled, or ventilator-triggered and ventilator-cycled. In this mode, an IPAP is delivered during inhalation and a lower EPAP is delivered during exhalation. The duration of a spontaneous breath is determined by the patient effort. The duration of a mandatory breath is determined by the inspiratory time setting. Remember that the IPAP setting is the maximum pressure the ventilator will deliver; it is not in addition to the EPAP setting.

3.5.1.2 Settings

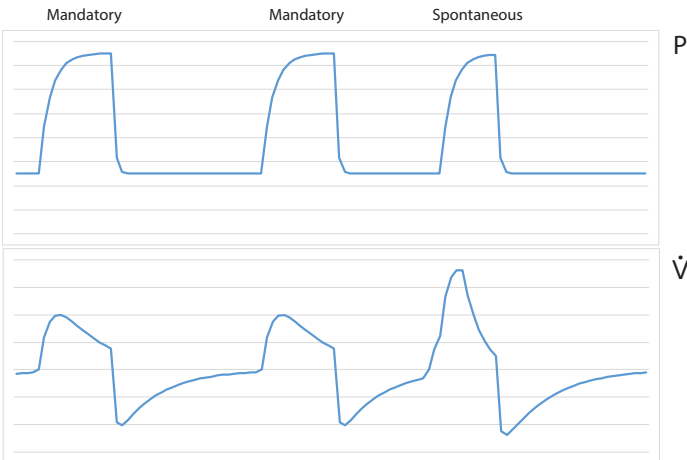
Setting Name	Description
IPAP	Inspiratory positive airway pressure. Must be greater than or equal to EPAP
EPAP	Expiratory positive airway pressure
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered. May impact patient comfort and volume delivered.
Breath Rate	Minimum rate of breaths per minute. If the patient doesn't trigger a breath within this time, the ventilator triggers the breath.
Inspiratory Time	For a mandatory breath, length of the inspiratory phase

Setting Name	Description
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits)
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point, the device cycles to expiration.
FiO ₂ (optional)	Fraction of inspired oxygen. Requires model with oxygen blender.

3.5.1.3 Settable alarms

- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate

3.5.1.4 Illustration



3.5.2 SIMV-PC: Synchronous Intermittent Mandatory Ventilation-Pressure Control

3.5.2.1 Description

SIMV-PC mode is a pressure control mode that provides a mixture of mandatory, assist-control, and spontaneous breaths. SIMV-PC mode guarantees one mandatory breath in each cycle. Spontaneous breaths can be delivered with pressure support. The breath rate determines the length of the cycle. The first phase of the cycle is reserved for synchronizing a mandatory breath with patient effort. If the patient triggers a breath during this phase of the cycle, the ventilator delivers a synchronized mandatory breath also referred to as an assist-control breath. If a patient does not trigger a breath during the mandatory phase of the cycle, then the ventilator delivers a mandatory breath. Breaths triggered by the patient after the mandatory breath in the cycle are spontaneous breaths. This process is repeated at the start of every cycle.

3.5.2.2 Settings

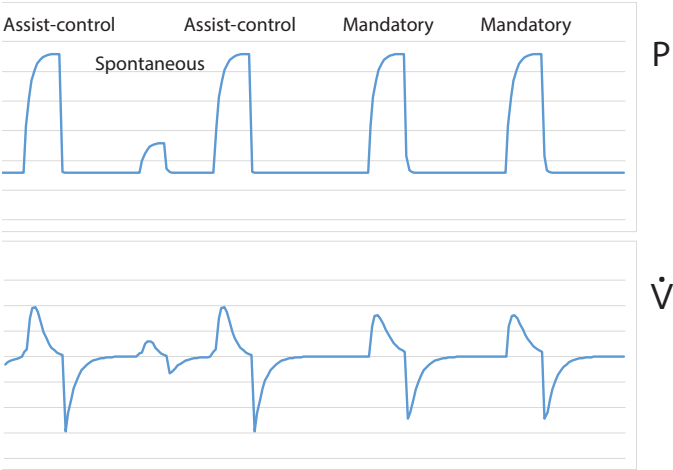
Setting Name	Description
Pressure Control	Defines the applied pressure above PEEP for mandatory and assist-control breaths
Pressure Support	Defines the applied pressure above PEEP for spontaneous breaths
PEEP	Positive end expiratory pressure
Inspiratory Time	For a mandatory or assist-control breath, length of the inspiratory phase
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered. May impact patient comfort and volume delivered.
Breath Rate	Minimum rate of mandatory breaths per minute
Trigger Type	- Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) - Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) - Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits)
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point, the device cycles to expiration.
FiO ₂ (optional)	Fraction of inspired oxygen. Requires model with oxygen blender.

3.5.2.3 Settable alarms

- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation

- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate

3.5.2.4 Illustration



3.5.3 SIMV-VC: Synchronous Intermittent Mandatory Ventilation-Volume Control

3.5.3.1 Description

Similar to SIMV-PC, but with volume control.

3.5.3.2 Settings

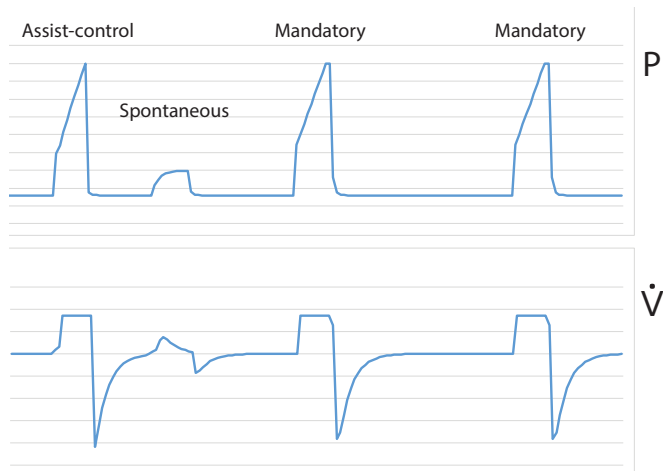
Setting Name	Description
Tidal Volume	Gas volume that the device delivers during mandatory and assist-controlled breaths
Pressure Support	Pressure that the device delivers during the inspiratory phase of a spontaneous breath
PEEP	Positive end expiratory pressure
Inspiratory Time	For a mandatory and assist-controlled breath, length of the inspiratory phase
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered. May impact patient comfort and volume delivered.
Breath Rate	Minimum rate of mandatory breaths per minute

Setting Name	Description
Flow Pattern	Sets the shape of the waveform as a ramp or square
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits)
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point, the device cycles to expiration.
FiO ₂ (optional)	Fraction of inspired oxygen. Requires model with oxygen blender.

3.5.3.3 Settable alarms

- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate
- High inspiratory pressure
- Low inspiratory pressure

3.5.3.4 Illustration



3.6 AVAPS-AE Mode

3.6.1 AVAPS-AE

3.6.1.1 Description

AVAPS-AE is a bi-level therapy mode that automatically adjusts Expiratory Positive Airway Pressure (EPAP), pressure support, and the backup breath rate. AVAPS-AE monitors the resistance in the patient's upper airway and adjusts EPAP automatically to maintain a patent airway. AVAPS-AE mode also monitors delivered tidal volumes and automatically adjusts pressure support to maintain the target tidal volume. AVAPS-AE also has the ability to automatically set and maintain a backup breath rate (max 20) based on the patient's own spontaneous breathing rate.

The clinician sets a target volume and sets pressure limits. The system uses algorithms to calculate the optimal pressure support required to meet the target. The user can reset the algorithms that are used to calculate all automatic adjustments.

Warning: Limit the pressure setting according to the needs of the prescribed patient population.

Only the passive circuit type may be used with AVAPS-AE.

The AVAPS-AE therapy mode is contraindicated for invasive use and patients less than 10 kg.

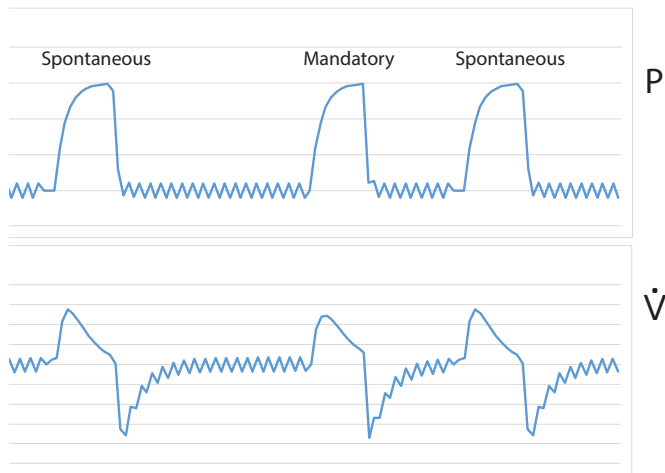
3.6.1.2 Settings

Setting Name	Description
Tidal Volume	Target gas volume that the device delivers during a spontaneous breath
EPAP Min/Max	Expiratory positive airway pressure range
PS Min/Max	Pressure support minimum and maximum. Target pressure that the device delivers during the inspiratory phase of a spontaneous breath.
PC Min/Max	Pressure control minimum and maximum. Target pressure that the device delivers during the inspiratory phase of a mandatory or assist-controlled breath.
Max Pressure	Maximum pressure – inspiratory pressure will never exceed this value.
Breath Rate	Minimum rate of mandatory breaths per minute (0-60 BPM) Note: When you select the Automatic Breath Rate, then you cannot set the Inspiratory Time. The device sets the inspiratory time.
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered. May impact patient comfort and volume delivered.
Inspiratory Time	For a mandatory or assist-controlled breath, length of the inspiratory phase This control is enabled when PC Breath is enabled, or when the breath rate setting is greater than 0 This control is disabled when breath rate is set to Automatic or 0 BPM.
AVAPS Speed	This setting limits the changes in pressure support between the minimum and maximum values over a 1 minute period. The breath by breath changes in pressure support are then consequently further limited to a fraction of this setting according to how many breaths occur in 1 minute.
Trigger Type	- Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) - Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) - Flow Trigger
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the mode is AVAPS-AE, the trigger type is Flow Trigger, and PC Breath is off. As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point, the device cycles to expiration.
PC Breath	When PC Breath is on, then inspiratory time applies to all breaths. When PC Breath is off, and breath rate is not set to automatic, then the inspiratory time applies only to ventilator-triggered breaths.
FiO ₂ (optional)	Fraction of inspired oxygen. Requires model with oxygen blender.

3.6.1.3 Settable alarms

- Circuit Disconnect
- High Tidal Volume
- Low Tidal Volume
- High Minute Ventilation
- Low Minute Ventilation
- High Respiratory Rate
- Low Respiratory Rate

3.6.1.4 Illustration



3.7 Therapy Features

The following features are available in addition to the therapy modes.

3.7.1 Backup Ventilation

3.7.1.1 Description

Set the device to deliver ventilator-initiated breaths when patient-initiated breaths are not detected, based on the Apnea alarm interval. When you turn Backup Ventilation on, set an Apnea interval in the alarm settings tab. Within the apnea interval; if no breaths are triggered by the patient, the ventilator delivers breaths at the set pressure or volume based on the Backup Rate. When an Apnea alarm occurs, the ventilator automatically starts backup ventilation. When two patient-initiated breaths are detected, the ventilator automatically reverts to patient-initiated breaths.

Backup ventilation settings take precedence over standard therapy mode settings.

This feature is available based on therapy mode.

3.7.1.2 Settings

- Backup Ventilation (On/Off): when you turn this setting On, set an Apnea interval in the alarm settings tab.
- Backup Rate (4-80): when in backup ventilation, the backup breath rate takes precedence over any breath rate set in the therapy mode. The rate cannot be less than the Breath Rate set in the current therapy mode.
- Backup Inspiration Time (.3 – 5 seconds): CPAP and PSV modes only. When in backup ventilation, the Back Up Tinsp controls the duration of inspiration.
- Backup PS (CPAP mode only)
- Backup Rise Time (CPAP mode only)

To access the Backup Ventilation feature, in the **Prescription** window, tap **Advanced**. When you turn the feature on, the additional settings appear in the prescription window.

If Trigger Type is Off, then this feature is unavailable.

3.7.2 Insp Time Min/Max

3.7.2.1 Description

Set the minimum and maximum inspiratory time for pressure support breath types. This feature changes inspiration time from a constant to a variable value so you can select a range for the inspiration time.

The range allows the patient to have a chance to cycle. When the maximum time has passed with no patient-initiated breath, then the ventilator automatically cycles the breath.

To access this feature, in the **Prescription** window, tap **Advanced**. When you turn the feature on, the additional settings appear in the prescription window.

3.7.2.2 Applicable Therapy Modes

- PSV
- S/T
- SIMV-PC
- SIMV-VC
- AVAPS-AE

3.7.3 AVAPS

3.7.3.1 Description

Automatically adjusts pressure to meet a target tidal volume. Inspiratory pressure fluctuates between the minimum and maximum settings to reach the set Tidal volume. EPAP or PEEP remains the same in each breath.

Pressure settings are dependent on the mode you are in:

- Tidal volume
- IPAP minimum (S/T only)
- IPAP maximum (S/T only)
- PS minimum (PSV only)
- PS maximum (PSV only)
- PC minimum (A/C-PC only)
- PC maximum (A/C-PC only)
- AVAPS speed

To turn on AVAPS, in the **Prescription** window, tap **Mode**. In the **AVAPS** section, tap **On**. **Applicable Therapy Modes**

Passive circuits only:

- A/C-PC
- PSV
- S/T

3.7.4 Sigh

3.7.4.1 Description

Delivers a periodic, larger volume breath.

Settings:

- Sigh (On/Off)
- Sigh Volume (1.5–2.5 times the set volume)
- Sigh Frequency (50–250 breaths)

To access the Sigh feature, in the **Prescription** window, tap **Advanced**. When you turn the feature on, the additional settings appear in the prescription window.

3.7.4.2 Applicable Therapy Mode

- A/C-VC

3.8 Therapy Control Settings

Therapy control settings can be interdependent. For guidance, see the previous therapy mode descriptions.

Setting Name	Setting Range/Increment
AVAPS Speed	1-5 cm H ₂ O per minute, 1 cm H ₂ O per minute increment
Backup Pressure Support	2-57 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
Backup Ventilation	On/Off
Breath Rate	0-80 BPM, 1 BPM increments For AVAPS-AE mode, the Breath Rate can be Auto (automatic).
CPAP	3-25 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
EPAP Min/Max	3-25 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
FiO ₂	21-100%, 1% increments (21% = ambient condition, no control)
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	10-90%, 1% increments
Flow Pattern	Square: airflow is constant Ramp: inspiration airflow starts high and decreases
Trigger Sensitivity	0.5 (high sensitivity) to 9 L/min (low sensitivity)
Inspiratory Time	0.3-5.0 seconds, 0.1 second increments This control is limited to prohibit an inverse inhalation to exhalation ratio.
Insp Time Min/Max Enable	On/Off
Insp Time Min/Max	0.3-3 seconds, 0.1 second increments
IPAP	3-60 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
IPAP Min/Max	3-60 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
Max Pressure	6-50 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments Note: A maximum pressure setting of less than 40 cmH ₂ O is recommended for pediatric patients.
PC Breath	On/Off
PEEP	- Active circuit: 0-35 cm H₂O - Passive circuit: 3-25 cm H₂O - MPV: 0-25 cm H₂O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
Pressure Control	- All circuits but passive: 0-60 cm H₂O - Passive circuit: 0-57 cm H₂O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O

Setting Name	Setting Range/Increment
Pressure Support	- All circuits but passive: 0–60 cm H₂O - Passive circuit: 0–57 cm H₂O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
PC Min/Max	0–40 cm H₂O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
PS Min/Max	0–40 cm H₂O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
Rise Time	0 (faster) to 6 (slower), increment of 1
Tidal Volume	- Dual limb or active flow: 35–2000 ml - Passive or Active PAP: 50–2000 ml - MPV: 200–2000 ml Increment: 5 ml
Trigger Type	- Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) - Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) - Flow Trigger (all circuits) - Off

4. Device Setup

4.1 Overview

To set up Trilogy Evo, follow the steps shown below. See the accompanying section for instructions.

1. “Placement”
2. “Connecting AC Power”
3. “Installing Filters”
4. “Connecting a Circuit”
5. “Connecting External Patient Monitors” (optional step)
6. “Adding Oxygen”
7. “Starting Trilogy Evo”

4.2 Placement

Place Trilogy Evo on a stable, flat, hard surface. Air must flow freely. Do not block the air vents with items such as bedding or curtains. Do not place Trilogy Evo near any heating or cooling equipment or air supplies such as forced air vents, radiators, or air conditioners. Be sure the USB and detachable battery panel doors remain closed when not in use.

If the device has been stored outside the normal operating temperature stated in “Technical Data,” be sure the device reaches operating temperature before starting.

See “EMC Information” for guidance on possible electromagnetic interference.

4.3 Connecting AC Power

Use the AC cord provided to connect AC power. Verify Trilogy Evo is using AC power, indicated by the green LED light next to the On/Off (Standby) button.

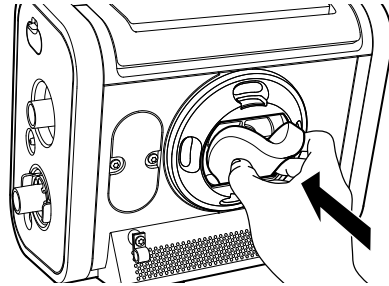
To use another power source, such as a battery, see “Power Management.”

4.4 Installing Filters

4.4.1 Air-Inlet Foam Filter

Be sure the air-inlet foam filter is installed correctly.

To install the air-inlet foam filter, pinch the filter as you press it into the filter cover as shown. Position it securely behind the top and bottom restraints.



4.4.2 Particulate Filter

To install a particulate filter, see "Replacing the Particulate Filter."

4.5 Connecting a Circuit

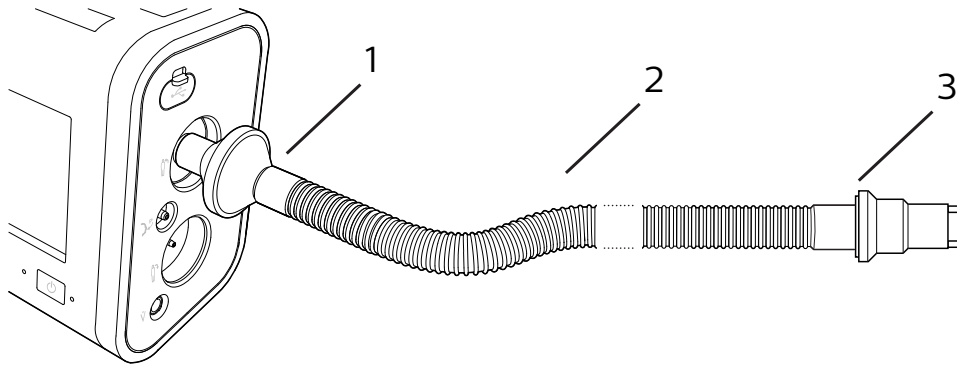
Be certain that any bacterial filter used with this device complies with ISO 23328-1 and ISO 23328-2. To prevent patient or ventilator contamination, you must use a Philips Respironics-approved main flow bacterial filter on the patient gas outlet port. Filters not approved by Philips Respironics may degrade system performance. For a list of accessories, see the Trilogy Evo accessories guide.

For passive circuits, a leak device is mandatory during invasive ventilation or when using a circuit with a non-vented mask.

After you connect the circuit, you may calibrate the circuit. See "Calibration."

For low tidal volumes, see "Low Tidal Volume Therapy."

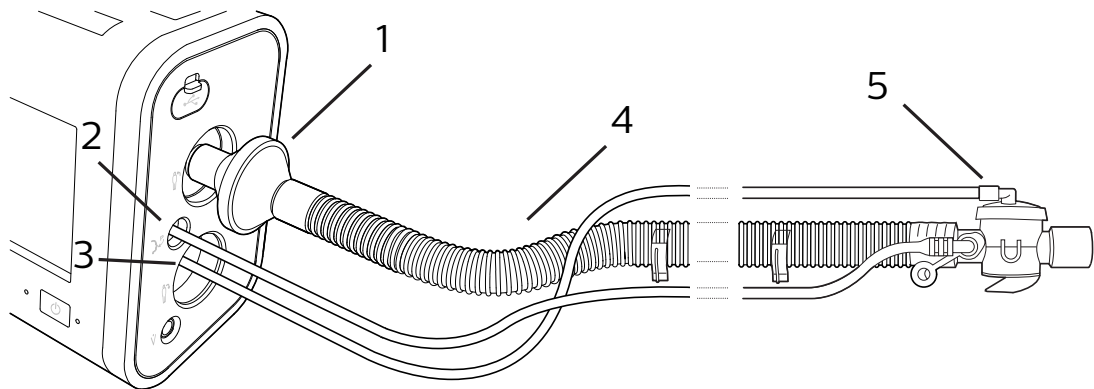
4.5.1 Passive Single Limb Circuits



1	Bacterial filter
2	Tubing
3	Leak device

Connect the bacterial filter (1) on the circuit to the inspiratory port.

4.5.2 Active PAP Circuits

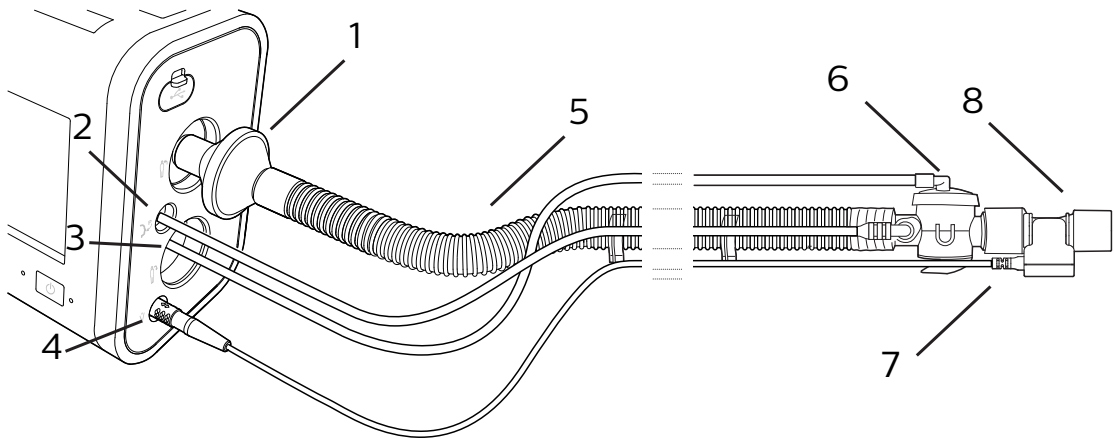


1	Bacterial filter
2	Proximal pressure port

3	Active exhalation valve line connection
4	Tubing
5	Active exhalation valve

1. Connect the bacterial filter (1) on the circuit to the inspiratory port.
2. Connect the proximal pressure line to the proximal pressure port (2).
3. Connect the active exhalation valve pressure line to the active exhalation valve line connection (3).

4.5.3 Active Flow Circuits

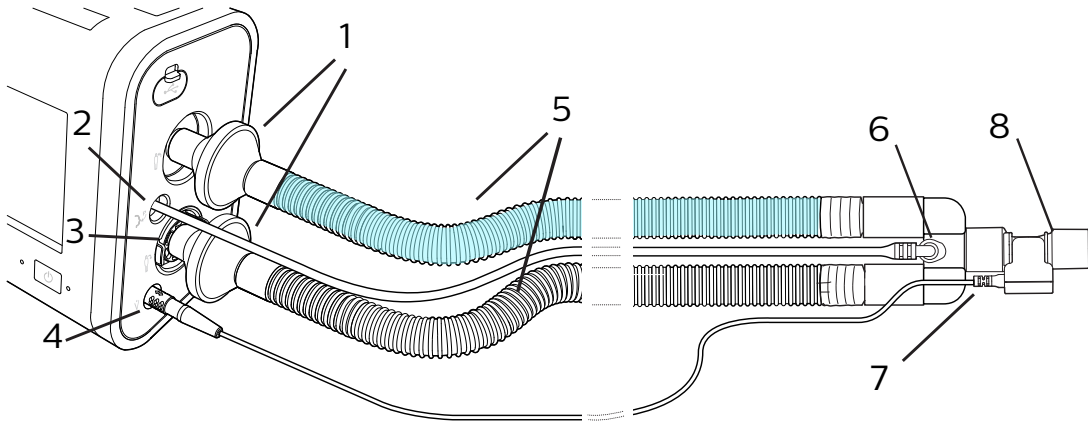


1	Bacterial filter
2	Proximal pressure port
3	Active exhalation valve line connection
4	Flow sensor cable connector
5	Tubing
6	Active exhalation valve
7	Flow sensor cable
8	Flow sensor connected to circuit

1. Connect the bacterial filter (1) on the circuit to the inspiratory port.
2. Connect the proximal pressure line to the proximal pressure port (2).
3. Connect the active exhalation valve pressure line to the active exhalation valve line connection (3).
4. Connect the flow sensor (8) to the flow sensor cable (7).
5. Connect the flow sensor to the active exhalation valve on the circuit (6).

6. Connect the flow sensor cable to the ventilator (4).

4.5.4 Dual Limb Circuits



1	Bacterial filters
2	Proximal pressure port
3	Dual-limb active exhalation valve (AEV)
4	Flow sensor cable connector
5	Tubing
6	Y-shaped connector
7	Flow sensor cable
8	Flow sensor connected to circuit

1. Attach the bacterial filter (1) end of the colored inspiration tube to the inspiratory port.
2. Attach the proximal pressure line (2) to the proximal pressure port.
3. Install the AEV. Press until you hear two clicks (3).
4. Attach the bacterial filter end of the clear expiration tube to the AEV (3).
5. Connect the flow sensor (8) to the flow sensor cable (7).
6. Connect the flow sensor to the Y-shaped connector on the circuit (6).
7. Connect the flow sensor cable to the ventilator (4).
8. Attach the proximal pressure line to the Y-shaped connector on the circuit (6).

4.6 Connecting External Patient Monitors

Connect compatible external patient monitors, such as a pulse oximeter or CO₂ monitor, if using. The device includes two USB ports that are capable of communicating with patient monitoring accessories. For help, see the accessory's instructions and "Accessories."

4.7 Adding Oxygen

Warning: Do not operate the ventilator in the presence of flammable gasses. This could cause a fire or explosion.

4.7.1 High Pressure Oxygen

This section applies only to models with an oxygen blender. When using the oxygen blender, use an FiO₂ sensor to verify the oxygen concentration in the delivered gas.

To connect high-pressure oxygen:

1. Connect an oxygen hose to the high-pressure oxygen connector on the back panel.
2. Connect the other end of the hose to the source.
3. Calibrate the FiO₂ sensor. See "Calibration."

4.7.2 Low Flow Oxygen

Delivered oxygen concentration varies with changes in flow in the circuit. The following may have an impact on oxygen concentration:

- Pressure settings
- Patient Tidal Volume
- Peak Inspiratory Flow
- I:E Ratio
- Respiratory rate
- Circuit leak rate
- Oxygen flow rate

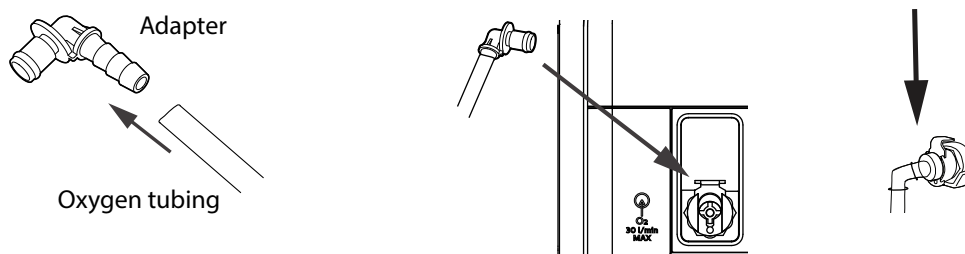
Warnings:

- This device DOES NOT alarm for loss of the low flow oxygen supply. Use a pulse oximeter or FiO₂ sensor, as medically indicated.
- The oxygen concentration may not be consistent. The inspired oxygen concentration will vary, depending on the pressures, patient flow, and circuit leak. Substantial leaks may reduce the inspired oxygen concentration to less than the expected value. Use appropriate patient monitoring, such as pulse oximeter or FiO₂ sensor with alarm, as medically indicated.
- Do not connect the device to an unregulated or high-pressure oxygen source.

- The device may result in incorrect flow and tidal volume measurements and improper operation of related alarms if you add low flow oxygen directly into the patient circuit or mask instead of directly adding it into the oxygen inlet on the back of the ventilator.
- Turn off oxygen when the device is not in use. When the device is not in operation and the oxygen flow remains on, oxygen delivered into the tubing may accumulate within the device's enclosure.

To add oxygen to the circuit, the oxygen supply must comply with the local regulations for medical oxygen. The oxygen flow into the oxygen valve cannot exceed 30 L/min and the pressure cannot exceed 10 psi.

To connect low flow oxygen:



1. Connect the oxygen tubing to the O₂ adapter supplied with the device.
2. Connect the O₂ adapter to the low flow oxygen inlet on the Utility Panel by pressing down on the valve.

4.8 Starting Trilogy Evo

To start Trilogy Evo:

1. Visually inspect Trilogy Evo and all accessories, cords, and tubes attached to the device.
2. Verify that circuit connections are secure.
3. Press the On/Off (Standby) button.
4. Listen for a minimum of three beeps as the device performs system startup checks. The beeps test alarm signals to ensure proper function. Ensure no system messages appear.
5. Watch as the light bar and Alarm Silence button blink once red and once yellow.
6. Confirm the power sources you have connected are working and that power is sufficient. See "Power Management."

5. Device Operation

5.1 Overview

After setting up the device, it is ready for operation.

5.2 Clinical Assessment

Warnings:

- Before placing a patient on the ventilator, perform a clinical assessment. Considerations should include:
 - Choosing and testing alarm settings
 - Assessing whether alternative ventilation equipment is required
 - Selecting additional accessories, including the patient monitoring accessories you will use
- For ventilator-dependent patients, always have alternate ventilation equipment, such as a back-up ventilator or manual resuscitator available.
- Ventilator-dependent patients should be continuously monitored by qualified personnel. These personnel should be prepared to provide alternate therapy in the event of ventilator failure or inoperative equipment.

5.3 Setting Up a New Patient

To set up a new patient:

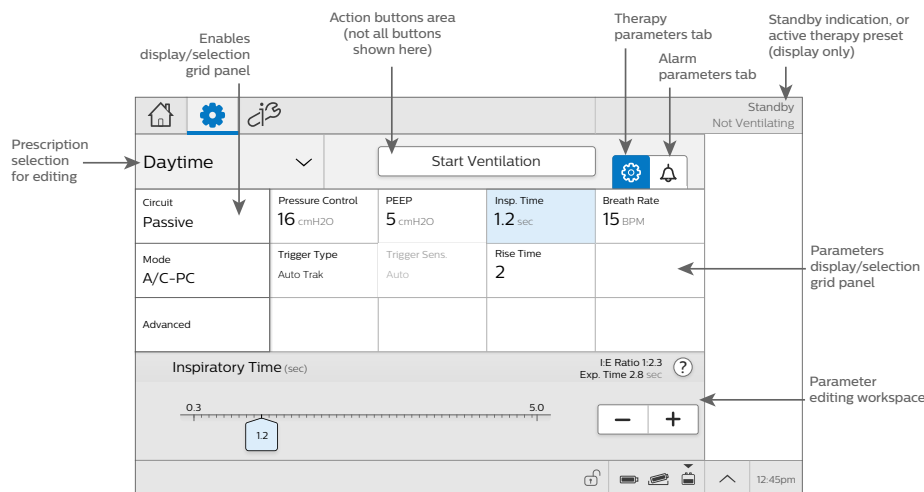
1. In the **Home** window, tap the **New Patient** button. This button clears all existing patient data including prescriptions and historical data. For more information about this button, see “Preparing the Device for Use by a Different Patient.”
2. On the **Select Prescription Name** dialog box, tap the prescription name that you want to use.
3. Acknowledge the reminder to ensure a viral/bacterial filter is installed.
4. Edit the prescription settings according to the procedure in “About Prescriptions.”

5.4 About Prescriptions

5.4.1 System Timeout

When working in the Prescription Settings window, be sure you save your changes. After a period of inactivity, the system reverts to the previous setting and your changes are not saved. If you are making changes during therapy delivery, the period of inactivity is 30 seconds. If you are making changes when the system is in standby, the period of inactivity is 5 minutes.

5.4.2 Parts of the Prescription Settings Window



5.4.3 Editing Prescription and Alarm Settings

To edit prescription settings:

1. In the menu bar, tap the prescription settings icon. 
2. In the prescription grid, tap **Circuit**. In the workspace below the grid, select the circuit **Type** and **Size**.
3. If you are using a humidifier, in the **Active Humidification** section, tap **On**. Otherwise, tap **Off**.
Note: The Active Humidification setting is used by the ventilator software to adjust the default circuit compliance and resistance to account for the water chamber. The software always uses this setting in the BTPS correction factor.
4. To save your changes, tap **Accept**.
5. In the prescription grid, tap **Mode**. In the workspace below the grid, select the mode. For modes where you want to use AVAPS, in the **AVAPS** section, tap **On**.
6. Tap a prescription parameter. In the lower pane, move the slider or use the plus and minus buttons to change the parameter value.
7. Tap the Alarm tab to view and edit the associated alarm settings. 

For more information about alarms, including details about each alarm, see “Alarms and System Messages.”
8. Change the alarm parameters in the lower pane and then click **Accept** at the top of the window.
9. Continue editing prescription and alarm parameters.
To work with advanced options, tap **Advanced**.

10. Test the alarms. See “Testing Alarms.”
11. When you are finished, tap **Accept** to save your changes.

5.4.4 Adding a Prescription

If you want to add another prescription:

1. In the home window, tap the Prescription Settings icon. 
2. Tap the Prescription List to expand it and then tap **Add New**.
3. On the **Select Prescription Name** dialog box, tap the prescription name that you want to use.
4. Edit the prescription settings as you would for a new prescription.

5.4.5 Deleting a Prescription

Deleting a prescription requires full system access. You cannot delete a prescription currently in use.

To delete a prescription:

1. In the menu bar, tap the Options icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Prescription Preferences**.
3. Locate the prescription you want to delete and then tap the trash can icon. 

5.4.6 Changing Prescription Preferences

Use the Prescription Preferences feature in the Options window to change how a prescription appears in the interface. See “Prescription Preferences.”

5.5 Starting and Stopping Therapy

- To *start* therapy from standby:
In the **Prescription Settings** window, select the prescription you want to use, and then tap **Start Ventilation**.
- To stop therapy and put the device into the *standby* state:
Press the On/Off (Standby) button on the front panel.  On the confirmation window, tap **Standby**.
- To turn the device *off*:
Press the On/Off (Standby) button on the front panel.  On the confirmation window, tap **Power Off**.

5.6 Setting the Access Level

You can restrict access for caregivers. In the limited access level, caregivers:

- Cannot modify therapy parameters
- Cannot modify alarms
- Cannot create or edit prescriptions or create a new patient
- Can select a prescription from the list
- See fewer data monitoring views
- Cannot change pressure units
- Cannot change access levels
- Cannot clear data logs
- Cannot change the data encryption setting

Full access is the default setting.

To set the device access level:

1. In the menu bar, tap the Options icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Device Options**.
3. In the **Device Options** window, tap **Menu Access Level**.
4. In the **Menu Access Level** dialog box, select one of the following:
 - Full:** all features and functions are available.
 - Limited:** restricts access to system functions – for a caregiver’s use
5. On the title bar, tap the **Accept** checkmark.

To gain temporary full access:

Press and hold the Alarm Silence button on the front panel.  Simultaneously, in the main window, in the Status Bar, tap and hold the clock icon. Hold both for several seconds then release.

The Full Access icon in the Status Bar indicates full access level. 

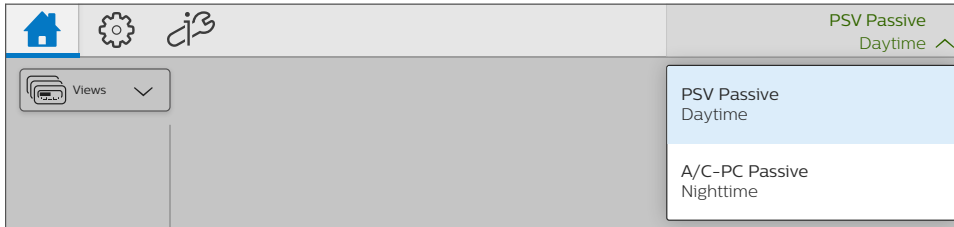
To return to limited access after temporary full access:

Tap the Device Actions button. 

Then tap the Limited Access icon. 

5.7 Actions During Ventilation

5.7.1 Using Different Prescriptions



To select a prescription that uses a circuit type that is the *same as the current prescription*:

1. On the menu bar, tap the Home icon to go to the home window.
2. On the menu bar, tap the active prescription to expand the prescription list.
3. Tap the prescription you want to use and then confirm your choice.

To select a prescription that uses a circuit type that is *different from the current prescription*:

1. Press the On/Off (Standby) button  on the front panel. On the confirmation window, tap **Standby**.
2. Attach the circuit type that corresponds to the prescription.
3. In the home window workspace, tap the prescription you want to use.
4. Tap **Start Ventilation**.

5.7.2 Locking and Unlocking the Screen



To lock the screen, expand the **Device Actions** menu then tap the **Lock Screen** button. 

To unlock the screen, tap the screen. On the screen unlock dialog box, tap and hold **Yes** for three seconds.

When an alarm or system message becomes active, the screen saver is stopped and the automatic screen lock is disabled. For more information, see “Alarms and System Messages.”

5.7.3 Oxygen Flush

5.7.3.1 Description

This feature requires the oxygen blender. When active, the device delivers 100% oxygen for two minutes. This feature functions independent of any oxygen blending setting. During an oxygen flush, the High FiO_2 alarm is disabled.

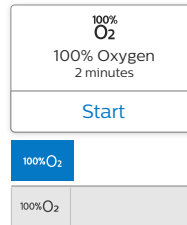
5.7.3.2 Working with Oxygen Flush

To start an oxygen flush:

Tap **100% O₂** in the status bar and then tap **Start**. A timer appears that counts down the two minutes.

To stop an oxygen flush:

Tap **100% O₂** in the status bar and then tap **Stop**.



5.7.4 AVAPS Algorithm Restart

5.7.4.1 Description

This feature requires AVAPS to be in use. This feature gives you the ability to reset the algorithms that automatically adjust the pressure.

During active therapy, in the Status Bar, tap the algorithm restart button. 

The following will occur upon tapping the algorithm restart button:

- Pressure will restart at the midpoint.
- EPAP will return to EPAPmin. (AVAPS-AE only)
- If Breath Rate is set to Auto, the algorithm will restart. (AVAPS-AE only)

Applicable therapy modes:

- AVAPS-AE
- Modes with AVAPS enabled:
 - A/C-PC
 - PSV
 - S/T

6. Alarms and System Messages

6.1 Overview

Trilogy Evo generates audible and visual alarms to alert you when conditions require attention. Alarm data is recorded in the Alarm and Event Log. For help, see "Alarm and Event Log."

Alarm settings are retained when power is lost.

Warnings:

- To prevent death or serious injury, monitor the patient and the ventilator regularly to determine the need to provide emergency ventilation when an alarm sounds or the ventilator malfunctions. Always test the alarms after changing the circuit or prescription.
- An increase in circuit resistance can prevent proper operation of some alarms.
- When adding any components to the breathing system, the flow resistance and dead space of the added components such as humidifiers, speaking valves, Heat Moisture Exchangers (HMEs) and filters should be carefully considered in relation to the potential for adverse effects on the patient's ventilator management and device alarms.
- Do not rely on any single alarm to detect a disconnected circuit. Certain components may affect the performance of the alarms chosen to signal that a circuit is disconnected. Use the apnea, low tidal volume, low minute ventilation, and low respiratory rate alarms in conjunction with the circuit disconnect alarm. Test these alarms daily and after you change ventilator settings.

6.2 About Alarms

When an alarm is active, the following indicators occur:

- An Alarm list appears in the menu bar.
- An Alarm light bar flashes red or yellow, or glows steady red or yellow, depending on the alarm level. To turn the light bar on or off, see "Device Options."
- The Alarm Silence button on the device flashes red or yellow, or glows steady red or yellow, depending on the alarm level.
- An audible alarm sounds.

The device uses three alarm levels:

- High Priority – Requires an immediate response
- Medium Priority – Requires a prompt response
- Low Priority – Requires awareness

System messages inform you about changing conditions. These messages are described in "Alarms and System Messages."

When an alarm or system message becomes active, the screen saver stops and the screen unlocks automatically.

When patient monitors such as a CO₂, FiO₂, or SpO₂ sensor are used, related alarm settings only appear when the ventilator detects sensor connection. Alarm settings are stored in the system. So if a sensor becomes disconnected, the alarm settings are restored upon reconnection.

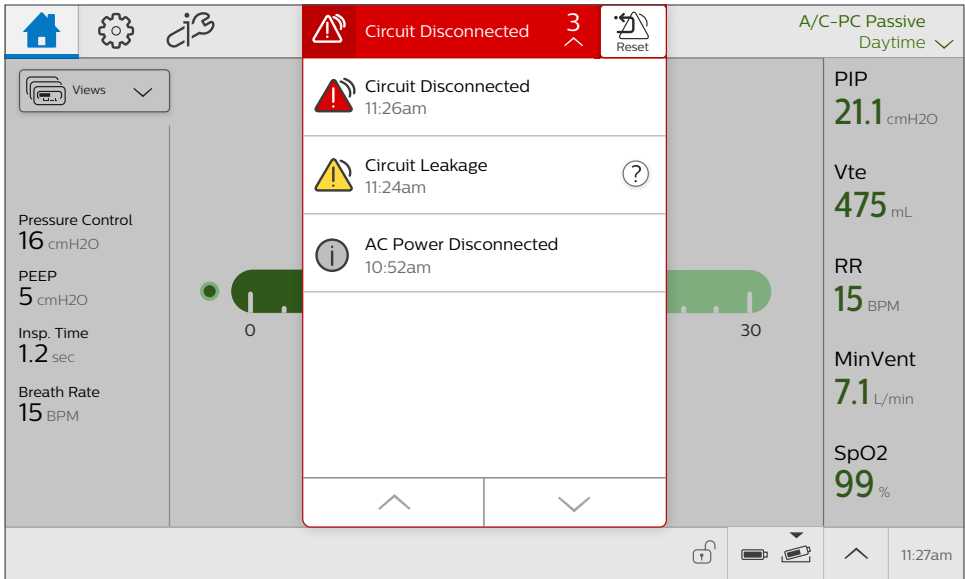
Most alarm settings are fixed values: you cannot change them. For example, all system and power alarm settings are fixed. But you can set certain patient-related alarms. These are explained in the sections that follow.

Alarm and Message Indicators		
Icon	Description	Light and sound indicators
	High priority alarm	Light bar flashes red
		Audible alarm repeats rapidly
	Medium priority alarm	Light bar flashes yellow
	Low priority alarm	Audible alarm repeats moderately
		Light bar glows steady yellow
	System message	Audible alarm repeats slowly
		Single beep
  	Resolved alarm or system message	None

6.3 The Alarm List

The Alarm List appears in the menu bar. The list is sorted by priority and then by time. The most urgent, most recent alarm appears at the top of the list. An alarm counter shows the number of active alarms.

Tap the alarm list to expand it and view the alarms. Tap the up and down arrows to navigate through the list.



When an alarm-triggering condition is no longer present, the alarm status changes to Resolved. The alarm or message remains visible but disabled in the list until you reset the alarm list. The Alarm Reset icon resets all active and resolved alarms.

To reset the alarm list, tap the **Alarm Reset** icon.



6.4 Setting and Changing Alarms

Warning: Be sure all alarms are appropriate for the patient before use.

You can change alarm settings when creating a new prescription or when editing an existing prescription. Each prescription will have a unique set of alarms and alarm settings.

To change an alarm setting:

1. On the menu bar, tap the **Prescription Settings** icon.
2. In the **Prescriptions** window, tap the **Alarm** tab.



3. Select the alarm you want to change.

4. Adjust the parameters in the lower pane.
5. To undo changes, tap the **Undo** button in the lower pane.
6. When you are ready to save your changes, tap **Accept**.

6.5 Setting the Alarm Volume

Warning: Be sure the alarm volume is set loud enough for the caregiver to hear it. Consider the use of a remote alarm or nurse call system. If you do use a remote alarm or nurse call system, fully test it before starting ventilation.

To set the alarm volume:

1. In the menu bar, tap the Options icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Device Options**.
3. In the **Device Options** window, tap **Alarm Volume**.
4. On the **Alarm Volume** dialog box, select the volume you want and then tap the **Accept** checkmark.

6.6 Responding to an Alarm

Warning: Visually monitor the patient and ventilator at all times during an alarm silence period. Allowing alarms to continue without intervention may result in harm to the patient.

When an alarm occurs:

1. Be sure the patient has adequate ventilation and oxygen. If required, provide an alternate method of ventilation.
2. Tap the **Alarm List** to view all alarms and messages. If you see the help icon,  you can tap it for more information.
3. If you want to silence the alarm temporarily, press the **Alarm Silence** button on the device to pause all audible alarms for 2 minutes.
4. Take action to resolve the alarm. For help on specific alarms, see "Alarms and System Messages."

6.7 Alarms and System Messages

This section contains the details of each alarm and system message:

6.7.1 High-Priority System Alarms

6.7.1.1 Ventilator Inoperative

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The system self-test indicates a failure or malfunction of a component. The failure causes therapy to stop or not meet essential performance criteria.
What to do	Provide an alternate method of ventilation then contact customer service.
Device performance	Therapy is stopped. Both audible and visual alarms are continuous. Depending on the systems impacted, you may or may not see a message on the screen.

6.7.1.2 Ventilator Service Required

Priority	High
Why it occurs	This alarm occurs when the device cannot perform to specification, a backup safety feature is compromised, or the delivery of therapy is compromised. The device continues to function (possibly in a reduced capacity mode).
What to do	Contact customer service.
Device performance	The device continues to function (possibly in a reduced capacity mode). If the problem is not corrected, the device will generate a reminder message until the issue is corrected. If therapy is stopped, a reminder message will immediately appear when therapy is turned on again.

6.7.1.3 Obstruction

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The ventilator detects an obstruction in the patient's inhalation path, exhalation path, or external flow sensor. The ventilator detects that the leak device is missing.
What to do	• Check the circuit. Is it kinked or pinched? • Check the bacterial filter. Is it blocked? • If using an Active Flow or Dual Limb circuit, check the HME. Is it blocked? • Is the leak device blocked or missing? • Is the external flow sensor blocked?
Device performance	The device automatically opens the active exhalation valve and continues to function.

Algorithm summary	When an obstruction is detected in an inhalation limb: an obstruction is detected when either of the following conditions exist: • The flow exiting the device is less than 0.5 L/min for 5 seconds continuously. • For Active Flow and Dual Limb circuits, the flow exiting the device during inspiration is less than 1 L/min for 5 seconds, 2 breaths, or 65 seconds for very low breath rates. Any circuit: The expiratory port is missing and causes an obstruction alarm if the average flow is less than 1 L/min for 2 breaths or 60 seconds. Active flow or dual limb circuit: an obstruction is detected when the external flow sensor measures less than 0.5 L/min for 65 continuous seconds. Note: The Obstruction alarm will not be triggered if there is an obstruction after the exhalation port (passive circuit) or after the active exhalation valve (Active PAP circuit). To detect such a condition, use the applicable alarm settings: Low Tidal Volume, Low Minute Ventilation, Low Respiratory Rate, or High Peak Inspiratory Pressure (volume modes) alarms.
-------------------	--

6.7.1.4 High Expiratory Pressure

Priority	High
Why it occurs	During the expiratory phase, the delivered pressure exceeds the target patient pressure by 5 cm H ₂ O or more.
What to do	• Check the circuit. Is it kinked or pinched? • Is the leak device blocked or occluded? Note: This alarm condition may be due the patient having a fast breath rate.
Device performance	The alarm is automatically resolved when the delivered pressure comes within 5 cm H₂O of the target patient pressure during the expiratory phase. The device continues to function.

6.7.1.5 High Inspiratory Pressure (pressure modes)

This High Inspiratory Pressure alarm applies to pressure modes only. For the High Inspiratory Pressure alarm that applies to volume modes, see "High Inspiratory Pressure (volume modes)."

Priority	High
Why it occurs.	Applies to A/C-PC, SIMV-PC, PSV, S/T, or AVAPS-AE therapy modes. During the inspiratory phase, the delivered pressure exceeds the target patient pressure by 5 cm H ₂ O or more.

What to do.	Check the patient. • Is the patient coughing? • Does the patient have excessive secretions? • Is the patient having bronchospasms? • Is the tracheotomy tube stable? Check the ventilator. • Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Is the leak device blocked? • Is the exhalation device blocked? • Are secretions in the HME?
Device performance	Inspiration is terminated with this alarm. The device automatically cycles to the expiratory phase and continues to function. The system resolves the alarm when the pressure returns to a normal value.

6.7.1.6 External Flow Sensor Failed

Priority	High
Why it occurs	A flow sensor offset or sensor failure is detected when the device is in standby or delivering therapy.
What to do	• Are the sensor and cable connected? • Are the sensor and cable damaged? • Clean if needed. • Replace if necessary.
Device performance	• The device continues to provide therapy at the set breath rate. • Volume control performance is reduced. • The ability to trigger on a patient-initiated breath is reduced. • Displays and alarms that use flow measurement, such as tidal volume, might not function properly. • Displays and alarms that use pressure measurement continue to function.

6.7.1.7 External Flow Sensor Cable Disconnected

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The external flow sensor cable becomes disconnected from the ventilator during active therapy. Active flow or dual limb circuit is selected and an external flow sensor cable is not connected.

What to do	• Are the sensor and cable connected? • Are they damaged? • Replace if necessary.
Device performance	• The device continues to provide therapy at the set breath rate. • Volume control performance is reduced. • The ability to trigger on a patient-initiated breath is reduced. • Displays and alarms that use flow measurement, such as tidal volume, might not function properly. • Displays and alarms that use pressure measurement continue to function.

6.7.1.8 External Flow Sensor Not Connected

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The external flow sensor becomes disconnected from the external flow sensor cable during active therapy.
What to do	• Are the sensor and cable connected? • Are they damaged? • Replace if necessary.
Device performance	• The device continues to provide therapy at the set breath rate. • Volume control performance is reduced. • The ability to trigger on a patient-initiated breath is reduced. • Displays and alarms that use flow measurement, such as tidal volume, might not function properly. • Displays and alarms that use pressure measurement continue to function.

6.7.1.9 External Flow Sensor Reversed

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The external flow sensor is connected backwards during active therapy.
What to do	Check the sensor position. The arrow direction should align with the air delivered to the patient.
Device performance	• The device continues to provide therapy at the set breath rate. • Volume control performance is reduced. • The ability to trigger on a patient-initiated breath is reduced. • Displays and alarms that use flow measurement, such as tidal volume, might not function properly. • Displays and alarms that use pressure measurement continue to function.

6.7.1.10 Active Exhalation Valve Failed

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The active exhalation valve is stuck closed.

What to do	• Single-limb active circuit: check all connections to the valve and check that the valve is clear. • Dual limb circuit: check that the valve is clear. • Replace the circuit or valve if necessary.
Device performance	Therapy delivery will be compromised. All displays and alarms will continue to function.

6.7.1.11 Check AEV Pilot Line

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The active-exhalation pressure control line is not connected, becomes disconnected, or contains water droplets that affect the active exhalation valve line pressure reading.
What to do	Inspect the line. Empty or replace it if necessary.
Device performance	Therapy delivery will be compromised. All displays and alarms will continue to function.

6.7.1.12 Proximal Pressure Line Disconnected

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The proximal pressure line is not connected.
What to do	• Is the line connected at both ends? • Is the line clean and not tangled? • Be sure the main circuit is connected and does not have large leaks. • Be sure the exhalation valve is intact.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the proximal pressure line connection is correct. Pressure displays and alarms do not function. Therapy delivery is not compromised.

6.7.1.13 Circuit Disconnected (MPV)

Priority	High
Why it occurs	When using mouthpiece ventilation, the system detects the circuit is disconnected.
What to do	Reconnect the circuit.
Device performance	The device continues to function.
Algorithm summary	The device detects when there is near zero backpressure at the outlet of the device for 3 seconds.

6.7.1.14 Oxygen Regulation

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The controller cannot regulate flow to guarantee FiO_2 accuracy within $10\% \pm 3\%$ of the FiO_2 setting.
What to do	• Verify the oxygen blender is connected properly. • Be sure that the oxygen source is appropriate. • Contact Philips Respironics Customer Service
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.2 High-Priority Patient Alarms with Variable Settings

6.7.2.1 Apnea

Priority	High
Why it occurs	Time between patient-initiated breaths is more than the alarm setting.
What to do	• Is the circuit connected to the patient? • Is there a leak or disconnect? • Is the circuit kinked or pinched?
Device performance	The alarm is automatically resolved when two patient breaths are detected that occur within set interval. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	5 to 60 seconds in increments of 5 seconds Available when Backup Ventilation is enabled

6.7.2.2 Circuit Disconnected

Warning: You should not rely on any single alarm to detect a circuit disconnect condition. Use the following alarms along with the Circuit Disconnected alarm:

- Low Tidal Volume
- Low Minute Ventilation
- Low Respiratory Rate
- Apnea

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The patient is not connected to the ventilator breathing circuit or there is a large leak.

What to do	• Is the circuit connected to the patient? • Is the circuit connected to the ventilator? • Does a large unplanned leak exist?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the circuit is reconnected or the excessive leak is fixed. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	Off, 5 to 60 seconds in increments of 5 seconds.
Algorithm summary	The alarm occurs when either of the following conditions are met: • The flow out of the device is excessive for a time greater than the alarm setting. • The ventilator examines all expiratory flow for a minimum of three breaths or amount of time greater than the alarm setting and determines that the circuit is disconnected or obstructed.

6.7.2.3 Low MinVent (Low Minute Ventilation)

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The patient's minute ventilation is less than or equal to the alarm setting. Or, no breath has occurred for 15 seconds.
What to do	• Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Does the circuit have a leak or disconnect? • Remove excessive water from the tubing. • Is the bacterial filter blocked or not connected? • Is the leak device blocked or not connected? • Check the patient.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the minute ventilation is greater than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	0.2 to 30 L/min in increments of 0.1 L/min.

6.7.2.4 Low Respiratory Rate

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The patient's respiratory rate is less than or equal to the low respiratory rate alarm setting. Or, no breath has occurred for 15 seconds.
What to do	• Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Does the circuit have a leak? • Is the circuit connected? • Check the patient.

Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the respiratory rate is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	Off, 1 to 90 BPM (breaths per minute) in increments of 1 BPM.

6.7.2.5 High Inspiratory Pressure (volume modes)

This High Inspiratory Pressure alarm applies to volume modes only. For the High Inspiratory Pressure alarm that applies to pressure modes, see "High Inspiratory Pressure (pressure modes)."

Priority	This alarm occurs in several stages and escalates from an audible beep, to a medium priority alarm, then to a high priority alarm if the condition persists
Why it occurs.	Applies to volume modes. The measured patient pressure exceeds the High Inspiratory Pressure setting.
What to do.	Check the patient. • Is the patient coughing? • Does the patient have excessive secretions? • Is the patient having bronchospasms? • Is the tracheotomy tube stable? Check the ventilator. • Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Is the leak device blocked? • Is the exhalation device blocked? • Are secretions in the HME?
Device performance.	Inspiration is terminated with this alarm. The device automatically cycles to the expiratory phase and continues to function. The system resolves the alarm when the pressure returns to a normal value.
Alarm Settings	10 to 90 cm H ₂ O in increments of 1.
Algorithm summary	The first two consecutive occurrences of the High Inspiratory alarm condition will generate an audible beep. On the third consecutive breath that meets the High Inspiratory alarm detection condition, the audible beeps escalate to a medium-priority alarm. The alarm will escalate to a High priority alarm if one of the following criteria are met: • The pressure at the end of inspiration exceeds the alarm limit and the time elapsed is ≥ 30 seconds. • The pressure at the end of inspiration on the tenth consecutive breath exceeds the alarm limit.

6.7.2.6 No Trigger

Priority	High
Why it occurs	Applies to mouthpiece ventilation. The time between patient-triggered breaths is greater than the No Trigger alarm setting.
What to do	• Check the patient. • Is the circuit within reach? • Is the circuit intact? • Is the PEEP high enough to generate sufficient signal flow when the mouthpiece is touched?
Device performance	The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	0.5 to 15 minutes in increments of 0.5 minutes.

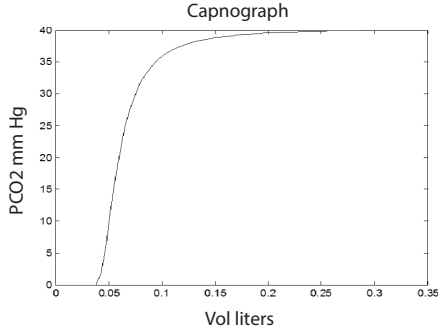
6.7.3 Medium-Priority System Alarms

6.7.3.1 Circuit Leakage

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	In the Active PAP circuit, a leak in the active exhalation valve is detected
What to do	• Is the valve or either line kinked or pinched? • Does the circuit or either line have a leak? • Is the circuit and AEV connected at both ends? • Is the valve damaged? • Can it open and close?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the circuit is reconnected or the valve is fixed. The device continues to function.
Algorithm summary	The flow from the device at the end of the expiratory phase is greater than a threshold based on a typical flow that would result if a 0.25" diameter orifice leak were present in the circuit.

6.7.3.2 Rebreathing Detected

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The ventilator detects the potential for the inhalation of exhaled gases.
What to do	• Is the leak device partially clogged? • Is the exhalation valve attached? • Increase expiratory leak flow.

Device performance	The alarm is automatically resolved when the condition of rebreathing is removed. The device continues to function.
Algorithm summary	This alarm is based on an estimation of the inhaled fraction of carbon dioxide (FiCO_2). For each breath, the ventilator assigns a percentage of FiCO_2. When the sum of the percentages for the most recent breaths exceeds 30%, the alarm is announced. (i.e. 1% for 30 consecutive breaths) The concentration estimate is based on nominal volumetric capnography curves, measured flow in the inhalation limb, and patient tidal volume. This figure shows the assumed shape of the capnograph for a given volume of exhaled gases. 

6.7.3.3 Volume Under Delivery

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	Applies to A/C-VC and SIMV-VC therapy modes. A system limit is reached and the set volume cannot be reached for 3 consecutive breaths.
What to do	• Check the patient. • Is the circuit blocked? • Is the airway blocked? • Is the high pressure alarm limit correct? • Review these settings to make sure they are correct. — Inspiratory Time — Tidal Volume — Flow Pattern • Make sure the patient and ventilator are aligned by looking at the waveforms and changing the trigger settings.
Device performance	The device continues to function. The device attempts to deliver the set therapy. All monitored parameters and alarms continue to function.

Algorithm summary	These modes are designed to regulate the tidal volume on each breath, thus the alarm is generated when the inhaled tidal volume is less than or equal to 85% of the tidal volume setting for 3 consecutive breaths.
-------------------	---

6.7.3.4 Loss of CO₂ Signal

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The High EtCO₂ alarm or Low EtCO₂ alarm is enabled and the sensor has reported valid data for 3 continuous seconds. Then one of the following happens: • The EtCO₂ sensor reports invalid data. • The sensor signal is lost. • No breaths are detected for more than 10 seconds during therapy.
What to do	• Is the sensor attached to the ventilator? • Is the sensor attached to the circuit?
Device performance	The systems resolves the alarm when the sensor is properly attached and reporting data. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.5 Loss of SpO₂ Signal

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	One of the following alarms is enabled: • Low SpO₂ • High SpO₂ • Low Pulse Rate • High Pulse Rate And the oximeter has reported valid data for 3 seconds. But then, while in the therapy or standby state, one of the following occurs. • The oximeter reports invalid data. • The oximeter is not connected for more than 10 seconds.
What to do	• Be sure that the SpO₂ sensor is properly attached to the patient. Reposition if necessary. • Be sure all cables are connected.
Device performance	The device continues to function. The system resolves the alarm when the oximeter reports data for more than 10 seconds.

6.7.3.6 CO₂ Sensor Adapter Zero Required

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The CO ₂ sensor requests a zero (reset) during therapy.
What to do	Reset the CO ₂ level. See "CO ₂ Sensor Adapter Zero."
Device performance	CO ₂ displays and alarms do not function. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.7 Check/Change CO₂ Airway Adapter

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The CO ₂ sensor reports that a check is required during therapy.
What to do	Check the CO ₂ sensor.
Device performance	CO ₂ displays and alarms do not function. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.8 CO₂ Sensor Failure

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The CO ₂ sensor reports a fault during therapy.
What to do	• Disconnect and then reconnect the sensor. • Replace the sensor.
Device performance	CO ₂ displays and alarms do not function. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.9 FiO₂ Sensor Disconnected

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The High FiO ₂ alarm or Low FiO ₂ alarm is enabled and the sensor has become disconnected.
What to do	• Be sure that the FiO₂ sensor is connected. • Replace the sensor, if needed.
Device performance	• FiO₂ monitoring is lost until the sensor issue is resolved. • The device continues to function.

6.7.3.10 Replace FiO₂ Sensor

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The High FiO ₂ alarm or Low FiO ₂ alarm is enabled and the sensor has failed or reached its end of life..
What to do	• Replace the sensor. • To continue therapy without alarming, either remove the sensor or disable FiO₂ in Device settings.
Device performance	• FiO₂ monitoring is ineffective or is no longer functioning. • The device continues to function.

6.7.3.11 Low Expiratory Pressure

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	During the expiratory phase, the delivered pressure is 5 cm H ₂ O or more below the target patient pressure.
What to do	• Does the circuit have a leak? • Is the circuit connected? • Is the circuit kinked or pinched?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the delivered pressure comes within 5 cm H ₂ O of the target patient pressure during the expiratory phase. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.12 Low Inspiratory Pressure (pressure modes)

This Low Inspiratory Pressure alarm applies to pressure modes only. For the Low Inspiratory Pressure alarm that applies to volume modes, see "Low Inspiratory Pressure Alarm (volume modes)."

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	Applies to A/C-PC, SIMV-PC, PSV, S/T, or AVAPS-AE therapy modes. During the inspiratory phase, the delivered pressure is 5 cm H ₂ O or more below the target patient pressure.
What to do	• Does the circuit have a leak? • Is the circuit connected? • Is the circuit kinked or pinched?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the delivered pressure comes within 5 cm H ₂ O of the target patient pressure during the inspiratory phase. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.13 Low Oxygen Inlet Pressure

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The pressure at the O ₂ inlet is too low to support the FiO ₂ setting.
What to do	Check the O ₂ source.
Device performance	FiO ₂ delivery may be inaccurate. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.14 High Oxygen Inlet Pressure

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured oxygen inlet pressure is greater than or equal to 87 psig.
What to do	Check the O ₂ source.
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.3.15 Medium-Priority Patient Alarms with Variable Settings**6.7.3.16 High Tidal Volume**

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	<i>Passive, active flow, or dual limb circuit types:</i> The estimated exhaled tidal volume is more than or equal to the alarm setting for a number of breaths depending on the therapy mode: • Three consecutive breaths: A/C-PC, CPAP, PSV, S/T, SIMV-VC, and SIMV-PC • Six consecutive breaths: A/C-VC When AVAPS or AVAPS-AE mode is enabled, this alarm occurs when the Tidal Volume is more than or equal to the alarm threshold for one minute and Set Inspiratory Pressure is less than or equal to (Set Inspiratory Pressure min + 1 cm H₂O). <i>Active PAP circuit type:</i> The delivered tidal volume is more than or equal to the alarm setting for three consecutive breaths.
What to do	• Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Is the active exhalation valve attached? Note: For active flow and dual limb circuits, low flow O₂ or a nebulizer may increase tidal volumes above the alarm setting.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when a breath occurs in which the exhaled tidal volume is below the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	10 to 2000 ml in increments of 5 ml.

6.7.3.17 Low Tidal Volume

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	<i>Passive, active flow, or dual limb circuit types:</i> The estimated exhaled tidal volume is less than or equal to the low tidal volume alarm setting for a number of breaths depending on the therapy mode: • Three consecutive breaths: A/C-PC, CPAP, PSV, S/T, SIMV-VC, and SIMV-PC • Six consecutive breaths: A/C-VC When AVAPS or AVAPS-AE mode is enabled, this alarm occurs when the Tidal Volume is less than or equal to the alarm setting for one minute and Set Inspiratory Pressure is greater than or equal to (Set Inspiratory Pressure max - 1 cm H₂O). <i>Active PAP circuit type:</i> The delivered tidal volume is less than or equal to the low tidal volume setting.
What to do	• Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Is the leak device blocked or clogged? • Is the leak device connected? • Is the diaphragm in the active exhalation device placed correctly? • Does the mask fit? • Do you need to change the mask?
Device performance	<i>Passive, active flow, or dual limb circuit types:</i> The system resolves the alarm when a breath occurs in which the exhaled tidal volume is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function. <i>Active PAP circuit type:</i> The system resolves the alarm when a breath occurs in which the exhaled tidal volume is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	10 to 2000 ml in increments of 5 ml.

6.7.3.18 High MinVent (High Minute Ventilation)

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The patient's minute ventilation is more than or equal to the high minute ventilation alarm setting.
What to do	Check the patient.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the minute ventilation is less than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	0.2 to 30 L/min in minimum increments of 0.1 L/min.

6.7.3.19 High Respiratory Rate

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The respiratory rate is more than the alarm setting. When the trigger type is 'Off' then the spontaneous respiratory rate does not trigger the alarm.
What to do	• Check the patient. • Is the trigger too sensitive?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the respiratory rate is less than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	Off, 1 to 90 BPM (breaths per minute) in increments of 1 BPM.

6.7.3.20 Low Inspiratory Pressure Alarm (volume modes)

This Low Inspiratory Pressure alarm applies to volume modes only. For the Low Inspiratory Pressure alarm that applies to volume modes, see "Low Inspiratory Pressure (pressure modes)."

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	Applies to volume modes. The measured peak inspiratory pressure is less than or equal to the alarm setting.
What to do	• Could patient changes have caused this alarm? Such as excessive patient inspiratory effort? • Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Is there a leak in the circuit? • Is the circuit connected?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the peak inspiratory pressure is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	PEEP+1 to 89 cm H ₂ O in increments of 1 cm H ₂ O. For mouthpiece ventilation, the alarm is automatically set to PEEP + 1 cm H ₂ O.

6.7.3.21 Low SpO₂

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured SpO ₂ is less than or equal to the alarm setting for 10 seconds during therapy or in the standby state.
What to do	• Check the patient. • Check all oxygen connections. • Is the oxygen source appropriate? • Are the therapy settings appropriate?

Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the SpO ₂ is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
--------------------	---

Alarm Settings	50 to 99% in increments of 1%.
----------------	--------------------------------

6.7.3.22 High SpO₂

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured SpO ₂ is greater than or equal to the alarm setting for 10 seconds during therapy or in the standby state.

What to do	• Check the patient. • Is the oxygen source appropriate? • Are the therapy settings appropriate?
------------	--

Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the SpO ₂ is less than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
--------------------	---

Alarm Settings	90 to 100% in increments of 1%.
----------------	---------------------------------

6.7.3.23 Low EtCO₂

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured EtCO ₂ is less than or equal to the alarm setting for 10 seconds during therapy.

What to do	• Check the patient. • If there is a tracheal tube, is it inserted? • Is the leak excessive? A high leak reduces the EtCO₂. • Check the tidal volume, minute ventilation and respiratory rate settings. Are they correct?
------------	---

Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the EtCO ₂ is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
--------------------	--

Alarm Settings	Off, 1 to 100 mmHg in increments of 1 mmHg.
----------------	---

6.7.3.24 High EtCO₂

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured EtCO ₂ is more than or equal to the alarm setting for 10 seconds during therapy.

What to do	• Passive circuit: check for an insufficient leak • Active and dual limb circuits: be sure the valve is operable
------------	---

Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the EtCO ₂ is less than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	Off, 1 to 100 mmHg in increments of 1 mmHg.

6.7.3.25 Low FiO₂

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured FiO ₂ is less than or equal to the alarm setting for 10 seconds during therapy.
What to do	• Check the patient. • Check all oxygen connections. • Is the oxygen source appropriate? • Recalibrate the FiO₂ sensor.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the FiO ₂ is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	21 to 95% in increments of 1%.

6.7.3.26 High FiO₂

This alarm is disabled when 100% O₂ is active.

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured FiO ₂ is more than or equal to the alarm setting for 10 seconds during therapy.
What to do	• Check the patient. • Is the oxygen source appropriate? • Recalibrate the FiO₂ sensor.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the FiO ₂ is less than the alarm setting for 10 consecutive seconds. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	27 to 100% in increments of 1%

6.7.4 Low-Priority System Alarms

6.7.4.1 Stuck Key

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	An On/Off (Standby) button or Alarm Silence button is stuck for at least 120 seconds.

What to do	Contact customer service.
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.4.2 Inlet Filter Blocked

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	The inlet filter becomes blocked and delivered therapy is reduced.
What to do	- Is the air inlet blocked? - Remove any filter. If the filter is the air-inlet foam filter, rinse it. See "Rinsing the Air-Inlet Foam Filter.". Otherwise, replace the filter.
Device performance	The device continues to function.
Algorithm summary	Because the inlet filter is blocked, the pressure generated by the ventilator is less than 75% of the estimated outlet pressure based on the nominal performance characteristics of the device.

6.7.4.3 Check Proximal Pressure Line

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	The proximal pressure line connection may be faulty. The line may contain water droplets that affect the pressure reading.
What to do	- Is the proximal pressure line connected at both ends? - Is the line clean and untangled? - If necessary, clear the line and reconnect.
Device performance	- Displays and alarms that use the pressure measurement do not function - Displays and alarms that use the flow measurement, such as tidal volume, continue to function - The device continues to function.
Algorithm summary	During periods of the breath when there is low flow in the inhalation limb, the pressure measured at the outlet of the device is compared to the pressure measured by the proximal line. When the difference is greater than 5 cm H ₂ O at low flow for three consecutive breaths, the alarm occurs.

6.7.5 Low-Priority Patient Alarms with Variable Settings

6.7.5.1 Low Pulse Rate

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	The pulse oximeter must have reported valid data for the previous three seconds. In the standby and therapy states, the pulse rate is less than or equal to the low pulse rate alarm setting.
What to do	• Check the patient. • Check sensor placement and reposition.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the pulse rate is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	Off, 18 to 300 beats per minute in increments of 1 beat per minute.

6.7.5.2 High Pulse Rate

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	The pulse oximeter must have reported valid data for the previous three seconds. In the standby and therapy states, the pulse rate is more than or equal to the high pulse rate alarm setting.
What to do	Check the patient.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the pulse rate is less than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	Off, 18 to 300 beats per minute in increments of 1 beat per minute.

6.7.6 Power Alarms

6.7.6.1 Low Battery

Warning: If the high-priority “Low Battery” alarm occurs, immediately connect the ventilator to an alternate power source. If no alternate power source is available, immediately place the patient on an alternate source of ventilation.

Priority	<i>Medium priority</i> when the last available battery can provide close to 20 minutes of therapy. <i>High priority</i> when the last available battery can provide close to 10 minutes of therapy.
Why it occurs	The last battery available is low or nearly depleted.
What to do	• Immediately connect the ventilator to an alternate power source. • If no alternate power source is available, immediately place the patient on an alternate source of ventilation.
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.6.2 AC Power Disconnected

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	AC power is disconnected during therapy or standby states.
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.6.3 Internal Battery in Use

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	• The power source has switched to the internal battery. • You start therapy on internal battery power.
What to do	• Confirm the remaining battery capacity. This is the last available power source. • Prepare an alternative power source such as AC power or an external battery.
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.6.4 Replace Detachable Battery

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	The detachable battery has failed. Or, the battery is nearing the end of its useful life.

What to do	Replace the detachable battery. If the alarm continues, plug the device into an AC power source.
Device performance	The device continues to function. If the condition still exists 60 minutes after you reset the alarm, the alarm repeats.

6.7.6.5 Internal Battery Depleted

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	The internal battery is depleted.
What to do	Connect AC power or an external battery to charge the internal battery.
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.6.6 Loss of All Power

Priority	High
Why it occurs	All power to the device is lost while delivering therapy.
What to do	• Immediately connect the ventilator to an alternate power source. • If no alternate power source is available, immediately place the patient on an alternate source of ventilation.
Device performance	This alarm behaves differently from other high-priority alarms. When all power is lost, the ventilator beeps and LED lights flash. To stop the alarm, press the Audio Pause button or connect a usable power source.

6.7.7 System Messages

Message	Cause
External DC Source Disconnected	Power supplied from an external DC source becomes disconnected or depleted.
External DC Source Depleted	The external DC power source is depleted.
Check External DC Source	An external battery is connected but cannot supply sufficient power. Check for a faulty cable, bad connection, or bad battery.
Detachable Battery Depleted	The detachable battery is depleted.
Internal Battery Not Charging – Temperature	The system is unable to charge the internal battery due to temperature. Change the environmental temperature or relocate the device.
Internal Battery Not Discharging – Temperature	The internal battery is unable to power the device due to temperature. Change the environmental temperature or relocate the device.
Detachable Battery Not Charging – Temperature	The system is unable to charge the detachable battery due to temperature. Change the environmental temperature or relocate the device.

Detachable Battery Not Discharging – Temperature	The system is unable to discharge the detachable battery due to temperature. Change the environmental temperature or relocate the device.
Start On Battery	- Trilogy Evo is turned on and AC power is not detected. Reconnect AC power. - Power is restored after losing all power and AC power is not detected. Reconnect AC power.
Circuit Mismatch	The circuit type selected for use does not match the circuit connected for three consecutive breaths. Check the circuit type. Connect a circuit that matches the prescription. Or, change the circuit type.
Unsupported Accessory Connected	An unsupported accessory is connected to Trilogy Evo.
FiO ₂ sensor not calibrated	FiO ₂ monitoring is enabled but the FiO ₂ sensor was not calibrated
SpO ₂ Monitor Connected	Indicates a pulse oximeter is now connected.

6.8 Patient-related Alarm Availability by Therapy Mode

Most alarms function regardless of the therapy mode being delivered. However, certain alarms function only when certain therapy modes are being delivered.

The chart below lists those alarms and the therapy modes in which the alarms are available.

Alarm	A/C-PC	MPV-PC	A/C-VC	MPV-VC	CPAP	PSV	S/T	SIMV-PC	SIMV-VC	AVAPS-AE
Apnea (requires Backup Ventilation)					•	•		•	•	
Circuit Disconnected	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•
High Tidal Volume	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•
Low Tidal Volume	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•
High MinVent	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•
Low MinVent	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•
High Respiratory Rate	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•
Low Respiratory Rate	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•
High Inspiratory Pressure			•	•					•	
Low Inspiratory Pressure			•	•					•	
No Trigger		•								
High SpO ₂	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•
Low SpO ₂	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•

Alarm	A/C-PC	MPV-PC	A/C-VC	MPV-VC	CPAP	PSV	S/T	SIMV-PC	SIMV-VC	AVAPS-AE
High Pulse Rate	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•
Low Pulse Rate	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•
High EtCO ₂	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•
Low EtCO ₂	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•
High FiO ₂	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•
Low FiO ₂	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•

6.9 Testing Alarms

Test alarms any time you make a significant change to the system. If the alarm that you are testing does not activate, adjust the alarm settings and retry.

6.9.1 Testing Circuit Disconnection Alarms

For ventilator-dependent patients, do not rely on any single alarm to detect when a circuit is disconnected. One or more of the following alarms may indicate a disconnected circuit.

- Circuit Disconnected
- Low Tidal Volume
- Low Minute Ventilation
- Low Respiratory Rate
- Low Peak Inspiratory Pressure alarms (user settable for volume modes)
- Leakage alarm (Active PAP circuit only)

To test that these alarms detect a circuit disconnection, follow these steps.

1. Be sure the patient is connected to the ventilator and that therapy is stable. Be sure that none of the alarms above are active.
2. Disconnect the circuit at the patient interface. Be sure all circuit accessories remain attached.
3. Confirm that one or more of the alarms listed above activate.
4. Reconnect the circuit and confirm that any active alarm automatically resets.

6.9.2 Testing Circuit Obstruction Alarms

For ventilator-dependent patients, do not rely on any single alarm to detect when a circuit is obstructed. One or more of the following alarms may indicate an obstructed circuit.

- Obstruction
- High Inspiratory Pressure
- Circuit Disconnected
- Low Tidal Volume
- Low Minute Ventilation
- Low Respiratory Rate
- Low Peak Inspiratory Pressure alarms (settable for volume modes)
- Leakage alarm (Active PAP circuit only)
- Rebreathing Detected

To test that these alarms detect a circuit obstruction, follow these steps.

1. Be sure that the patient is connected to the ventilator and that therapy is stable.
2. *For a Passive circuit:* Disconnect the circuit at the patient end, remove the leak device and block the end of the circuit.
For an Active circuit: Disconnect the circuit at the patient end and block the end of the circuit.
3. Confirm that one or more of the alarms listed above activate.
4. Reconnect the circuit and confirm that any active alarm automatically resets.

6.9.3 Testing the Leakage Alarm

For an Active PAP circuit, the Leakage alarm detects a leak in the active exhalation valve (AEV).

To test the Leakage alarm, follow these steps.

1. Be sure that the patient is connected to the ventilator and that therapy is stable.
2. Disconnect the AEV control line from the ventilator.
3. Confirm that the *Circuit Leakage*, and/or *Check AEV Line* alarm activates.
4. Reconnect the AEV control line and confirm that the alarm automatically resets.

6.9.4 Testing the Low FiO₂ Alarm with Low Flow Oxygen

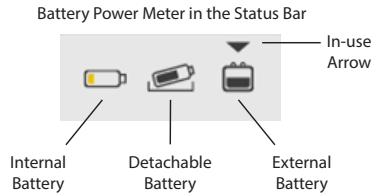
This test applies only when low flow oxygen is in use. The Low FiO₂ alarm requires an FiO₂ sensor to be connected and the FiO₂ sensor setting to be turned on.

To test the loss of low flow oxygen, follow these steps.

1. Be sure that the patient is connected to the ventilator and that therapy is stable.
2. Disconnect the oxygen from the ventilator.
3. Confirm that the *Low FiO₂* alarm activates.
4. Reconnect the oxygen and confirm that the alarm automatically clears, which may take 30 seconds or more.

6.9.5 Testing Power Alarms

When a power source is disconnected, Trilogy Evo automatically switches to the next available power source. For the priority of power sources, see "Overview." When confirming that the system is using battery power, the In-use Arrow should point to the battery that is providing power. The device should continue to function during these tests.



To test the power alarms, follow these steps.

1. Connect the device to AC power.
2. Be sure the device is using AC power. The green LED next to the power button should be lit.
3. Disconnect AC power (pull the power cord out of the outlet).
4. Confirm that the *AC Disconnected* alarm activates.
5. If connected to an external battery, go to the next step. Otherwise go to step 9.
6. Confirm that the power source is the external battery.
7. Disconnect the external battery.
8. Confirm that the *External DC Source Disconnected* system message appears.
9. Confirm that the power source is the detachable battery.
10. Remove the detachable battery.
11. Confirm that the power source is now the internal battery and that the *Internal Battery in Use* alarm activates.

To test the low battery alarm:

This test may require several hours to complete. During the test, if you want to silence the alarm temporarily, press the **Alarm Silence** button on the device to pause all audible alarms for 2 minutes. Because this test is performed during therapy, monitor the patient closely to ensure therapy is not interrupted.

1. Be sure that AC power is available to recharge the batteries at the end of the test.
2. Disconnect external power sources and remove the detachable battery.
3. Continue to allow the device to use internal battery power while delivering therapy.

4. Confirm that the medium-priority *Low Battery* alarm activates and that the device continues to function.
5. Continue to allow the device to use internal battery power. Ensure you monitor the patient.
6. Confirm that the high-priority *Low Battery* alarm activates and that the device continues to function.
7. Insert the detachable battery and reconnect AC power to recharge the batteries.

6.9.6 Testing Therapy Setting Alarms

When testing alarms, remember that you can use the Alarm Silence button.

To test the alarms related to therapy settings, you set the alarm limit outside of the measured value and confirm that the alarm activates. Perform the test for both the high and low limits.

To test alarms related to the limits of therapy settings, follow these steps.

1. Set the therapy mode to A/C-VC.
2. Connect a circuit to the device and to a test lung.
3. Observe the measured values.
4. Set the alarm limit below the measured value.
5. Confirm that the alarm activates.
6. Restore the alarm limit.
7. Repeat steps 4 through 6, setting the alarm above the measured value.

Perform the test for each of the following alarms:

- High Tidal Volume
- Low Tidal Volume
- High Minute Ventilation
- Low Minute Ventilation
- High Respiratory Rate
- Low Respiratory Rate
- High Inspiratory Pressure
- Low Inspiratory Pressure

6.9.7 Testing Patient-Monitoring Alarms

Before testing these alarms, be sure that the patient is connected to the ventilator and that ventilation is stabilized. Be sure that the monitor is connected and functional.

To test alarms related to patient monitoring where the alarm limits are settable:

1. Observe the measured values.
2. Set the alarm limit below the measured value.
3. Confirm that the alarm activates.
4. Restore the alarm limit.
5. Repeat steps 1 through 4, setting the alarm above the measured value.

Repeat the test for each of the following alarms that you want to test:

- High EtCO₂
- Low EtCO₂
- High FiO₂
- Low FiO₂
- High Pulse Rate
- Low Pulse Rate
- High SpO₂
- Low SpO₂

7. Device Options

7.1 Overview

Use the Options window to change device options, run calibrations and tests, and view and work with data.

The Options window includes the following features:

- “Device Options”
- “Calibration”
- “Data Transfer”
- “Information”
- “Alarm and Event Log”
- “Prescription Preferences”

7.2 Device Options

Use the Device Options feature to customize Trilogy Evo. When working with settings, be sure you save your changes. After 30 seconds of inactivity, the system reverts to the previous setting and your changes are not saved.

To change a setting:

1. In the menu bar, tap the Options icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Device Options**.
3. In the **Device Options** window, tap the setting you want to change.
4. In the option dialog box, make your selection.
5. When your selection is complete, on the title bar, tap the **Accept** checkmark.

Option	Description
Language	Set the device language.
Alarm Volume	Set system alarm loudness.
Screen Brightness	Set screen brightness.
Light Bar	Turn the light bar on or off.
Automatic Touchscreen Lock	Automatically locks the screen after five minutes of inactivity. The screen automatically unlocks during an alarm.
Screen Saver	Select the type of screen saver that you want to use.
Date and Format	Set the system date and format.
Time and Format	Set the system time and select 12- or 24-hour format.

FiO ₂ Sensor	Turn the FiO ₂ sensor on or off.
NFC	Turn near field communication on or off.
Bluetooth	• <i>To enable a Bluetooth connection:</i> tap Bluetooth. On the dialog box, tap On. A Bluetooth symbol appears in the Status Bar to show when devices are connected. • <i>To disable a Bluetooth connection:</i> tap Bluetooth. On the dialog box, tap Off. • <i>To clear all devices from memory:</i> tap Bluetooth. On the dialog box, tap Forget All Devices. (Disabled when Bluetooth is not enabled.) Note: Bluetooth may not be present in all models.
Data Encryption	• The data on Trilogy Evo is already encrypted. • By enabling Encryption, some additional information will be required to read the data by a certified provider • If the Encryption was enabled and the user selects OFF, all of the patient data will be deleted. We recommend that only the certified provider makes this action.
Menu Access Level	Full: all features and functions are available. Limited: restricts access to system functions – for a home caregiver’s use.
Device Units	Select the pressure and CO ₂ measurement units

7.3 Calibration

7.3.1 Circuit Calibration Concepts

The Trilogy Evo is optimized for circuits that are within the specifications shown in “Circuit Requirements.” If you want to use a different circuit, you can perform an optional Circuit Calibration, intended to characterize compliance and resistance. A clinician may recommend that you calibrate the circuit. The circuit calibration process includes the following procedures, based on the circuit type:

- *Active circuits:* calibrates according to the results of the leak test, compliance, and resistance
- *Passive circuits:* calibrates according to the compliance and resistance
- *MPV circuits:* not available

When you calibrate the circuit, follow the instructions on the screen as the system completes the tests.

If the calibration is successful, then you will see a confirmation message.

If the circuit fails any part of the test, the reason appears on the screen. Adjust the circuit and repeat the

calibration. If you repeat the calibration but the circuit still fails, either replace the circuit and try again or use the default settings.

Information about the circuit calibration is recorded in the Event Log. For help with the Event Log, see “Alarm and Event Log.”

7.3.1.1 Calibrating a Circuit

To calibrate a circuit, follow these steps.

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Calibration & Setup**.
3. In the **Calibration & Setup** window, tap **Circuit Calibration**.
4. In the **Calibrate Circuit** window, in the **Current Prescriptions** list, tap the prescription you want to calibrate and then tap **Calibrate**.
5. Follow the instructions on the screen.
 - If any part of the test fails, correct the issue suggested on the screen and then tap **Retest** to continue the test.
 - To cancel the test, tap **Quit**.

7.3.1.2 Using Default Settings

If you want to stop using calibrated settings and return to the default settings, follow these steps:

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Calibration & Setup**.
3. In the **Calibration & Setup** window, tap **Circuit Calibration**.
4. In the **Calibrate Circuit** window, in the **Current Prescriptions** list, locate the prescription you want to calibrate and then tap **Set to Default Calibration**.
5. On the confirmation window, tap **Yes**.

7.3.2 Leak Test

A full circuit calibration includes a leak test to check the active exhalation valve. Use the Leak Test procedure when you only want to check this valve. A clinician may recommend that you perform a leak test.

Prerequisites:

- Be sure the prescription is for an active circuit type:
 - Active Flow
 - Active PAP
 - Dual Limb
- Remove the patient interface from the circuit.
- Block the end of the circuit where the patient interface would be.

- Be sure the external active exhalation valve is assembled and connected.

To perform a leak test, follow these steps.

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Calibration & Setup**.
3. In the **Calibration & Setup** window, tap **Leak Test**.
4. Review the prerequisites and then tap **Start**.
5. The system performs the test. The results appear in the test progress pane. If the test:
 - *Fails*: Review the failure reasons. If you want to try again, tap **Retest**; otherwise, tap **Quit**.
 - *Passes*: Tap **OK**.

7.3.3 FiO₂ Sensor Calibration

Prerequisites:

- Be sure the patient circuit is connected.
- Remove the patient interface from the circuit.
- Remove any passive exhalation device.
- Connect high-pressure O₂.
- If your device model contains an oxygen blender, then connect high-pressure O₂ and be sure that low-flow O₂ is not connected.
- If your device model does not contain an oxygen blender, then be sure that low-flow O₂ is not connected.

To calibrate the FiO₂ sensor, follow these steps.

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Calibration & Setup**.
3. In the **Calibration & Setup** window, tap **O₂ Sensor Calibration**.
4. Review the prerequisites and then tap **Start**.
5. The system performs the Circuit Flush test. The results appear in the progress pane. If the test:
 - *Fails*: Review the failure reasons. If you want to try again, tap **Retest**; otherwise, tap **Quit**.
 - *Passes*: Go to the next step.
6. Block the end of the circuit and then tap **Continue**.
7. The system performs the 21% Calibration test. The results appear in the progress pane. If the test:
 - *Fails*: Review the failure reasons. If you want to try again, tap **Retest**; otherwise, tap **Quit**.
 - *Passes*: Go to the next step.

8. Confirm If you are using an oxygen-blending module, confirm that high-pressure O₂ is connected and the circuit outlet is blocked and then tap **Continue**. Otherwise, the test is complete.
9. The system performs the test. The results appear in the test progress pane. If the test:
 - Fails: Review the failure reasons. If you want to try again, tap **Retest**; otherwise, tap **Quit**. To deactivate the FiO₂ sensor, turn off the FiO₂ sensor. See “Device Options.”
 - Passes: Tap **OK**.

7.3.4 CO₂ Sensor Adapter Zero

Perform this task when installing a CO₂ sensor (capnograph) and when indicated by the Check/Change CO₂ Airway Adapter alarm.

To establish a baseline CO₂ level, follow these steps.

1. Place the CO₂ sensor onto a clean and dry airway adapter that is exposed to room air, but is away from all CO₂ sources including the ventilator, your breath, and the patient's breath.
2. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
3. In the **Options** window, tap **Calibration & Setup**.
4. In the **Calibration & Setup** window, tap **CO₂ Sensor Adapter Zero**.
5. Review the prerequisites and then tap **Start**.
6. The system performs the test. The results appear in the test progress pane. If the test:
 - Fails: Review the failure reasons. If you want to try again, tap **Retest**; otherwise, tap **Quit**.
 - Passes: tap **OK**.

7.4 Data Transfer

Use data transfer functions to import and export data. When working with personal health information, be sure the data is kept secure. When working with an external storage device that contains patient information, such as a USB flash drive, be sure you delete that data by reformatting the storage device.

The following data transfer icons appear in the Status Bar during transfer.

USB Data Transfer icon:



Bluetooth Data Transfer icon:



To access the data transfer functions, follow these steps.

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Data Transfer**.
3. In the **Data Transfer** window, tap the procedure you would like to perform and then follow the prompts on the screen:

Function	Description								
Export Alarm & Event Log	Export the alarm and event logs. If two storage devices are connected, the logs are saved to the device that was connected first.								
Export Data - USB	Export data to a storage device connected to the USB port. Data is identified by the device serial number. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Data type</th><th>Data stored</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Changes to the ventilator, alarms, prescriptions, accessories and oxygen</td><td rowspan="2">6 months</td></tr> <tr> <td>30-second averages of each therapy parameter related to the therapy provided to the patient</td></tr> <tr> <td>Waveform data including pressure, flow, volume, and total leak</td><td rowspan="2">31 days</td></tr> <tr> <td>Patient monitors: • CO₂ monitor data • Oximeter data • FiO₂ monitor data </td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Data type	Data stored	Changes to the ventilator, alarms, prescriptions, accessories and oxygen	6 months	30-second averages of each therapy parameter related to the therapy provided to the patient	Waveform data including pressure, flow, volume, and total leak	31 days	Patient monitors: • CO₂ monitor data • Oximeter data • FiO₂ monitor data
Data type	Data stored								
Changes to the ventilator, alarms, prescriptions, accessories and oxygen	6 months								
30-second averages of each therapy parameter related to the therapy provided to the patient									
Waveform data including pressure, flow, volume, and total leak	31 days								
Patient monitors: • CO₂ monitor data • Oximeter data • FiO₂ monitor data									
Export Data - Bluetooth	Export data to a storage device connected through Bluetooth. Data is identified by the device serial number. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Data type</th><th>Data stored</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Changes to the ventilator, alarms, prescriptions, accessories and oxygen</td><td rowspan="2">6 months</td></tr> <tr> <td>30-second averages of each therapy parameter related to the therapy provided to the patient</td></tr> <tr> <td>Patient monitors: • CO₂ monitor data • Oximeter data • FiO₂ monitor data </td><td>31 days</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Data type	Data stored	Changes to the ventilator, alarms, prescriptions, accessories and oxygen	6 months	30-second averages of each therapy parameter related to the therapy provided to the patient	Patient monitors: • CO₂ monitor data • Oximeter data • FiO₂ monitor data	31 days	
Data type	Data stored								
Changes to the ventilator, alarms, prescriptions, accessories and oxygen	6 months								
30-second averages of each therapy parameter related to the therapy provided to the patient									
Patient monitors: • CO₂ monitor data • Oximeter data • FiO₂ monitor data	31 days								
Install Prescriptions	Installs prescriptions that were previously exported. Warning: Verify prescription changes made with the USB stick.								
Install Software Update	Be sure the version number that you are installing is higher than the current software version. After installing the update, the system automatically restarts.								

7.5 Information

The information window shows general information about the device, including the following:

- Model Number
- Serial Number
- Software Version Number
- Hardware Version Number
- Internal Battery Serial Number

- Detachable Battery Serial Number
- Operational Hours – Total Blower Hours
- Operational Hours – Total Patient Hours
- Software licenses
- Photography credits

To change pages, tap the page icons at the bottom of the window. To view software licenses and photography credits, tap the item you want to view.

7.6 Alarm and Event Log

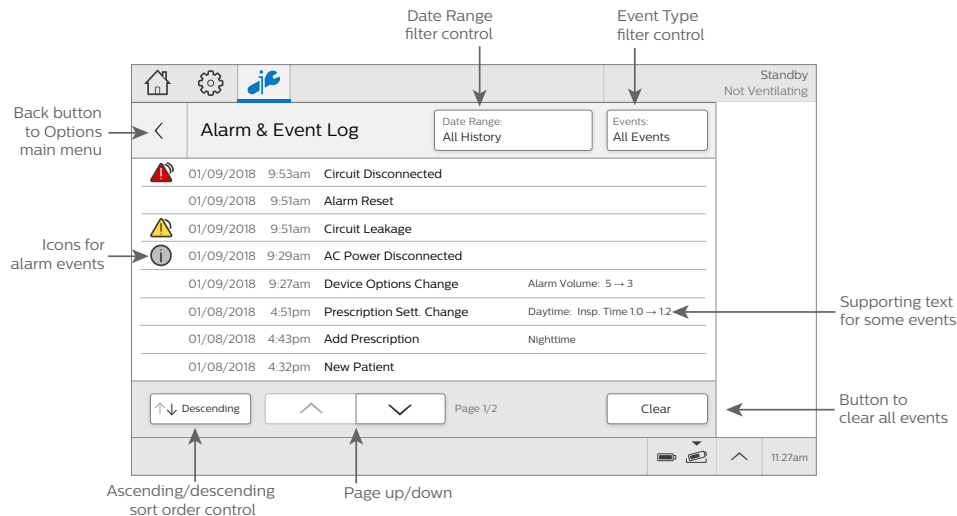
The Alarm and Event Log is a record of all events related to the device and to therapy. The log shows the event, when it occurred, and a brief description. Information is saved even when you shut off the device or when power is lost. The log stores the most recent 6-months of information with the exception of the event log, which stores the most recent 10,000 records. Older records are overwritten.

When the device access level is limited, selected events do not appear.

To access the Alarm and Event Log:

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Alarm & Event Log**.

7.6.1 Parts of the Alarm and Event Log



Item	Description		
Date Range button	Tap to filter events by date. On the Select Date Range dialog box, select the date range and then tap Accept .		
Events button	Tap to filter events so only alarms and system messages appear in the list. Tap again to view all event types.		
Alarm and event list	Alarms and messages	Event Type	Icon
		High priority alarm	
		Medium priority alarm	
		Low priority alarm	
		System message	
	Events	Events such as: • Power or battery • Calibration event • Change to therapy setting, alarm setting, or device option • Data transfer • Access level change	
Ascending/Descending button	Sort the list by date and time.		
Page up and down button	Tap to scroll through the log.		
Clear	Clear all events from the screen. Not available in all device configurations.		

7.7 Prescription Preferences

The Prescription Preferences window contains a list of all prescriptions. All functions are available when the device is in standby. It is available in both full and limited access modes.

Use this window to change a prescription's appearance in the interface. You can perform the following functions:

- Change a prescription's background image (full and limited access).
- Change the order of prescriptions in the prescription list (full access only).
- Change the prescription name (full access only).

- Delete a prescription (full access only).

To access the **Prescription Preferences** window:

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Prescription Preferences**.

7.7.1 Changing the Background Image

To change the background image associated with a prescription:

1. In the **Prescription Preferences** window, tap the edit button next to the image you want to change.
2. On the **Image Selection** dialog box, tap an image and then tap the **Accept** checkmark.

7.7.2 Changing the Prescription List Order

To change the order of prescriptions so frequently used prescriptions appear first:

1. In the **Prescription Preferences** window, tap the **Reorder** button at the bottom of the window.
2. Tap a prescription and then tap the arrow buttons to move the prescription up or down the list.
3. To save your changes, tap **Accept**. Otherwise, tap **Cancel**.

7.7.3 Changing the Prescription Name

To change a prescription's name:

1. In the **Prescription Preferences** window, tap the edit button next to the name you want to change.
2. On the **Select Prescription Name** dialog box, tap the left and right arrows to navigate through the list of names.
3. Tap the name you want and then tap **Accept**.

7.7.4 Deleting a Prescription

Deleting a prescription requires full system access and requires the device to be in standby.

To delete a prescription:

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon.
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Prescription Preferences**.
3. Tap the prescription you want to delete and then tap the delete icon.

8. Cleaning and Disinfection

8.1 Overview

Warnings:

- Because Trilogy Evo is intended for multi-patient use, be sure you follow the cleaning and disinfection instructions in this chapter.
- Be certain that any bacterial filter used with this device complies with ISO 23328-1 and ISO 23328-2. To prevent patient or ventilator contamination, you must use a Philips Respironics-approved main flow bacterial filter on the patient gas outlet port. Filters not approved by Philips Respironics may degrade system performance. For a list of accessories, see the Trilogy Evo accessories guide.
- This product is suitable for use with other patients if a bacteria filter was in use at all times and exchanged between patients or once the below-stated air path disinfection (replacement of gas pathway components or disinfection by using Keredusy® disinfection between each new patient use) has been performed.

8.2 Exterior Cleaning and Disinfection

Warning: To avoid electric shock, do not remove the enclosure cover. Only service personnel should remove the enclosure. After cleaning and disinfecting, be sure the device is completely dry before reattaching accessories and connectors and before reconnecting it to a power source. To avoid electrical shock, always unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before cleaning the ventilator. If the device has been exposed to rain or dampness, dry the device (including the area around the power cord connection) with the power cord disconnected from the device before applying AC power.

Caution: Do not immerse the device or allow liquids into any of the controls or inside the enclosure as the device may be damaged. If this occurs, contact your equipment provider for assistance. Use only the cleaning agents and methods described in this section to clean and disinfect the device.

8.2.1 Cleaning the Exterior

Frequency: Clean Trilogy Evo's exterior surface weekly or more often if necessary and between patients.

Requirements:

- Lint-free cloth
- Soft-bristle brush
- Liquid dishwashing detergent solution:
1 teaspoon of liquid dishwashing detergent (such as Dawn Ultra Dishwashing Liquid®) per gallon of warm water

To clean the exterior, follow these steps.

1. Turn the device off and disconnect it from the power source.

2. Detach all accessories and connectors.
3. Use a lint-free cloth dampened (not dripping) with a liquid dishwashing detergent solution to clean the exterior of the enclosure.
4. Use a soft-bristle brush in the areas around the screen, buttons, and any other areas where soil may be difficult to remove. Ensure you remove all visible soil.
5. Use a lint-free cloth dampened (not dripping) with clear water to remove all detergent residue.
6. Use a lint-free cloth to dry the enclosure.
7. Inspect the device for cleanliness.
8. Repeat the cleaning steps until the surfaces are visibly clean.
9. Inspect the device for damage after cleaning. If any parts are damaged, contact customer service.

8.2.2 Disinfecting the Exterior

Frequency: Disinfect the exterior surface weekly or more often if necessary and between patients.

Prerequisite: Before disinfecting the exterior, be sure you have cleaned the device as instructed in the previous section, “Cleaning the Exterior.”

8.2.2.1 Isopropyl Alcohol

Requirement: 70% isopropyl alcohol, lint-free cloth

To disinfect with alcohol, follow these steps.

1. Use a lint-free cloth dampened with alcohol to wipe the alcohol onto the exterior, thoroughly wetting the surfaces.
2. Keep wet 10 minutes.
3. Allow to air dry.

8.2.2.2 Chlorine Bleach

Requirement: Household chlorine bleach containing 8.25% sodium hypochlorite, lint-free cloth

To disinfect with bleach, follow these steps.

1. Combine 10 parts water to 1-part bleach.
2. Use a lint-free cloth dampened with the bleach solution to wipe the bleach solution onto the exterior, thoroughly wetting the surfaces.
3. Keep wet 10 minutes.
4. Allow to air dry.

8.3 Air Path Disinfection

Ensure that a bacteria filter is used to prevent cross contamination between patients.

If the device is returned and assigned to a new patient and it cannot be confirmed that a bacteria filter was in use at all times, clean and disinfect the device according to the procedures in this chapter. The gas pathway components should be replaced or disinfected by using the Keredusy KR1000 or KR2000 ozone and nebulized water process between each new patient use. Contact Philips Respironics Customer Service at +49 8152 93060 for replacement or information about the Keredusy disinfection process.

Before beginning Keredusy disinfection, remove and discard the following items from the device, if in use:

- Air-inlet foam filter
- Particulate filter
- FiO₂ sensor
- Muffler (for Trilogy Evo devices that do not have an Oxygen Blending Module)

After disinfection is complete, replace the components that you discarded with new components.

Note: This product is suitable for use with other patients if a bacteria filter was in use at all times and exchanged between patients or once the above-stated air path disinfection (replacement of gas pathway components or disinfection by using Keredusy disinfection by ozone and nebulized water between each new patient use) has been performed.

8.4 Cleaning the Detachable Battery

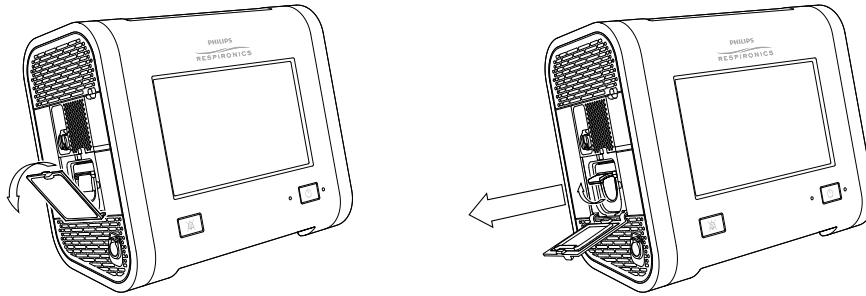
Frequency: Clean the detachable battery monthly.

Requirements:

- Lint-free cloth
- Soft-bristle brush
- Liquid dishwashing detergent solution:
1 teaspoon of liquid dishwashing detergent (such as Dawn Ultra Dishwashing Liquid) per gallon of warm water

To clean the detachable battery:

1. Remove the detachable battery.
Open the detachable battery access door. Lift the battery handle and pull the battery to remove it from the battery bay.



2. Use a lint-free cloth dampened (not dripping) with a liquid dishwashing detergent solution to wipe the battery. Ensure you remove all visible soil.
3. Use a dry, soft-bristle brush to clean any small areas, such as crevices or small openings that are not accessible with the cloth.
4. Use a lint-free cloth dampened (not dripping) with clear water to remove all detergent residue.
5. Allow the battery to air dry completely.
6. Inspect the battery for damage after cleaning. If any part is damaged, contact Philips Respironics Customer Service.
7. Replace the battery. Open the detachable battery access door. Slide the battery into the bay until you hear a click.

8.5 Rinsing the Air-Inlet Foam Filter

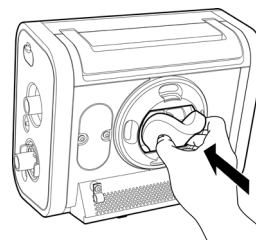
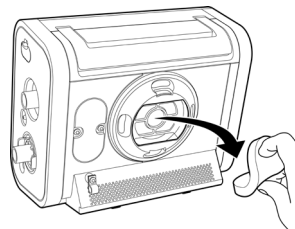
The air-inlet foam filter is the gray foam located on the back panel. It protects Trilogy Evo from dirt and dust. This filter is for single patient use. Only use Philips Respironics-supplied filters. Ventilation can continue while you are replacing the filter.

Frequency: In the clinical environment, rinse daily and replace monthly. In the home environment, rinse monthly and replace every six months.

Requirements: Replacement filter, water

To rinse the disposable inlet filter:

1. Ensure you have a replacement filter nearby.
2. Pinch the filter and pull it out of the filter cover.
3. Insert the clean replacement filter into the filter cover. Ensure it is positioned securely.
4. Visually inspect the filter you just removed from the device.
5. If it is damaged, discard it according to your local regulations. Otherwise, proceed to the next step.
6. Rinse the dirty filter in clear water. Inspect the filter for cleanliness and repeat previous step until the filter is clean.
7. Allow the filter to air dry completely before reinstalling it.



9. Service and Maintenance

9.1 Service Overview

Repairs and maintenance must be performed by service personnel only. Unauthorized repairs and adjustments could cause death or injury, invalidate the warranty, or result in costly device damage.

The device should be sent for preventative maintenance every four years. Trilogy Evo's expected service life is 10 years.

9.2 Disposal

Separate collection for electrical and electronic equipment per EC Directive 2012/19/EU. Dispose according to local regulations. If you need help, contact customer service.

9.3 Daily Maintenance

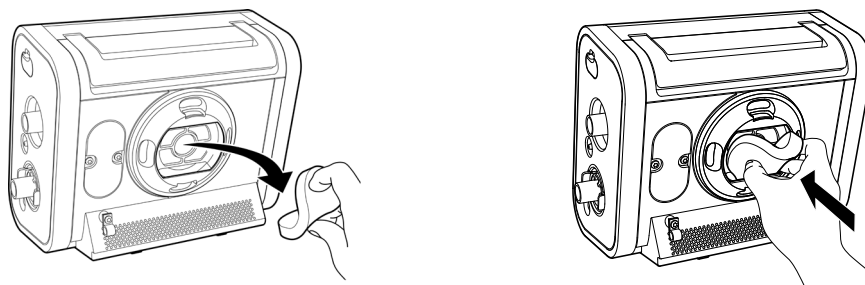
Conduct the following maintenance every day.

- Visually inspect accessories for damage or signs of wear. Discontinue use and replace if damaged.
- When using the FiO_2 sensor, to maintain accuracy, calibrate the FiO_2 sensor daily. See "FiO2 Sensor Calibration."

9.4 Replacing the Air-Inlet Foam Filter

The air-inlet foam filter is the gray foam located on the back panel. It is required to Trilogy Evo from dirt and dust. Replace if it becomes damaged.

In the clinical environment, replace monthly and between patients. In the home environment, replace every six months and between patients. Only use Philips Respironics-supplied filters. Dispose according to local regulations.



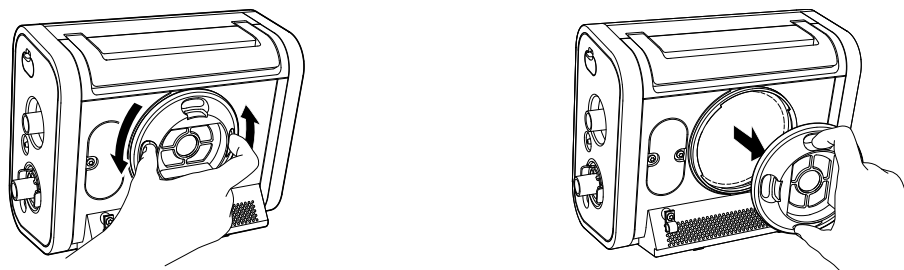
To replace the disposable inlet filter:

1. Be sure you have a replacement filter nearby.
2. Pinch the filter and pull it out of the filter cover.
3. Insert the clean replacement filter into the filter cover. Be sure it is positioned securely.

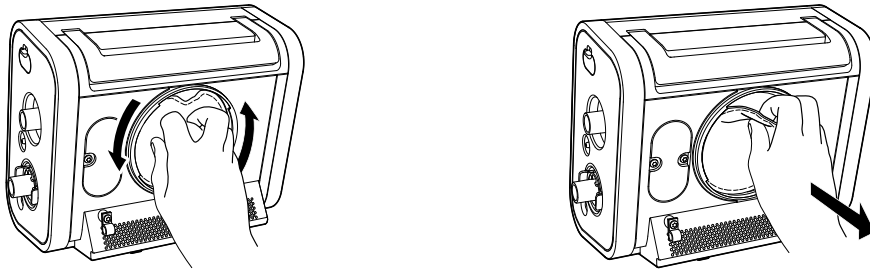
9.5 Replacing the Particulate Filter

The particulate filter is an optional filter that protects Trilogy Evo from dirt and dust. Replace the particulate filter monthly and between patients. Ventilation can continue while you replace the filter.

Twist the filter cover counterclockwise a quarter of a turn, and then pull straight out to remove.



Twist the filter counterclockwise a quarter of a turn, and then pull straight out to remove.



Place a new filter onto the bayonet mount then twist the filter clockwise a quarter of a turn while pressing in to secure.



Replace the filter cover and turn clockwise to secure.

9.6 Preparing the Device for Use by a Different Patient

If you are setting up a prescription for a different patient, before creating a new prescription, tap the New Patient button to reset to the default prescription settings, reset the patient operational hours to zero, and clear all existing patient data, including the following: event and alarm logs, circuit calibration, and historical data. Additionally, tapping New Patient deletes all Bluetooth settings.

Before using Trilogy Evo with a different patient, perform the following actions. Cleaning and disinfection instructions are in “Cleaning and Disinfection.”

- ☐ Replace the circuit, including the bacterial filter.
- ☐ Clean and disinfect the exterior surface.
- ☐ Clean the detachable battery.
- ☐ Replace the air inlet foam filter and particulate filter.

9. Service and Maintenance

- ☐ Clear the old patient data from the system: In the **Home** window, tap the **New Patient** button.
- ☐ If you used an external storage device that contains patient information, such as a USB flash drive, be sure you delete that data by reformatting the storage device.
- ☐ Perform air path disinfection or replacement according to the instructions in “Air Path Disinfection.”

10. Accessories

10.1 Overview

To prevent adverse performance, use Trilogy Evo only with accessories intended for use with this device, including circuits, patient monitors and power accessories. For a list of accessories, see the Trilogy Evo accessories guide at:

<https://www.usa.philips.com/healthcare/product/HCD52110X11B/trilogyevo>.

You must be sure accessories and parts are compatible before you connect a patient to the device.

10.2 Portability and Travel Accessories

Use the travel bag to transport the device when not in use. Do not operate the ventilator when it is inside the travel bag.

The in-use case can protect Trilogy Evo during device operation.

When using mobility accessories such as the wheelchair mount or roll stand, confirm that the ventilator is adequately secured. See the accessory's instructions for use.

10.3 Power Accessories

For instructions, see "Power Management"

10.4 Patient Circuits and Circuit Accessories

For instructions on attaching circuits to the ventilator, see "Device Setup." For information about the circuit you are using, see the accessory's instructions for use. For a list of compatible circuits and circuit accessories, see the Trilogy Evo accessories guide at:

<https://www.usa.philips.com/healthcare/product/HCD52110X11B/trilogyevo>.

10.4.1 Circuit Principles

When adding any components to the breathing system, the flow resistance and dead space of the added components such as humidifiers, speaking valves, Heat Moisture Exchangers (HMEs) and filters should be carefully considered in relation to the potential for adverse effects on the patient's ventilator management and device alarms. If a bacterial filter is exposed to nebulization or humidification, to prevent increased resistance or blockage, the bacterial filter requires replacement more frequently.

10.4.2 Circuit Requirements

For safe operation, the ventilator requires a patient circuit and filter(s) that meet the following requirements.

Inspiratory/expiratory resistance: up to 5 cmH₂O at:

- 30 L/min for adult (20 to 22 mm) circuit size
- 15 L/min for pediatric (14 to 16 mm) or pediatric/adult (19 mm) circuit size
- 2.5 L/min for infant (9 to 13 mm) circuit size

Compliance: up to 4 ml/cmH₂O

10.4.3 Leak Compensation

Passive circuits:

The ventilator provides leak compensation for inhaled and exhaled tidal volume measurements. This includes compensation for intentional leak in the patient circuit and leaks that occur at the patient interface, such as cuff leak or mask leak.

Active flow and dual limb circuits:

The ventilator compensates for leak that occurs between the ventilator and the external flow sensor. Leaks that are downstream of the external flow sensor are not compensated for in measurement of inhaled or exhaled tidal volume. Leaks that are downstream of the external flow sensor are compensated for triggering.

Active PAP circuits:

Leak compensation is not available.

10.4.4 Tracheostomy Adapters and Connectors

For disposable tracheostomy adapters and connectors, inspect for damage or wear. Replace weekly or as needed to prevent accumulation of secretion.

10.4.5 Humidification Accessories

For humidification accessories, see the accessory's instructions for use.

10.4.6 Exhalation Accessories

For exhalation accessories, see the accessory's instructions for use.

10.4.7 Flow Sensors

For flow sensors, see the accessory's instructions for use.

10.4.8 Circuit Filters

For circuit filters, see the filter's instructions for use.

10.5 Monitors and Sensors

10.5.1 FiO₂ Sensor

To use the FiO₂ sensor, follow the instructions provided with the sensor. For instructions on using and calibrating this sensor, see "FiO₂ Sensor Calibration."

10.5.1.1 Intended Use

The Philips Respironics FiO₂ Sensor is an oxygen sensor device that is used for measuring the fraction of inspired oxygen (oxygen concentration in a percentage).

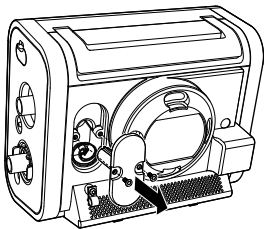
For instructions on using and calibrating this sensor, see "FiO₂ Sensor Calibration."

10.5.1.2 Installation

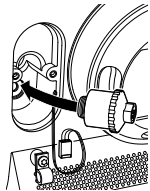
Required: T20 Torx screwdriver

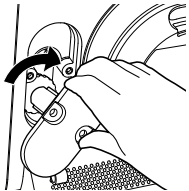
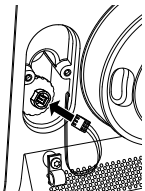
To install a new FiO₂ sensor:

1. Using a T20 Torx screwdriver, unscrew the FiO₂ sensor access panel and set aside. Note that the panel is also the FiO₂ sensor driver, used in step 3.



2. Place the sensor in the FiO₂ socket.



3. Place the FiO ₂ driver on the sensor and twist clockwise to secure the sensor in the receptacle.	
4. Push the connector onto the pins on the sensor. Be sure you have aligned the pins with the receptacles on the connector.	
5. Replace the sensor access panel and secure with the screws.	

10.5.1.3 Removal

Required: T20 Torx screwdriver and a slender, pointed tool such as a scratch awl

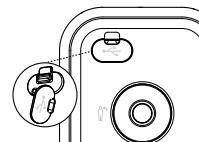
To remove the FiO₂ sensor:

1. Using a T20 Torx screwdriver, unscrew the FiO₂ sensor access panel and set aside.
2. Use a slender, pointed tool such as a scratch awl to pull the tab lock away from the connector to the unlock position.
3. While holding the tab in the unlock position, pull the white connector straight out. Do not use the wires to pull the connector.
4. Place the FiO₂ driver (sensor access panel) on the sensor and twist counterclockwise to remove the sensor from the device.

10.5.2 External Pulse Oximeter and Sensors

Attach the external pulse oximeter to either USB port on the ventilator. Attach a sensor to the pulse oximeter. Follow the instructions provided with the sensor.

When you connect the external pulse oximeter, the monitored parameters pane will show the SpO₂ and pulse rate values during standby and while delivering therapy.



10.5.3 Capnography

Capnography requires the Mainstream CO₂ sensor, a compatible airway adapter, and a USB to CO₂ monitor adapter cable. For information, see the instructions that accompany each of these accessories.

To connect the CO₂ sensor:

1. Connect the CO₂ sensor to the adapter cable.
2. Plug the adapter cable into one of Trilogy Evo's USB ports.
3. Connect the airway adapter to the sensor. See the sensor instructions.
4. Install the sensor at the proximal end of the circuit. See the sensor instructions.
5. Allow two minutes for the sensor to begin providing data in the Monitored Parameters Pane.
6. Perform an "adapter zero" to establish a baseline CO₂ level. See "CO₂ Sensor Adapter Zero." Perform an "adapter zero" if you switch from one type of airway adapter to another or when indicated by the system alarm.

10.6 Filters

10.6.1 Air-Inlet Foam Filter

The air-inlet foam filter protects Trilogy Evo from dirt and dust. This filter is for single patient use. For instructions on rinsing the filter, see "Cleaning and Disinfection." For instructions on replacing the filter, see "Service and Maintenance."

10.6.2 Particulate Filter

The particulate filter is an optional filter that protects Trilogy Evo from dirt and dust. This filter is for single patient use. For instructions on replacing the filter, see "Service and Maintenance."

10.7 Oxygen

Your device model may include an oxygen blender. To connect high pressure oxygen, see "High Pressure Oxygen."

To connect low flow oxygen, see "Low Flow Oxygen."

10.8 Communications Cables

To connect a communications cable, use either of the USB ports. For more information, see the cable's instructions for use.

10.9 Remote Alarm and Nurse Call

You can use a Philips Respironics remote alarm or institutional nurse call system with your device. Use the remote alarm or nurse call connector (RJ9) on the Utility panel to connect a remote alarm or nurse call system. The remote alarm or nurse call system should be visible and audible to the caregiver at all times. See the remote alarm or cable's instructions for further information. For a list of accessories, see the Trilogy Evo accessories guide.

If you are using a remote alarm or nurse call system, fully test the system before starting ventilation.

- Verify that you can hear the ventilator's audible alarms on the remote alarm or nurse call system.
- If using a remote alarm, be sure the remote alarm signals when you disconnect the remote alarm cable from the ventilator or the remote alarm. To use the alarm and for further testing instructions, see the remote alarm's instructions.
- If using a normally closed nurse call system, be sure the nurse call system signals when you disconnect the nurse call cable from the ventilator or the nurse call system. Philips Respironics strongly recommends that you use a normally closed nurse call system.

Warnings:

- Do not rely solely on the audible indicator provided by a remote alarm or nurse call system as the primary indicator of the operating state of the device or of patient events. Use of a remote alarm or nurse call system should be considered a backup to the ventilator's primary alarm system. The remote alarm or nurse call system is for use only in a medically supervised environment.
- If you are using a nurse call system, Philips Respironics strongly recommends that you use a normally closed nurse call system. Only a normally closed system will alarm if the nurse call cable becomes disconnected. A normally open system will not alarm.
- Be sure that the nurse call systems used do not exceed 42.4VAC peak or 60VDC under normal operating conditions.

10.10 USB Flash Drive

The USB flash drive (removable storage) included with your device can be used to import and export data. See "Data Transfer." It also contains training software. To view the training materials, insert the drive into the USB port on a personal computer and open either the HTML file or the PDF.

11. Power Management

11.1 Overview

Trilogy Evo can operate on AC (wall outlet) or DC (battery) power from several sources. Sources are listed in descending priority below.

1. AC Power
2. External battery (DC) such as a vehicle battery – requires an external battery cable
3. Detachable battery (DC)
4. Internal battery (DC)

11.2 AC Power

AC power has the highest priority. When AC power is present, the device uses that power to run the device and to charge the detachable and internal batteries.

To use AC power, follow these steps.

1. Plug the socket end of the AC power cord into the power inlet on the device.
2. Attach the retention clip to the cord and screw the clip into the back panel of the device.
3. Plug the pronged end of the power cord into an electrical outlet that is not controlled by a wall switch.
4. Verify the device is using AC power. You should see the green LED light next to the power button appear. If you do not see this light, contact customer service.
5. Periodically inspect the power cord for damage or signs of wear. Discontinue use and replace if damaged.

To remove AC power, disconnect the AC power cord from the electrical outlet.

11.3 External Battery

You can use an external DC power source, such as a vehicle battery, to power the device. The external battery can charge the internal and detachable batteries. You must use a compatible battery cable to connect the battery to the device. Do not use any other cable or improper operation of the device may occur. For a list of accessories, see the Trilogy Evo accessories guide at: <https://www.usa.philips.com/healthcare/product/HCD52110X11B/trilogyevo>.

For complete instructions, see the battery cable's accompanying documents. The external battery will power the device when it is disconnected from AC power.

Verify that the external battery is set up correctly. You should see the external battery icon appear in the Battery Power Meter on the Status Bar.

11.4 Detachable Battery

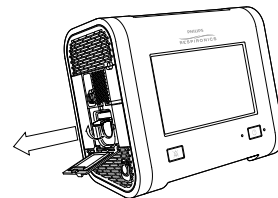
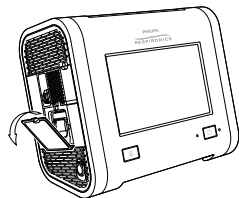
The detachable battery can power the device when disconnected from AC or external battery power. Use only the Philips Respironics Trilogy Evo-series Detachable Battery Pack.

Battery operating time depends on device usage. The operating time shown on the device is only an estimate of the actual remaining power.

The battery includes an LED charge meter. To view the percentage of charge, remove the battery and press the button on the battery. Green lights appear to indicate how much charge remains in the battery.

To remove the detachable battery: open the detachable battery access door. Lift the battery handle and pull the battery to remove it from the battery bay.

To replace the detachable battery: open the detachable battery access door. Slide the battery into the battery bay until you hear a click.



Verify the detachable battery is installed correctly. You should see the detachable battery icon appear in the Battery Power Meter on the Status Bar.

11.4.1 Warnings

- Do not disassemble or open, drop, crush, bend or deform, puncture, or shred the detachable battery pack.
- If the detachable battery is dropped or mishandled, discontinue use of the battery and contact Philips Respironics Customer Service.
- Do not modify or remanufacture, attempt to insert foreign objects into the battery, immerse or expose the battery to water or other liquids, or expose the battery to fire, excessive heat, or put the battery in a microwave oven.
- Only use the battery for the systems for which it is specified.
- Only use the battery with a charging system specified by the manufacturer/supplier.
- Do not allow metallic or conductive objects to contact battery terminals, which may result in a short-circuit.
- Replace the battery only with another battery specified by the manufacturer. Use of an unqualified battery may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage, or other hazard.

- Improper battery use may result in a fire, explosion, or other hazard.
- Battery use by children should be supervised.

11.4.2 Cautions

- Do not expose the battery to temperatures outside of the specifications. This may increase the risk of fire or damage the battery.
- Do not leave the battery in a fully discharged state for an extended time.
- The service life of the detachable battery will decrease depending on the battery age, the number of charge-discharge cycles, and operation or storage at higher temperatures.
- As with most rechargeable lithium-ion batteries, exposing the battery to elevated temperatures for extended times reduces the amount of power that battery can store. For example, a battery may be stored for up to a year at 25° C without experiencing a significant impact to the amount of power that it can store. After being stored for a year at 60° C, that same battery may lose as much as 30% of the power it can store.

11.4.3 Detachable Battery Specifications

Voltage:	14.4 to 14.8 VDC
Rated capacity:	80 Wh minimum
Chemistry type:	Lithium-Ion
Charge operating temperature:	0° C to 45° C
Storage temperature:	-20° C to 60° C
Relative humidity (operating and storage):	5 to 93% (non-condensing)

11.5 Internal Battery

Internal battery power is the lowest priority power source.

The internal battery appears in the Battery Power Meter on the Status Bar. For help, see “Battery Status.”

11.6 Battery Status

The battery power meter appears in the status bar at the bottom of the window. The meter shows the battery status. The In-use Arrow points to the battery in use (if any).

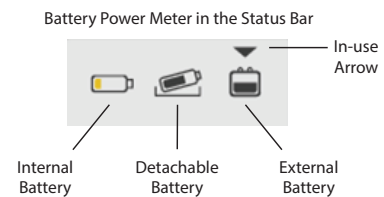
Battery operating time depends on the characteristics of the battery and usage of the device. The capacity of the battery shown on the Battery Power Meter is only an estimate.

During active therapy, tap the power meter to view more details.

- Estimated battery time remaining (for the internal and detachable batteries)
- Estimated remaining battery power shown as a percent of total capacity (for the external battery)

You can also view battery status in the Monitoring Window: see “Monitoring Window.”

For a list of power icons, see “Power Icons.”



11.7 Power Loss

Several alarms are related to power and power loss. For help on these alarms and test procedures, see “Alarms and System Messages.”

If all power sources are lost during active therapy, as soon as a power source is connected, the device will begin to deliver therapy again. All alarm settings are retained and restored.

11.8 Power Icons

The following is a list of power icons that appear in the status bar.

Note: The charge icon ⚡ appears on top of the power icon when the internal or detachable battery is charging.

Estimated capacity	Internal Battery	Detachable Battery	External Battery
81-100% capacity			
61-80% capacity			
41-60% capacity			
21-40% capacity			
1-20% capacity			
Low power remaining			
Nearly depleted			
0% capacity or failed			

12. Connectivity

12.1 Overview

You can connect this device to external systems through USB or wireless connections.

12.2 External Systems

Use either USB port to connect to external systems such as hospital systems or OmniLab.

12.3 Wireless

This device has Bluetooth SmartReady wireless technology, which includes Bluetooth Classic and Bluetooth Low Energy. Bluetooth allows Trilogy Evo to communicate with a compatible Bluetooth device approved by Philips Respironics. Bluetooth functionality may not be present in all models.

Warning: Other equipment may interfere with this device, even if the other equipment complies with CISPR 8 emission requirements.

Warning: The Health Industry Manufacturers Association recommends that a minimum separation of six inches be maintained between a wireless phone and a pacemaker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. The Trilogy Evo on-board Bluetooth communication should be considered a wireless phone in this regard.

Caution: When traveling by air, inform the airline of the presence of wireless technology in this device. Ensure such devices are permitted.

QoS: Wireless Quality of Service (QoS) refers to the necessary level of service and performance needed for the wireless functions of the device. It involves parameters such as reliability of data transmission, effective transfer rate, error rate, and mechanisms to define priority levels for time-critical signals.

Bluetooth QoS: Bluetooth uses frequency hopping, channel coding, and error correction to address interference and is designed to operate with other devices that occupy the same spectrum. In addition to the measures defined in the Bluetooth standard, the Trilogy Evo radio incorporates other methods to minimize the likelihood of QoS problems. These include:

- Data sent between the ventilator and any external devices uses additional checksum verification to ensure that data is correctly received without errors.
- The ventilator is a portable device and will not always be near the external gateway device when the ventilator is ready to transfer data. The system is designed to take this into account. The system can tolerate latency and will keep retrying if something occurs that prevents successful data

transfer. This retry mechanism happens automatically and requires no intervention by the user. The external Bluetooth gateway device attempts to reconnect once per minute until it successfully connects and the data transfer is complete.

If Bluetooth communication issues are encountered, check to see if other nearby devices are operating in the immediate vicinity at the same 2.4 GHz frequency as the ventilator Bluetooth radio. These devices include:

- Other Bluetooth devices
- Wi-Fi devices
- Microwave ovens

Portable and mobile RF communications equipment should be used no closer to any part of the device, including cables, than the recommended 30 cm separation distance.

12.4 Connectivity Actions

To access the Bluetooth window:

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Device Options**.
3. In the **Device Options** window, tap **Bluetooth**.

To enable Bluetooth connections, In the **Bluetooth** window, tap **On**.

To view connection status, the Bluetooth window contains a connection status indicator, including the MAC address of the current or most recently connected device.

13. Technical Data

13.1 Overview

This chapter contains technical data and specifications.

13.2 Specifications

13.2.1 Ventilation types and modes

- A/C-PC: Assisted control (pressure control)
- A/C-VC: Assisted control (volume control)
- CPAP: Continuous positive airway pressure
- PSV: Pressure support ventilation
- S/T: Spontaneous/timed ventilation
- SIMV-PC: Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (pressure control)
- SIMV-VC: Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (volume control)
- AVAPS-AE

13.2.2 Controls

AVAPS with passive circuit	PSV, S/T, and A/C-PC modes only
Tidal volume	35 – 2000 ml
Breath rate	0 – 80 BPM
PEEP	0 – 35 cm H ₂ O for active exhaust circuits 3 – 25 cm H ₂ O for passive circuits
EPAP/CPAP	3 – 25 cm H ₂ O
IPAP	3 – 60 cm H ₂ O
Pressure support/pressure control	0 – 60 cm H ₂ O, patient pressure limited to 60 cm H ₂ O
Inspiratory time	0.3 – 5.0s, constrained to prohibit an inverse I:E ratio
Rise time	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
Triggering and cycling	Off, Auto-Trak, Sensitive Auto-Trak, and Flow Trigger
Flow trigger sensitivity	0.5 – 9 L/min
Flow cycle sensitivity	10% – 90% of peak flow
Flow pattern	Square, Ramp
FiO ₂	21% – 100%
Inspiratory time min/max	0.3 – 3.0 sec
Backup ventilation	On – Off

13.2.3 Measured and Displayed Patient Parameters

Tidal volume (Vti or Vte)	0 to 2000 ml in increments of 1 ml
Minute ventilation (MinVent)	0 to 30 L/min in increments of 0.1 L/min
Leak	0 to 200 L/min in increments of 0.1 L/min
Respiratory rate (RR)	0 to 90 BPM in increments of 1 BPM
Peak inspiratory flow (PIF)	0 to 200 L/min in increments of 0.1 L/min
Peak inspiratory pressure (PIP)	0 to 90 cm H ₂ O in increments of 0.1 cm H ₂ O
Mean airway pressure	0 to 90 cm H ₂ O in increments of 0.1 cm H ₂ O
Percentage spontaneous triggered breaths (%Spont Trig)	0 to 100% in increments of 1%
I:E ratio	9.9:1 to 1:9.9
Dynamic compliance (Dyn C)	1 to 100 ml/cm H ₂ O in increments of 1 ml/cm H ₂ O
Dynamic resistance (Dyn R)	5 to 200 cm H ₂ O/l/sec in increments of 1 cm H ₂ O/l/sec
Dynamic plateau pressure (Dyn Pplat)	0 to 90 cm H ₂ O in increments of 1 cm H ₂ O
Auto-PEEP	0 to 20 cm H ₂ O in increments of 1 cm H ₂ O
FiO ₂ with FiO ₂ sensor	21% to 100% in increments of 1%
SpO ₂ with pulse oximeter accessory	0 to 100% in increments of 1%
Pulse rate with pulse oximeter accessory	18 to 321 beats per minute in increments of 1 beat per minute See "Pulse Oximeter."
EtCO ₂ with CO ₂ accessory	0 to 150 mmHg in increments of 1 mmHg See "EtCO2 (with Mainstream CO ₂ sensor)."

13.2.4 Environmental

Operating	• Temperature: 0° C to 40° C, 32° F to 104° F • Relative humidity: 5% to 90% RH, non-condensing • Atmospheric pressure: 62 to 106 kPa • Altitude: approximately -384 m to 3954 m (-1,261 to 12,971 ft) • Battery charging temperature: 5° C to 40° C, 32° F to 104° F
Transient operating temperature, excluding high pressure oxygen blending	-20° C to 50° C, -4° F to 122° F
Storage	• Temperature: -25° C to 70° C, -13° F to 158° F • Relative humidity: 5% to 93% RH, non-condensing

13.2.5 Physical

Weight	6.3 Kg (13.8 lbs) with oxygen blender 5.8 Kg (12.7 lbs) without oxygen blender
Size	
With oxygen blender	• 19.3cm D x 28.6 cm W x 24.5 cm H • 7.6" D x 11.25" W x 9.65" H
Without oxygen blender	• 16.5 cm D x 28.6 cm W x 24.5 cm H • 6.48" D x 11.25" W x 9.65" H
Screen dimensions	20.32 cm (8")
Ingress protection	IP22: protection against finger-sized objects and protected against dripping water when tilted up to 15 degrees.
IEC 60601-1 classification	Type of protection against electric shock: Class II equipment Degree of protection against electric shock – type BF applied part
Composition	This device does not contain natural latex rubber or dry natural rubber.
Expected service life	10 years
Internal memory capacity	2 Gb
Mode of operation	Continuous
Maximum limited pressure	90 cm H ₂ O
Applied parts	• Pulse oximeter • Breathing circuit • Components added to the breathing circuit including: flow sensor, flow sensor cable, and CO₂ accessory and cable

13.2.6 Electrical

AC input voltage	100V – 240V, 50/60 Hz, 1.7-0.6 A
DC input voltage	12/24V 6.5A
Internal and detachable Li-ion batteries	15 hours' nominal total run time per method in IEC 80601-2-72 (7.5 hours each battery) Charge time for detachable and internal battery: • From 0% to 80%: 2.5 hours • From 0% to 100%: 3.5 hours
Degree of protection against electric shock	Type BF applied part

13.2.7 Audio

Alarm sound pressure level	53.9 dBA to 85.5 dBA over the setting range of low, medium, and high
<i>Without oxygen blender:</i>	
Sound pressure level	<=30 dBA <i>Ventilator measured at CPAP = 10 cm H₂O, passive circuit</i>
	41.0 dBA <i>Ventilator, circuit and exhalation device measured according to ISO 80601-2-12; worst case configuration</i>
Sound power level	49.1 dBA <i>Ventilator, circuit and exhalation device measured according to ISO 80601-2-12; worst case configuration</i>
<i>With oxygen blender:</i>	
Sound pressure level	<=43.7 dBA <i>Ventilator, circuit and exhalation device measured according to ISO 80601-2-12</i>
Sound power level	<=51.6 dBA <i>Ventilator, circuit and exhalation device measured according to ISO 80601-2-12</i>

13.2.8 Oxygen

Low flow	0 to 30 L/min; maximum 10 psi (dry oxygen)
High pressure	280 to 600 kPa (41 to 87 psi) (dry oxygen)
Ventilator response to a 21 -90% increase in oxygen concentration	< 30 seconds

13.2.9 Control Accuracy

For mouthpiece ventilation, pressure and tidal volume are specified at the device outlet.

Pressure	± (2 cm H ₂ O + 4% of the setting)
Tidal volume	± (4 ml + 15% of setting)
FiO ₂	± 5 % FiO ₂

13.2.10 Monitored Parameter Accuracy

Airway pressure	$\pm (2 \text{ cm H}_2\text{O} + 4\% \text{ of actual})$
Tidal volume	$\pm (4 \text{ ml} + 15\% \text{ of actual})$ for volumes $\geq 35 \text{ ml}$ $\pm 10 \text{ ml}$ for volumes $< 35 \text{ ml}$
FiO ₂	$\pm (2.5\% \text{ FiO}_2 + 2.5\% \text{ of actual reading})$ within a 24-hour sensor calibration period, or a change in altitude Measurement is not automatically compensated for changes in altitude. Response time: $< 11 \text{ seconds}$
EtCO ₂	See "EtCO ₂ (with Mainstream CO ₂ sensor)."
SpO ₂ and pulse rate	See "Pulse Oximeter."

13.2.11 Wireless

Bluetooth

Operating frequency range	2402-2480 MHz
Channel bandwidth	1 MHz/2 MHz
Maximum output power	15.6 dBm
Modulation	GFSK, Pi/4 DQPSK, 8DQPSK
Range	20 m (66 ft)

Near-field communication (NFC)

Operating frequency	13.56 MHz
Receiving section bandwidth	1.4 MHz
Maximum output power	58.3 dBuV/m@3m
Modulation	ASK, OOK
Range	2 cm (1 in)

Wi-Fi

Operating frequency range	2412-2472 MHz
Channel bandwidth	20 MHz/40 MHz
Maximum output power	19.6 dBm
Modulation	DSSS, OFDM, DBPSK, DQPSK, CCK, 16-QAM
Security	WPA2
Range	30m (98 ft)

13.2.12 EtCO₂ (with Mainstream CO₂ sensor)

Displayed EtCO ₂	• Upon connection, allow up to two minutes for data to appear. • Displayed value is the peak of the expired CO₂ waveform, updated on each breath. • Displayed EtCO₂ waveform sample rate is 10 Hz. • Measurement automatically compensates for changes in altitude. • Accuracy is not impacted by the respiration rate. • If breathing is not detected, then no value appears.
Accuracy	0 – 40 mmHg: ± 3 mmHg
	41 – 70 mmHg: ± 5% of reading
	71 – 100 mmHg: ± 8% of reading
	101 – 150 mmHg: ± 10% of reading
Stability	Short Term Drift: Drift over four hours shall not exceed 0.8 mmHg maximum. Long Term Drift: Accuracy specification will be maintained over a 120-hour period.
Total system response time	<2 seconds

13.2.13 Pulse Oximeter

Displayed Oxygen Saturation Range (SpO ₂):	0 to 100% with a resolution of 1%
Displayed pulse rate range:	18 to 321 beats per minute with a resolution of 1
SpO ₂ and pulse rate accuracy:	See the sensor instructions.
Data update period:	Every second
Data averaging:	4 beat average, updated every second

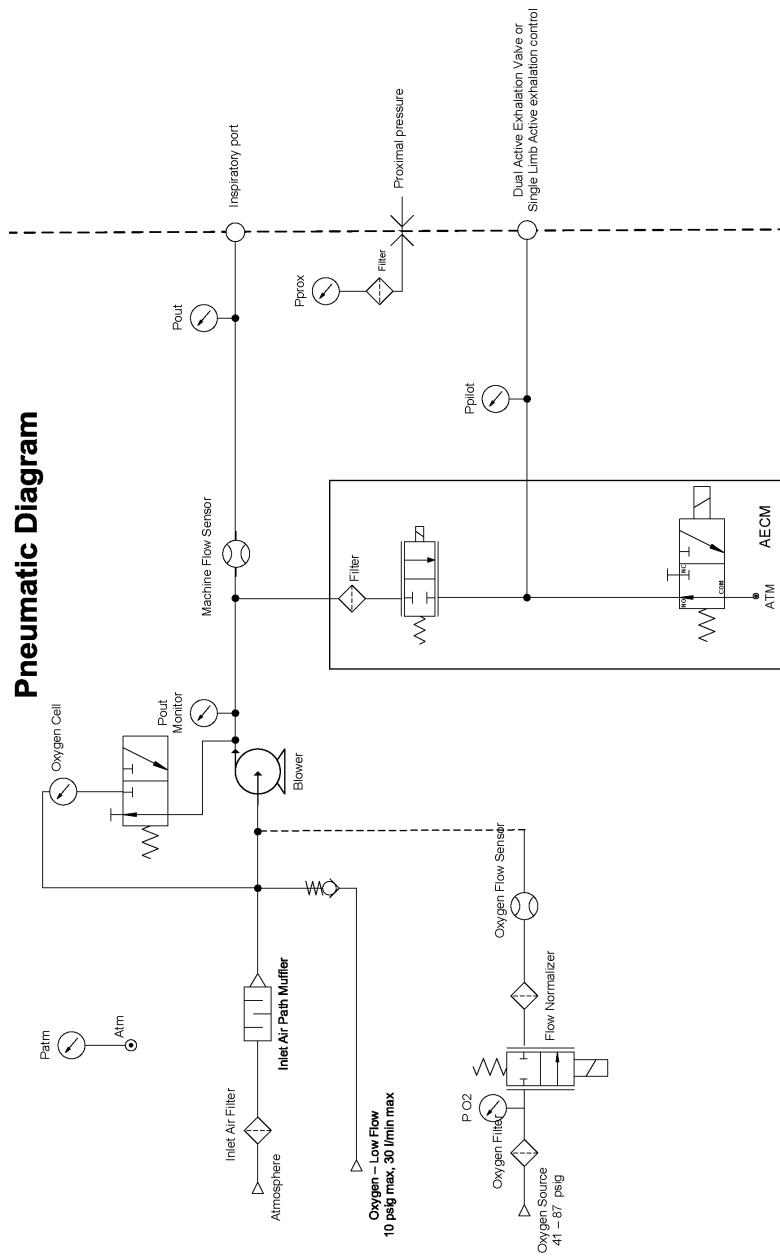
All flows and volumes are expressed in BTPS.

Measurement uncertainty for control and performance specifications

The stated tolerances account for the measurement uncertainty of the test equipment used to verify performance:

- Pressure: ± 0.75% cm H₂O
- Tidal Volume: ±2 ml
- Oxygen: ±1% FiO₂

13.3 Pneumatic Diagram



14. Regulatory Information

14.1 Standards Compliance

This device conforms to the following standards:

14.1.1 General

IEC 60601-1-1 Medical electrical equipment. Part 1-1: General requirements for safety. Collateral standard: Safety requirements for medical electrical systems

14.1.2 Collateral

IEC 60601-1-2 Medical electrical equipment. Part 1-2: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance. Collateral Standard: Electromagnetic disturbances. Requirements and tests

IEC 60601-1-11 Medical electrical equipment - Part 1-11: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance - Collateral Standard: Requirements for medical electrical equipment and medical electrical systems used in the home healthcare environment

14.1.3 Particular

Device essential performance is specified in each of the following standards:

- ISO 80601-2-12: Medical electrical equipment. Part 2-12: Particular requirements for basic safety and essential performance of critical care ventilators
- ISO 80601-2-55 Medical electrical equipment. Part 2-55: Particular requirements for the basic safety and essential performance of respiratory gas monitors
- ISO 80601-2-61 Medical electrical equipment. Part 2-61: Particular requirements for basic safety and essential performance of pulse oximeter equipment
- ISO 80601-2-72 Medical electrical equipment. Part 2-72: Particular requirements for basic safety and essential performance of home healthcare environment ventilators for ventilator-dependent patients

14.1.4 Wireless communication

- Bluetooth Core Specification version 4.1
- ISO/IEC 18092:2013: Information technology. Telecommunications and information exchange between systems. Near Field Communication. Interface and Protocol (NFCIP-1)
- ISO IEC 21481 ed 2.0: Information technology. Telecommunications and information exchange between systems. Near Field Communication Interface and Protocol -2 (NFCIP-2)
- ISO/IEC 14443 ed 2.0: Identification cards. Contactless integrated circuit cards. Proximity cards.

- WLAN Standard: IEEE 802.11 (2012) b/g/n: Information technology. Telecommunications and information exchange between systems. Local and metropolitan area networks. Specific requirements. Part 11: Wireless LAN Medium Access Control (MAC) and Physical Layer (PHY) Specifications

14.2 EMC Information

This ventilator generates audible and visual alarms to alert you if it is not able to provide ventilation or if external monitoring is lost during an EMC disturbance.

Warnings:

- Avoid using this equipment adjacent to or stacked with other equipment because it could result in improper operation. Although the other equipment may comply with EMC standard requirements, interference can occur. If such use is necessary, observe this equipment and the other equipment to verify that both are operating normally.
- This device shall not be used near active high frequency (HF) surgical equipment, medical devices such as X-ray devices and diathermy, or in an RF shielded room of medical equipment or system for magnetic resonance imaging, where the intensity of electromagnetic (EM) disturbances is high.
- This device shall not be used near RFID or electromagnetic security systems.
- The use of accessories, transducers and/or cables other than those specified, with the exception of those sold by the manufacturer as replacement parts for internal components, may result in increased emissions or decreased immunity of the equipment or system.

14.2.1 Guidance and Manufacturer's Declaration - Electromagnetic Emissions

This device is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The user of this device should make sure it is used in such an environment.

Emissions Test	Compliance	Electromagnetic Environment - Guidance
RF emissions CISPR 11 Industrial, scientific and medical equipment. Radio-frequency disturbance characteristics. Limits and methods of measurement	Group 1	The device uses RF energy only for its internal function. Therefore, its RF emissions are very low and are not likely to cause any interference in nearby electronic equipment.
RF emissions CISPR 11	Class B	The device is suitable for use in all establishments, including domestic establishments and those directly connected to the public low-voltage power supply network.
Harmonic emissions IEC 61000-3-2 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Part 3-2: Limits. Limits for harmonic current emissions (equipment input current smaller than or equal to 16 A per phase)	Class A	
Voltage fluctuations/Flicker emissions IEC 61000-3-3 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - Part 3-3: Limits - Limitation of voltage changes, voltage fluctuations and flicker in public low-voltage supply systems, for equipment with rated current ≤ 16 A per phase and not subject to conditional connection	Complies	
Emission of Radio Frequency Energy RTCA/DO-160G Section 21	Category M	This device is suitable for use on board commercial airplanes inside passenger cabin.

14.2.2 Guidance and Manufacturer's Declaration - Electromagnetic Immunity

This device is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The user of this device should make sure it is used in such an environment.

Immunity Test	IEC 60601 Test Level	Compliance Level	Electromagnetic Environment - Guidance
IEC 61000-4-2 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Part 4-2: Testing and measurement techniques. Electrostatic discharge immunity test	±8 kV contact ±2 kV, ±4 kV, ±8 kV, and ±15 kV air	±8 kV contact ±2 kV, ±4 kV, ±8 kV, and ±15 kV air	Floors should be wood, concrete, or ceramic tile. If floors are covered with synthetic material, the relative humidity should be at least 35%.
IEC 61000-4-4 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Part 4-4: Testing and measurement techniques. Electrical fast transient/burst immunity test	±2 kV for power supply lines ±1 kV for input-output lines	±2 kV for supply mains ±1 kV for input/output lines	Mains power quality should be that of a typical home or hospital environment.
IEC 61000-4-5 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - Part 4-5 Testing and measurement techniques. Surge immunity test	±1 kV line to ground ±2 kV line to ground	±1 kV line to line N/A - this Class II device does not connect to earth ground	Mains power quality should be that of a typical home or hospital environment.
IEC 61000-4-11 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Part 4-11: Testing and measurement techniques. Voltage dips, short interruptions and voltage variations immunity tests	0% U_T 0.5 cycle at 45 degree increments 0% U_T 1 cycle 70% U_T 25 cycles (30 cycles if US) 0% U_T 5 sec	0% U_T 0.5 cycle at 45 degree increments 0% U_T 1 cycle 70% U_T 25 cycles (30 cycles if US) 0% U_T 5 sec	Mains power quality should be that of a typical home or hospital environment. If the user of the device requires continued operation during power mains interruptions, it is recommended that the device be powered from an uninterruptible power supply or a battery.

Immunity Test	IEC 60601 Test Level	Compliance Level	Electromagnetic Environment - Guidance
IEC 61000-4-8 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Part 4-8: Testing and measurement techniques. Power frequency (50/60 Hz) magnetic field immunity test	30 A/m	30 A/m	Power frequency magnetic fields should be at levels characteristic of a typical location in a typical hospital or home environment.
NOTE: UT is the AC mains voltage prior to application of the test level.			

14.2.3 Guidance and Manufacturer's Declaration - Electromagnetic Immunity

This device is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The user of this device should make sure it is used in such an environment.

Immunity Test	IEC 60601 Test Level	Compliance Level	Electromagnetic Environment - Guidance
Conducted RF IEC 61000-4-6 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Part 4-6: Testing and measurement techniques. Immunity to conducted disturbances, induced by radio-frequency fields.	3 Vrms 150 kHz to 80 MHz	3 Vrms 150 kHz to 80 MHz	Portable and mobile RF communications equipment should be used no closer to any part of the device, including cables, than the recommended 30 cm separation distance.
	6 Vrms Amateur Radio & ISM Bands between 150 kHz and 80 MHz	Vrms Amateur Radio & ISM Bands between 150 kHz and 80 MHz	
Radiated RF IEC 61000-4-3 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - Part 4-3: Testing and measurement techniques - Radiated, radio-frequency, electromagnetic field immunity test	10 V/m	10 V/m	Interference may occur in the vicinity of equipment marked with the following symbol: 
	80 MHz to 2.7 GHz		
	Telecommunication frequencies as specified in clause 8.10 of IEC 60601-1-2:2014		
	450, 810, 870, 930, 1720, 1845, 1970, and 2450 MHz at 28 V/m	28 V/m	
	385 MHz at 27 V/m	27 V/m	
	710, 745, 780, 5240, 5500, and 5785 MHz at 9 V/m	9 V/m	

14.3 Wireless

Hereby, Respironics Inc. declares that this class 1 radio equipment is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <http://incenter.medical.philipscom/PMSPublic>.

Notices: The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Philips Respironics is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

The Trilogy Evo-series device transmits data between the therapy device and a mobile device, but it does not store any of your personally-identifiable health information. This connection between the therapy device and a mobile device is encrypted.

This device contains a certified Bluetooth/Wi-Fi radio:

- FCC ID (USA): 2AN9Z-1127941BT
- IC ID (Canada): 3234B-1127941BT

Near field communication (NFC) is certified under the following IDs:

- FCC ID (USA): 2AN9Z-1127941
- IC ID (Canada): 3234B-1127941

Use of non-original manufacturer-approved accessories may violate your local RF exposure guidelines and should be avoided.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio, TV reception, or other devices which can be determined by turning the equipment on and off, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna (on the radio, TV, or other device).
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer of the device for help.

14.3.1 ISED License Exemption

This device contains license-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's license-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

14.4 Software Licensing

This product contains software licensed under an open source license. For acknowledgements and license texts, a list can be viewed on the User Interface under Options > Information > Software Licenses. Philips Respironics hereby offers to deliver, upon request, a copy of the complete corresponding source code for the copyrighted open source software packages used in this product for which such delivery is requested by the respective licenses. This offer is valid for as long as the respective licenses require this offer to be valid. To obtain source code, please send your request in English with product type to open.source@philips.com. If you prefer not to use email or if you do not receive confirmation receipt within 2 weeks after mailing to this email address, please write in English to "Open Source Team, Philips Intellectual Property & Standards, High Tech Campus 5, 5656 AE Eindhoven, The Netherlands". If you do not receive timely confirmation of your letter, please send an email to the email address above.

15. Glossary

15.1 Glossary of Terms

The following terms and acronyms appear throughout this manual.

Term	Definition
A/C-PC	Therapy mode: Assist control – assist-control and mandatory breaths with pressure control and optional AVAPS
A/C-VC	Therapy mode: Assist control – assist control and mandatory breaths with volume control
Access Level	Ventilator security level
Active Circuit	Circuit that includes an active exhalation device
Apnea Interval	Interval in which the ventilator detects patient-triggered breaths.
Auto PEEP	Estimate of the any pressure (above PEEP) that exists in the patient airway at the end of exhalation It is updated at the end of exhalation of every mandatory or assisted (timed-cycled) breath. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the therapy mode is A/C-PC, A/C-VC, SIMV-PC, or SIMV-VC and the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.
Assist-Control Breath	Patient-initiated, time-cycled breath
AVAPS-AE Mode	Therapy mode: Provides variable pressure to achieve a target volume and to reduce airway resistance. Breaths are spontaneous, assist-control, mandatory or auto backup
Average Total Leak (Leak)	The average flow from the ventilator that did not reach the patient during the previous breath. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the circuit type is passive.
Blower Hours	The total number of hours that the blower has been on over the life of the device. This value helps determine when the ventilator needs to be serviced. You cannot reset this value. It can only be reset by a service center.
BPM	Breaths per minute or beats per minute
BTPS	Body temperature and pressure saturated; A standardization for lung volumes and flows to barometric pressure at sea level, body temperature, and saturated with water vapor reflecting the condition of air in the lung.
CPAP	Therapy mode: Continuous positive airway pressure

Term	Definition
Dyn C	Estimate of the compliance of the pulmonary system (lung and chest wall) in mL/cmH₂O, computed on a breath-to-breath basis without requiring a static maneuver. It is updated at the end of exhalation of every mandatory or assisted breath (time cycled), and is displayed as the average over the last three mandatory or assisted breaths. It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the therapy mode is A/C-PC, A/C-VC, SIMV-PC, or SIMV-VC and the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.
Dyn R	Estimate of the airway resistance in cmH₂O/L/s, computed on a breath-to-breath basis without requiring a static maneuver. It is updated at the end of exhalation of every mandatory or assisted (timed cycled) breath, and is displayed as the average over the last three mandatory or assisted breaths. It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the therapy mode is A/C-PC, A/C-VC, SIMV-PC, or SIMV-VC and the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.
Dyn Pplat	Estimate of the maximum alveolar pressure during inspiration in cmH₂O, computed on a breath-to-breath basis without requiring a static maneuver. It is compensated for Auto-PEEP. It is updated at the end of exhalation of every mandatory or assisted (timed cycled) breath. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the therapy mode is A/C-PC, A/C-VC, SIMV-PC, or SIMV-VC and the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.
EPAP	Expiratory positive airway pressure
ESD	Electrostatic discharge

Term	Definition
EtCO ₂	End tidal carbon dioxide. The amount of carbon dioxide at the end of exhalation. No value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the CO₂ sensor does not detect a breath. Upon initially connecting a sensor, allow up to 2 minutes for data to appear. Respiration rate accuracy (as measured by the CO₂ sensor) was verified by using a solenoid test setup to deliver a square wave of known CO₂ concentration to the device. 5% and 10% CO₂ concentrations were used and respiration rate was varied over the range of the device. Pass/fail criteria was a comparison of the respiratory rate output from the sensor to the frequency of the square wave. EtCO₂ measurements at those rates were compared to the CO₂ readings under static flow conditions.
Exhaled tidal volume Vte	The exhaled tidal volume in milliliters, derived from summing the expiratory patient flow. The Vte is updated once per breath. It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.
FiO ₂	Fraction of inspired oxygen (the percentage of oxygen in the air inhaled) It is updated approximately every 300msec. The FiO₂ measurement does not automatically compensate for changes in altitude.
I:E Ratio	The ratio of inspiratory time to expiratory time on the previous breath expressed as 1:X or X:1 for inverse ratios. This value does not appear in the displayed parameters pane when using mouthpiece ventilation.
Infant	Full term newborn up to one month in age with mass that is greater than or equal to 2.5 kg.
Inhaled tidal volume Vti	The tidal volume, in milliliters, delivered to the patient. This value is derived from summing the inspiratory patient flow. The Vti is updated once per breath. It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the circuit type is active PAP or when using mouthpiece ventilation.
Inspiratory time	Length of the inspiratory phase
IPAP	Inspiratory positive airway pressure
L/min	Liters per minute
Leak	See Average Total Leak.
LED	Light emitting diode

Term	Definition
Mandatory Breath	A ventilator-initiated, time-cycled breath
Manometer	Pressure indicator
Mean Airway Pressure (MAP)	The average applied pressure during the breath in cmH_2O, displayed as an average over the previous six breaths. It is updated at the end of each exhalation. This value does not appear in the displayed parameters pane when using mouthpiece ventilation.
Minute Ventilation (MinVent)	The volume of patient exhaled gas in one minute, based on a six-breath average of exhaled tidal volume (V_{te}) and respiratory rate (BPM). It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions. Minute ventilation is updated at the start of each breath, or after 15 seconds if no breath is detected. For Active PAP circuits, the displayed Minute Ventilation is calculated using the inhaled tidal volume (V_{ti}). This value does not appear in the displayed parameters pane when using mouthpiece ventilation.
MPV	Mouthpiece ventilation
Passive Circuit	A circuit that includes a passive exhalation device.
Peak Inspiratory Flow (PIF)	The maximum inspiratory flow delivered to the patient in L/min. It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions and updated once per breath.
Peak Inspiratory Pressure (PIP)	The maximum inspiratory pressure delivered to the patient in cmH_2O , updated once per breath.
PEEP	Positive end expiratory pressure.
Percentage Spontaneous Triggered Breaths (%Spont Trig)	The percentage of breaths that are patient-initiated over the most recent 50 breaths. It is updated once per breath.
Pressure Control (PC)	Pressure applied during inspiration above PEEP for time-cycled breaths
Pressure Support (PS)	Pressure applied during inspiration above PEEP for patient-cycled breaths
PS	Pressure support
PSV	Therapy mode: Pressure support ventilation with optional AVAPS
Pulse Rate (PR)	Number of heartbeats per minute (BPM) measured by pulse oximetry
Ramp	Flow pattern in volume control modes where the airflow starts high and decreases throughout inspiration of the breath. See Square.

Term	Definition
Respiratory Rate (RR)	The measured breathing rate of the patient/ventilator in breaths per minute (BPM), based on a six-breath average that includes both patient-triggered and ventilator-triggered breaths. It is updated at the start of every breath, after 15sec, or when the low respiratory rate alarm is annunciated, whichever interval is shorter.
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered.
S/T	Therapy mode: Spontaneous/timed ventilation – spontaneous breaths with pressure support, mandatory breaths with pressure control, and optional AVAPS
Sigh	Delivers a periodic, larger volume breath. Settings adjust the frequency and volume. Available only in A/C-VC mode.
SIMV-PC	Therapy mode: Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (pressure control) – spontaneous breaths with pressure support, assist—control breaths and mandatory breaths with pressure control
SIMV-VC	Therapy mode: Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (volume control) – spontaneous breaths with pressure support, assist—control breaths and mandatory breaths with volume control
SpO ₂	Blood oxygen saturation measured by pulse oximetry
Spontaneous Breath	Patient-initiated, patient-cycled breath
Square	Flow pattern in volume control modes where the airflow is generally constant throughout inspiration of the breath. See Ramp.
Tidal Volume	The volume of air passing in and out of the lungs during a breath.
Vte	See <i>exhaled tidal volume</i> .
Vti	See <i>inhaled tidal volume</i> .

Warranty

Respironics, Inc. (Philips Respironics) warrants that defects in the Product due to faulty materials and workmanship will be repaired or replaced at Respironics' expense if convincing proof of purchase within the Warranty Period (as defined herein) is provided. Philips Respironics warrants that the Product will be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal and proper use in accordance with applicable instructions for a period of two years ("Warranty Period") from the date of shipment by Philips Respironics to the original purchaser. Accessories and replacement parts are not covered under this warranty. However, Philips Respironics warrants that the internal battery in the Product will be free from defects in material and workmanship, under normal and proper use and when correctly maintained, for a period of ninety days from the date of shipment by Philips Respironics to the original purchaser.

Contact our Consumer Care Center at 1-800-682-7664 (North America), outside North America contact your local Respironics, Inc. Consumer Care Center. Internet information: www.philips.com/healthcare (North America) or www.philips.com (outside North America).

LIMITATIONS

If any Product purchased from Philips Respironics fails to conform to the warranties set forth herein during the Warranty Period as determined by Philips Respironics, in its sole discretion, Philips Respironics may discharge its warranty obligation by choosing to repair or replace the Product. This may be accomplished by installing new or remanufactured assemblies or components, or by other repairs deemed appropriate in the sole discretion of Philips Respironics. The choice of repair or replacement by Philips Respironics will be the sole and exclusive remedy of the original purchaser. Philips Respironics reserves the right, in its sole discretion, to refund the purchase price in lieu of repair or replacement of the Product. In no event will Philips Respironics' maximum liability under these warranties exceed the price paid to Philips Respironics by the original purchaser for the Product.

CONDITIONS

This warranty does not cover damage or injury whether to the Product or to personal property or persons caused by accident, misuse, abuse, negligence, failure to install in accordance with Philips Respironics' installation instructions, failure to operate under conditions of normal use and in accordance with the terms of the operating manual and instructions, failure to maintain in accordance with the applicable service manuals, or alteration or any defects not related to materials or workmanship of the Product. This warranty does not cover damage which may occur in shipment and does not apply to the device if dropped, misused, altered or otherwise damaged after shipment. This warranty does not apply to any Product or individual part of a Product that may have been repaired or altered by anyone other than Philips Respironics or an authorized Philips Respironics service center. This warranty does not apply to any Product which is not purchased new.

DISCLAIMERS

EXCEPT AS SET FORTH IN THIS LIMITED WARRANTY, PHILIPS RESPIRONICS MAKES NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, REGARDING THE PRODUCT, ITS QUALITY OR PERFORMANCE. PHILIPS RESPIRONICS SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY AND THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL PHILIPS RESPIRONICS BE LIABLE FOR THE COST OF PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE PRODUCTS OR FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE, EXEMPLARY OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, COMMERCIAL LOSS OR LOST REVENUES), FOR ANY CAUSE OF ACTION, WHETHER IN CONTRACT OR TORT, AND WHETHER OR NOT PHILIPS RESPIRONICS WAS AWARE OR SHOULD HAVE BEEN AWARE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF THESE DAMAGES. EXCEPT FOR THE OBLIGATIONS UNDER THIS LIMITED WARRANTY, PHILIPS RESPIRONICS WILL NOT HAVE ANY OBLIGATION OR LIABILITY FOR ANY OTHER LOSS, DAMAGE OR INJURY RESULTING DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY FROM THE PRODUCT. PURCHASER'S SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR BREACH OF THE WARRANTIES SET FORTH IN THIS DOCUMENT WILL BE AS PROVIDED IN THE PARAGRAPH DESCRIBING LIMITATIONS.

Purchaser is cautioned that no person or entity is authorized to make any warranties on behalf of Philips Respironics and any such alleged warranties are hereby disclaimed by Philips Respironics.

Note: For Australian and New Zealand customers this warranty replaces the warranty contained above.

1. Respironics, Inc., a Philips Healthcare company ("Philips Respironics"), warrants that the Products shall be free from defects of workmanship and materials and will perform in accordance with the Product specifications. 2. This warranty is valid for a period of two years from the date of purchase from an authorized Philips Respironics dealer. 3 If the Product is found to contain a defect of workmanship or materials or fails to perform in accordance with the Product specifications during the applicable warranty period, Philips Respironics will repair or replace, at its option, the defective material or part. 4. The customer is responsible for returning the product to an authorised Philips Respironics dealer, and collecting the product from the authorised Philips Respironics dealer after repair or replacement, at its own cost. Philips Respironics is responsible only for the freight cost of transporting the product between the authorised Philips Respironics dealer and Philips Respironics. Philips Respironics reserves the right to charge an evaluation and postage fee for any returned Product as to which no problem is found following investigation. 5. This warranty does not cover damage caused by accident, misuse, abuse, alteration, and other defects not related to materials or workmanship. 6. The warranty provided by Philips Respironics herein is not transferrable by the Buyer in the event of any sale or transfer of Products purchased by the Buyer from an authorized Philips Respironics dealer. 7. To the extent permitted by law, where the Buyer has the benefit of an implied guarantee under the Australian Consumer Law, but the Product is not of a kind ordinarily acquired for personal, domestic or household use or consumption Philips Respironics' liability shall be limited, at the option of Philips Respironics, to the replacement or repair of the Product or the supply of an equivalent Product. 8. To exercise your rights under this warranty, contact your local authorised Philips Respironics dealer. A list of all authorised dealers is available at the following link: <http://www.philips.com.au/healthcare>.

Alternatively, you can make a claim under this warranty by contacting Philips Respironics directly at: Philips Electronics Australia Limited, 65 Epping Road, North Ryde NSW 2113, Australia. Tel: 1300 766 488, Email: prcontact@philips.com. 9. The following statement is provided to a Buyer who is a "consumer" under the Australian Consumer Law: Our goods come with guarantees that cannot be excluded under the Australian Consumer Law. You are entitled to a replacement or refund for a major failure and for compensation for any other reasonably foreseeable loss or damage. You are also entitled to have the good repaired or replaced if the goods fail to be of acceptable quality and the failure does not amount to a major failure. 10. The following statement is provided to a Buyer who is a "consumer" under the Consumer Guarantees Act 1993, New Zealand: Our goods come with guarantees that cannot be excluded under the Consumer Guarantees Act 1993. This guarantee applies in addition to the conditions and guarantees implied by that legislation.



REF 1143279



1143279 R04
ZL 10/31/2019
EN-DOM

Respironics Inc.
1001 Murry Ridge Lane
Murrysville, PA 15668 USA



Instructions for use

Trilogy EV300

Instructions for Use

For Technical Support and Customer Service, contact Philips Respironics Customer Service:

1-724-387-4000

1-800-345-6443 (toll-free)

USA

Respironics Inc.

1001 Murry Ridge Lane Murrysville, PA 15668

Email: service@philips.com, clinical@philips.com

Web: www.philips.com\healthcare

Copyright © Koninklijke Philips N.V., 2019. All rights reserved.

This work is protected under Title 17 of the United States copyright code and is the sole property of Philips Respironics. No part of this document may be copied or otherwise reproduced, or stored in any electronic information retrieval system, except as specifically permitted under United States copyright law, without the prior written consent of Philips Respironics.

Trilogy EV300 is the registered trademark of Respironics Inc.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Philips Respironics is under license.

Dawn Ultra is a registered trademark of Procter & Gamble.

Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Illustrations and screen images in this document are representative depictions.

Contents

1. Introduction	
1.1 Overview	4
1.2 Device Usage	4
1.3 Package Contents	5
1.4 Warnings	6
1.5 MRI Safety Information	11
1.6 Symbols Glossary	11
1.7 How to Contact Philips Respironics	13
2. About Trilogy EV300	
2.1 Overview	14
2.2 Parts of Trilogy EV300	14
2.3 Parts of the User Interface	17
2.4 Monitoring Window	19
3. Therapy Modes and Controls	
3.1 Overview	21
3.2 Therapy Modes Principles	21
3.3 Control Modes	25
3.4 Spontaneous Modes	29
3.5 Mixed Modes	32
3.6 AVAPS-AE Mode	37
3.7 Therapy Features	39
3.8 Therapy Control Settings	42
3.9 Lung Parameters	44
4. Device Setup	
4.1 Overview	48
4.2 Placement	48
4.3 Connecting AC Power	48
4.4 Installing Filters	49
4.5 Connecting a Circuit	49
4.6 Connecting External Patient Monitors	54
4.7 Adding Oxygen	54
4.8 Starting Trilogy EV300	57

5.	Device Operation	
5.1	Overview	58
5.2	Clinical Assessment	58
5.3	Entering New Patient Information	58
5.4	About Prescriptions/Settings	59
5.5	Starting and Stopping Therapy	61
5.6	Actions During Ventilation	61
6.	Alarms and System Messages	
6.1	Overview	64
6.2	About Alarms	64
6.3	The Alarm List	65
6.4	Setting and Changing Alarms	66
6.5	Setting the Alarm Volume	67
6.6	Responding to an Alarm	67
6.7	Alarms and System Messages	68
6.8	Patient-related Alarm Availability by Therapy Mode	91
6.9	Testing Alarms	92
7.	Device Options	
7.1	Overview	97
7.2	Device Options	97
7.3	Calibration	98
7.4	Data Transfer	101
7.5	Information	102
7.6	Alarm and Event Log	103
8.	Cleaning and Disinfection	
8.1	Overview	105
8.2	Exterior Cleaning and Disinfection	105
8.3	Cleaning the Detachable Battery	109
8.4	Rinsing the Air-Inlet Foam Filter	110
9.	Service and Maintenance	
9.1	Service Overview	111
9.2	Disposal	111
9.3	Daily Maintenance	111
9.4	Replacing the Air-Inlet Foam Filter	111
9.5	Replacing the Particulate Filter	112
9.6	Preparing the Device for Use by a Different Patient	113

10. Accessories	
10.1 Overview	114
10.2 Portability and Accessories	114
10.3 Power Accessories	114
10.4 Patient Circuits and Circuit Accessories	114
10.5 Monitors and Sensors	116
10.6 Filters	117
10.7 Oxygen	117
10.8 Communications Cables	117
10.9 Remote Alarm and Nurse Call	118
10.10 USB Flash Drive	118
11. Power Management	
11.1 Overview	119
11.2 AC Power	119
11.3 External Battery	119
11.4 Detachable Battery	120
11.5 Internal Battery	121
11.6 Battery Status	122
11.7 Power Loss	122
11.8 Power Icons	123
12. Connectivity	
12.1 Overview	124
12.2 External Systems	124
12.3 Wireless	124
12.4 Connectivity Actions	125
13. Technical Data	
13.1 Overview	126
13.2 Specifications	126
13.3 Pneumatic Diagram	132
14. Regulatory Information	
14.1 Standards Compliance	133
14.2 EMC Information	134
14.3 Wireless	139
14.4 Software Licensing	140
15. Glossary	
15.1 Glossary of Terms	141
Warranty	146

1. Introduction

1.1 Overview

The Trilogy EV300 ventilator provides invasive and noninvasive, positive pressure ventilation to pediatric through adult patients with a minimum weight of 2.5 kg. It is an electronically controlled, pneumatic ventilation system with an integrated air compressing system. It is compatible with a range of accessories to provide a variety of therapy modes.

The Trilogy EV300 ventilator is a medical device intended for use by qualified, trained personnel under the direction of a physician according to its technical specifications. For training and support materials, see the Trilogy EV300 website:

www.philips.com/EV300

1.2 Device Usage

1.2.1 Intended Use

The Trilogy EV300 ventilator provides continuous or intermittent positive pressure ventilation for the care of individuals who require mechanical ventilation. Trilogy EV300 is intended for pediatric through adult patients weighing at least 2.5 kg. The ventilator can measure, display, record, and alarm SpO₂, FiO₂, CO₂, and Pulse Rate data when integrated with the appropriate accessories. The ventilator is suitable for use in institutional, home, and non-emergency transport settings for example wheelchair or personal vehicle. It may be used for both invasive and non-invasive ventilation.

1.2.2 Environments of Use

The Trilogy EV300 ventilator is intended to be used:

- In institutional environments.
- While attached to a roll stand or sitting on a flat surface such as a table or nightstand.
- While transporting patients within and between facilities, such as an automobile or commercial aircraft.

1.2.3 Contraindications

If the patient has any of the following conditions, consult the patient's health care professional before using noninvasive ventilation:

- An inability to maintain a patent airway or adequately clear secretions
- At risk to aspirate gastric contents
- Acute sinusitis or otitis media
- Epistaxis, causing pulmonary aspiration of blood
- Hypotension

The AVAPS-AE therapy mode is contraindicated for invasive use and patients less than 10 kg.

The AVAPS feature is contraindicated for patients less than 10 kg.

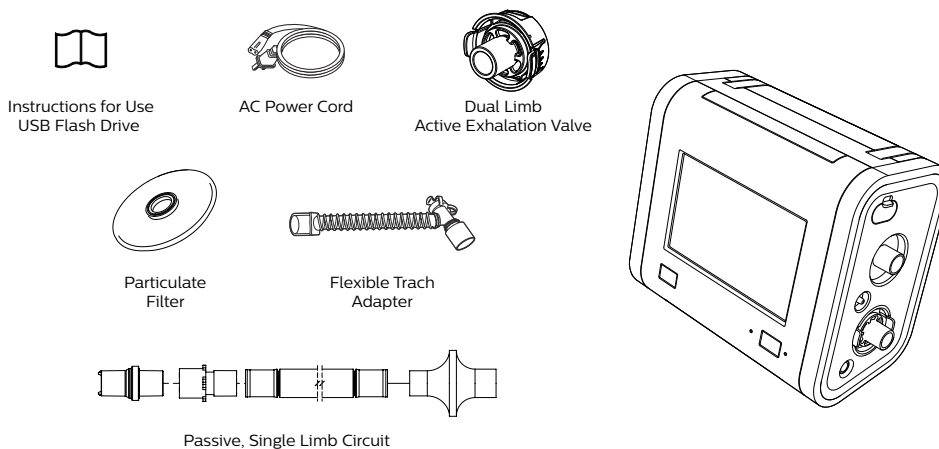
1.2.4 Users

Clinical Users of the Trilogy EV300 ventilator include: clinicians (respiratory and non-respiratory) and physicians.

Service and Maintenance Users of the Trilogy EV300 ventilator include: hospital and service provider technicians.

1.3 Package Contents

Package contents may vary based on model.



1.4 Warnings

Caution: U.S. federal law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician.

1.4.1 Environmental

- You should not operate the device in the presence of flammable gases.
- Do not cover the ventilator or place in a position that affects proper operation.
- Do not block the cooling and intake air vents.
- Do not operate the device in an environment that is outside the specified ranges. Using the ventilator outside of this temperature range or above this altitude can affect the device performance.
- Do not expose the device or detachable battery to temperatures above 60° C (140° F) during use or above 70° C (158° F) during storage. This will reduce battery life and may increase the risk of fire or damage the battery.
- Do not use the device within magnetic resonance (MR) environments. Using the device within MR environments may affect the device or MR device performance, damage the device, or harm individuals.
- Move the Trilogy EV300 device away from any potential sources of electromagnetic interference (EMI) including MRI equipment, medical imaging systems, security systems, appliances, wireless communications equipment (such as cellular phones), computers, and televisions.
- The device is not intended for anesthesia applications and is not intended to be permanently mounted in EMS vehicles.
- When disposing of this device or any accessories, ensure you comply with your local regulations. Dispose of any potentially biohazardous waste according to your local regulations.
- This device is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified in “EMC Information.” Ensure the environment is compatible. Portable and mobile RF communications equipment, including cables, should be no closer to any part of the device than the recommended separation distance indicated in “EMC Information.”
- This device is not made with natural rubber latex.
- Do not use the ventilator in a hyperbaric chamber.
- Do not use the ventilator in the presence of nitric or nitrous oxide.
- Do not use the ventilator with helium or in the presence of mixtures in combination with helium.
- Route all cables in a manner to prevent injury, such as tripping or strangulation, to the patient and caregiver.
- If the device has been stored at very high or very low temperatures, allow 2 hours for the device to reach ambient temperature before using. This allows adequate time for the battery to reach its operating temperature range for charging and discharging.
- This device is not defibrillation-proof.

1.4.2 Clinical

- Before placing a patient on the ventilator, perform a clinical assessment. Considerations should include:
 - Choosing alarm settings
 - Whether alternative ventilation equipment is required
 - Whether alternative monitors are required, such as Vte monitoring for Active PAP circuit, pulse oximeter, respiratory monitor with alarm, SpO₂, FiO₂, EtCO₂, and pulse rate
- Trilogy EV300 is a restricted medical device. It is designed for use by respiratory therapists or other trained and qualified caregivers under the supervision of a physician. Only the supervising physician's orders authorize changes to the prescription and other device settings. Before using Trilogy EV300, you must read and understand this manual.
- The caregiver or health care professional is responsible for verifying any changes to the device, prescription, or other settings before applying changes. The caregiver or health care professional is responsible for ensuring settings are correct and compatible with the patient. Using the wrong prescription for a patient may result in improper therapy, lack of appropriate safety monitoring, or risk of death or injury to the patient.

1.4.3 Alternate Ventilation

- To avoid patient death or serious injury, ventilator-dependent patients require immediate access to alternate ventilation equipment, such as a back-up ventilator or manual resuscitator.
- Qualified personnel should monitor ventilator-dependent patients continuously. Personnel should be prepared to provide alternate therapy in the event of ventilator failure or inoperative equipment.

1.4.4 Alarms

- Do not rely on any single alarm to detect a disconnected circuit.
- Respond immediately to any high priority alarm. It may indicate a potentially life-threatening condition.
- Visually monitor the patient and ventilator at all times during an alarm silence period. Allowing alarms to continue without intervention may result in harm to the patient.
- If the high-priority, Low Battery alarm occurs, immediately connect the ventilator to an alternate power source. If no alternate power source is available, immediately place the patient on an alternate source of ventilation.
- When using a remote alarm or nurse call system, fully test the system by verifying that you can hear the ventilator's audible alarms on the remote alarm or nurse call system.
- Test the operation of the circuit disconnect function daily and whenever the patient circuit is changed. An increase in circuit resistance can prevent proper operation of some alarms.

- When adding any components to the breathing system, the flow resistance and dead space of the added components such as humidifiers, speaking valves, Heat Moisture Exchangers (HMEs) and filters should be carefully considered in relation to the potential for adverse effects on the patient's ventilator management and device alarms.
- Do not set the Low Peak Inspiratory Pressure alarm too low, or the system may not detect large circuit leaks or a patient disconnect.

1.4.5 Accessories

- Use Trilogy EV300 only with accessories intended for use with this device. For a list of accessories, such as patient interfaces, circuits, exhalation ports, and cables, see the Trilogy EV300 accessories guide. Ensure accessories and parts are compatible before you connect a patient to the device. Consult the accessory's instructions before use. Electronic accessories that are not intended for use with this device may cause adverse performance including: increased electromagnetic emissions or decreased electromagnetic immunity of this equipment.
- The air-inlet foam filter is required to protect the ventilator from dirt and dust. See the "Service and Maintenance" chapter for maintenance instructions.
- Be certain that any bacterial filter used with this device complies with ISO 23328-1 and ISO 23328-2. To prevent patient or ventilator contamination, you must use a Philips Respironics-approved main flow bacterial filter on the patient gas outlet port. Filters not approved by Philips Respironics may degrade system performance. For a list of accessories, see the Trilogy EV300 accessories guide.
- Nebulization or humidification can increase the resistance of bacterial filters. Monitor the breathing system frequently for increased resistance and blockage.
- Gas added by the use of a pneumatic nebulizer can adversely affect ventilator accuracy.
- When using a passive circuit an exhalation port is required.
- Do not use antistatic or conductive hoses or conductive patient tubing with the device.
- The ventilator system (used with patient circuit accessories, such as patient interface devices, humidifiers, water traps, and circuit tubing) may contain small parts that could result in a choking hazard.
- Be certain that any humidifier in use, including any heated breathing tube, complies with ISO 8185 or ISO 80601-2-74.
- Be certain that any heat and moisture exchanger in use complies with ISO 9360-1 or ISO 9360-2.
- Only connect devices recommended by Philips Respironics to the USB ports. Connecting other devices could result in patient injury or damage to the ventilator.
- The Micro USB port is for service personnel only.

1.4.6 Oxygen

1.4.6.1 High Pressure Oxygen

- This device is equipped with an oxygen blender that can deliver oxygen to the patient within a range of 21–100% concentration.
- When using the oxygen blender, use the internal FiO_2 accessory to verify the oxygen concentration in the delivered gas.
- Substantial leaks may reduce the inspired oxygen concentration to less than the expected value. Use appropriate patient monitoring, as medically indicated, such as an alarming pulse oximeter.
- Do not connect the device to an unregulated oxygen source.
- Do not use oxygen while smoking or in the presence of an open flame.

1.4.6.2 Low Flow Oxygen

- Do not use oxygen while smoking or in the presence of an open flame.
- Turn off the low flow oxygen when the device is not in use.

1.4.7 Cleaning and Maintenance

- To avoid electric shock, do not remove the enclosure cover. Only service personnel should remove the enclosure.
- Do not immerse the device or allow liquids into any of the controls or the interior of the enclosure as the device may be damaged. If this occurs, contact your equipment provider for assistance. Use only the agents and methods described in this manual to clean and disinfect the device. After cleaning and disinfecting, ensure the device is completely dry before reattaching accessories and connectors and before reconnecting it to a power source. Do not use solvents, polishes, or any oily substances on the device, as they are flammable.
- If the device has been exposed to rain or dampness, dry the device including the area around the power cord connection with the power cord disconnected from the device before applying AC power.
- Repairs and adjustments must be performed by service personnel only. Unauthorized repairs and adjustments could cause death or injury, invalidate the warranty, or result in costly device damage.
- If you notice any unexplained changes in the performance of the device, if it is making unusual sounds, if the device or detachable battery is dropped, if water is spilled into the enclosure, or if the enclosure is cracked or broken, discontinue use and contact Philips Respironics.
- To avoid electrical shock, always unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before cleaning the ventilator.
- Periodically inspect electrical cords, cables, and the detachable battery pack for damage or signs of wear. Discontinue use and replace if damaged.
- Any changes or modifications made to the device that are not expressly approved by Philips Respironics may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

1.4.8 Power

- An external battery should only be connected to the ventilator using the Philips Respironics approved External Battery Cable. This cable is fused, pre-wired, and properly terminated to ensure safe connection.
- Use only the Philips Respironics Detachable Battery.

1.5 MRI Safety Information

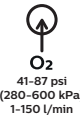


The Trilogy EV300 Ventilation System is MR Unsafe. Keep it outside the MRI scan room (Zone IV). It represents a projectile hazard.

1.6 Symbols Glossary

See <http://www.symbols.philips.com> for a description of the symbols used on this device and its packaging.

Symbol	Definition	Symbol	Definition
Symbols on the Device Label and Package Label			
	Refer to instruction manual		Date of manufacture
	For airline use. Complies with RTCA DO-160G section 21, category M		Class II equipment
	Bluetooth® symbol		Type BF applied part
IP22	IP22: protection against finger-sized objects and protected against dripping water when tilted up to 15 degrees.		Serial number
	Catalog number		Humidity limit
	Batch code		Temperature limit
	Manufacturer		MR unsafe
Symbols on the Device			
	On/Off (Standby) button		Low flow oxygen inlet
	Alarm Silence button		Flow sensor cable connection
	USB port		Proximal pressure out
	Nurse call connection		AEV control line

Symbol	Definition	Symbol	Definition
	DC power (direct current)		Patient in
	AC power (alternating current)		Patient out
	Oxygen inlet		
Symbols on the Screen - General			
	Prescription settings	100%O ₂	Deliver 100% oxygen
	Home window		Delete prescription
	Options		Touch screen lock
	Help		Edit
	Device actions menu		
Symbols on the Screen - Alarms			
	Alarms tab		Medium or low priority alarm
	Alarm silence		System message
	High priority alarm		Alarm reset
Symbols on the Screen - Connectivity			
	Bluetooth data transfer		USB data transfer
Symbols on the Screen – Monitoring Views See “Monitoring Window” section			
Symbols on the Screen - Power See “Power Icons” section			

1.7 How to Contact Philips Respironics

If you need help setting up, using, or maintaining Trilogy EV300, or if this device does not perform as expected, contact Philips Respironics.

Call Philips Respironics Customer Service at:

- 1-724-387-4000
- 1-800-345-6443 (toll-free)

Respironics, Inc.
1001 Murry Ridge Lane
Murrysville, PA 15668

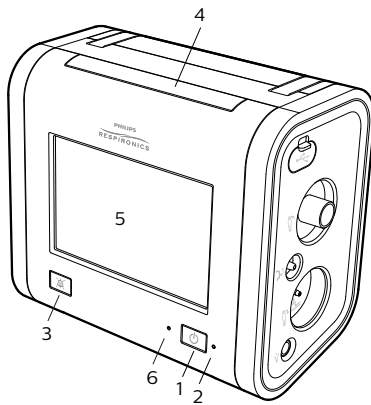
2. About Trilogy EV300

2.1 Overview

This chapter describes the physical parts of the device and the parts of the user interface.

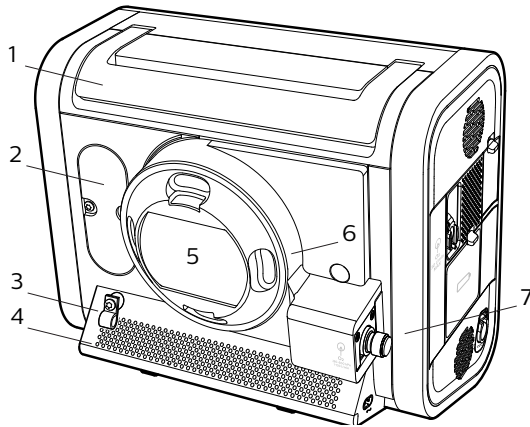
2.2 Parts of Trilogy EV300

2.2.1 Front Panel



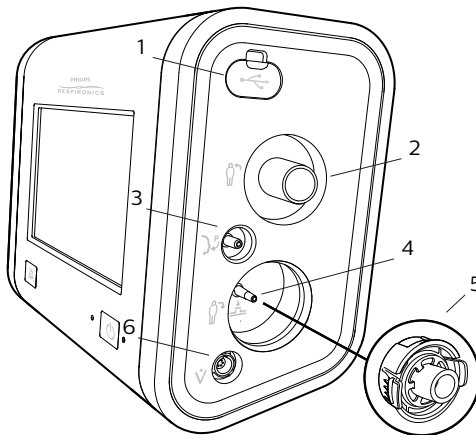
1. On/Off (Standby) button
2. AC power indicator
3. Alarm Silence button/alarm indicator
4. Alarm bar
5. Touch screen
6. Ambient light sensor

2.2.2 Back Panel with Oxygen Blending Module



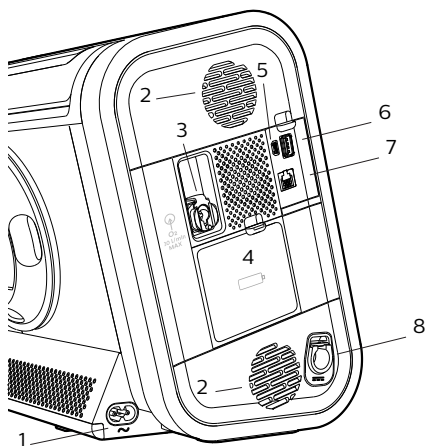
1. Carrying handle
2. FiO₂ sensor access panel
3. Power cord retention clip
4. Air vents
5. Air inlet
6. Oxygen blender
7. High pressure oxygen inlet

2.2.3 Patient Panel



1. USB port
2. Inspiratory port (to patient)
3. Proximal pressure port
4. Active exhalation valve line connection for ActivePAP and Active Flow circuits
5. Dual limb active exhalation valve connection (from patient)
6. Flow sensor cable connector

2.2.4 Utility Panel



1. AC power connector
2. Air vents
3. Low flow oxygen inlet
4. Detachable battery access door
5. Micro USB port for device service only
6. USB port
7. Remote alarm or nurse call connector (RJ9)
8. DC power connector

2.3 Parts of the User Interface

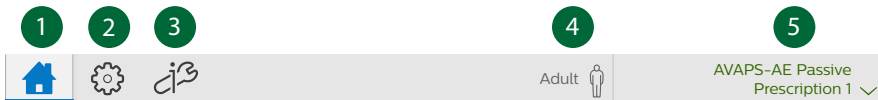
2.3.1 Standard Screen Elements



These standard elements appear on most screens.

1. Menu bar
2. Workspace
3. Status Bar
4. Monitored parameters pane

2.3.2 Menu Bar



Use the menu bar to navigate, manage alarms, set device options, and see the active prescription.

The menu bar has the following parts.

1. Tap the **Home** button to go to the home window.
2. Tap the **Prescription Settings** button to work with prescriptions.
3. Tap the **Options** button to work with device options.
4. View the patient type.
5. When in the home window, tap the **Prescription List** to see a list of prescriptions.

2.3.3 Workspace

The workspace contents vary depending on the action you are performing. For example, the workspace can show the standby window, prescription window, or monitoring window.

2.3.4 Monitored Parameters Pane

PIP

27.8

cmH2O

Vte

505

mL

RR

14

BPM

MinVent

7.1

L/min

SpO2

99

%

The monitored parameters pane shows values while delivering therapy. Depending on the accessory, values such as SpO₂ and pulse rate appear during ventilation and standby.

Parameters that may appear are:

- EtCO₂: end tidal carbon dioxide
- FiO₂: fraction of inspired oxygen
- MinVent: minute ventilation
- PIP: peak inspiratory pressure
- PR: pulse rate
- RR: respiratory rate
- SpO₂: saturation of peripheral oxygen
- Vte: exhaled tidal volume
- Vti: inhaled tidal volume

2.3.5 Status Bar

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

100% O₂

100% O₂
2:00

AVAPS

2:00

10:52am

Use the status bar to monitor device status and the availability of manual therapeutic actions.

1	Deliver 100% Oxygen	6	Bluetooth data transfer
2	100% Oxygen timer	7	Alarm silence
3	Automatic algorithm restart	8	Power sources and their status
4	Full access indicator	9	Device Actions menu
5	Bluetooth	10	System time

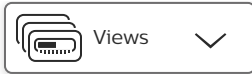
2.4 Monitoring Window

During ventilation, you can view different types of data. In the home window, the Views list shows the data types. Use the list to select the data you want to see.

2.4.1 Selecting a Monitoring View

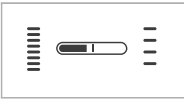
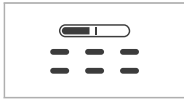
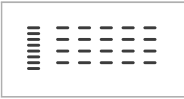
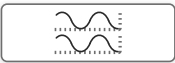
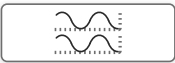
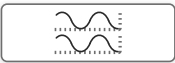
To select a monitoring view, follow these steps.

1. In the **Menu Bar**, tap the **Home** button. 
2. In the home window, tap the **Views** button.



3. In the **Views** list, tap the view you want to use.

2.4.2 Types of Monitoring Windows

Views list icon	Monitoring window contents										
 Small manometer	• Small manometer pressure indicator • Breath indicator: When the current breath is triggered by the patient, the circle next to the manometer changes from light green to dark green. • Set parameters										
 Large manometer with parameters	• Large manometer pressure indicator • Breath indicator: When the current breath is triggered by the patient, the circle next to the manometer changes from light green to dark green. • Six measured and calculated parameters										
 Measured and calculated parameters	• Set parameters • Measured and calculated parameters • Additional parameters based on the prescription (including accessories)										
 Customizable waveform graphs	To customize the graphs, use the buttons in the window as follows: <table><tr><th>Button</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td></td><td>Select the waveforms to graph. On the Select Waveforms dialog box, select data for the top and bottom graphs.</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>Pause graphing.</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>Automatically size the vertical scale to fit the data.</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>Tap to change the time scale, and then select a new time scale from the list.</td></tr></table>	Button	Description		Select the waveforms to graph. On the Select Waveforms dialog box, select data for the top and bottom graphs.		Pause graphing.		Automatically size the vertical scale to fit the data.		Tap to change the time scale, and then select a new time scale from the list.
Button	Description										
	Select the waveforms to graph. On the Select Waveforms dialog box, select data for the top and bottom graphs.										
	Pause graphing.										
	Automatically size the vertical scale to fit the data.										
	Tap to change the time scale, and then select a new time scale from the list.										

3. Therapy Modes and Controls

This chapter describes the therapy modes and controls.

3.1 Overview

Waveform illustrations in this chapter are to illustrate therapy mode behavior and appear different from waveforms as they appear in the monitoring window. For information on monitoring views, see section “2.4 Monitoring Window.”

3.2 Therapy Modes Principles

3.2.1 Breath Types

Trilogy EV300 can deliver the following breath types:

- *Mandatory*: Ventilator-initiated, time-cycled
- *Assist-Control*: Patient-initiated, time-cycled
- *Spontaneous*: Patient-initiated, patient-cycled
- *Automatic Backup*: See “AVAPS-AE Mode” for more details

3.2.2 Triggering and Cycling

3.2.2.1 Patient triggers

Auto-Trak is a combination of multiple flow triggering algorithms. The parameters of the algorithms are automatically set to synchronize the therapy with a variety of patients.

Sensitive Auto-Trak is a more sensitive version of Auto-Trak.

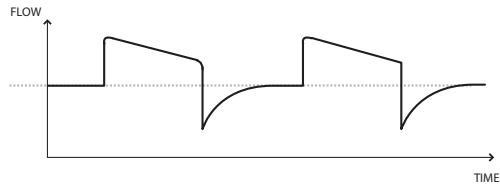
Flow trigger initiates a breath when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting. A lower number is more sensitive. As inspiratory flow begins to decrease, the device cycles to expiration when the patient flow is less than the percentage of peak flow, based on the flow-cycle sensitivity setting.

3.2.3 Ventilator trigger

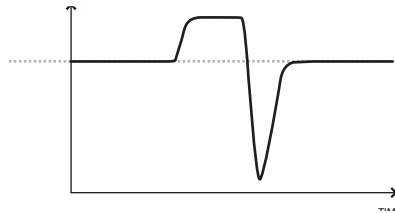
The ventilator trigger is time-based, defined by the Breath Rate setting.

3.2.3.1 Flow patterns

Ramp wave pattern: airflow starts high and decreases throughout inspiration of the breath.



Square wave pattern: airflow is generally constant throughout inspiration of the breath.



3.2.4 Low Tidal Volume Therapy

3.2.4.1 Volume Control Modes

The following volume modes are available for patients who require a tidal volume down to 35 ml:

- A/C-VC
- SIMV-VC

When setting volumes that are greater than or equal to 50 ml, use any circuit type (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb).

When setting volumes that are less than 50 ml, use either the active flow or dual limb circuit type with the infant/pediatric external flow sensor. See the instructions included with the sensor.

3.2.4.2 Pressure Control Modes

The following pressure modes are available for patients who require a tidal volume less than 35 ml:

- A/C-PC
- PSV
- CPAP
- S/T
- SIMV-PC

In pressure control modes with tidal volumes less than 35 ml, use either the active flow or dual limb circuit type with the infant/pediatric external flow sensor. See the instructions included with the sensor.

3.2.5 Suctioning During Therapy

During closed-circuit suctioning, the ventilator does not restrict therapy modes or prescription settings.

3.2.6 Therapy Mode Comparison Table

For all modes, the breath type varies based on time of patient inspiration. The breath type is always ventilator-initiated and mandatory when the Trigger Type is set to Off.

Mode	Breath Type	Trigger Source	Inspiration	Cycle	Exhalation
Control Modes					
A/C-PC	Assist-Control	Patient	PEEP + Pressure Control	Inspiratory Time	PEEP
	Mandatory	Ventilator			
A/C-VC	Assist-Control	Patient	Tidal Volume	Inspiratory Time	PEEP
	Mandatory	Ventilator			
Spontaneous Modes					
CPAP	Spontaneous	Patient	CPAP	Patient	CPAP
PSV	Spontaneous	Patient	PEEP + Pressure Support	Patient	PEEP
Mixed Modes					
S/T	Spontaneous	Patient	IPAP	Patient	EPAP
	Mandatory	Ventilator		Inspiratory Time	
SIMV-PC	Spontaneous	Patient	PEEP + Pressure Support	Patient	PEEP
	Assist-Control	Patient	PEEP + Pressure Control	Inspiratory Time	
	Mandatory	Ventilator			
SIMV-VC	Spontaneous	Patient	PEEP + Pressure Support	Patient	PEEP
	Assist-Control	Patient	Tidal Volume	Inspiratory Time	
	Mandatory	Ventilator			

Mode	Breath Type	Trigger Source	Inspiration	Cycle	Exhalation
AVAPS-AE Modes					
AVAPS-AE PC Breath enabled	Assist-Control	Patient	AVAPS (Pressure Control based on set tidal volume)	Inspiratory Time	EPAP (variable based on airway resistance)
	Mandatory	Ventilator			
AVAPS-AE PC Breath disabled	Spontaneous	Patient	AVAPS (Pressure Support based on set tidal volume)	Patient	
	Mandatory	Ventilator		Inspiratory Time	
AVAPS-AE PC Breath enabled	Auto-Backup	Ventilator (After the patient completes exhalation)	Pressure Control (variable based on the target volume and pressure)	Patient (see AVAPS-AE mode section for more details)	
AVAPS-AE PC Breath disabled			Pressure Support (variable based on the target volume and pressure)		

3.3 Control Modes

3.3.1 A/C-PC: Assisted/Control-Pressure Control

3.3.1.1 Description

The A/C-PC mode provides pressure-controlled mandatory or assist-control breaths. When the Trigger Type is set to Off, the ventilator triggers and cycles all breaths. When the Trigger Type is not set to Off, then the ventilator or the patient can trigger a breath, and the ventilator cycles all breaths.

3.3.1.2 Settings

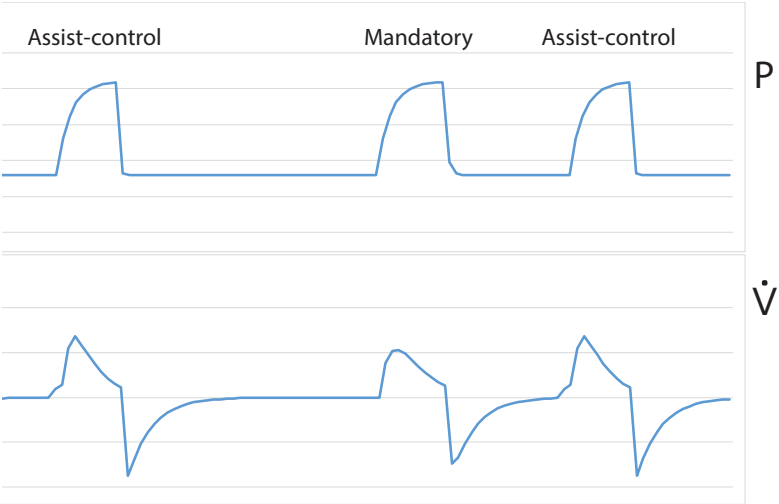
Setting Name	Description
Pressure Control	Inspiratory pressure above PEEP
PEEP	Positive end expiratory pressure
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered.
Breath Rate	Minimum rate of mandatory breaths per minute
Inspiratory Time	Length of the inspiratory phase

Setting Name	Description
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits) • Off
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point the device cycles to expiration.
FiO ₂	Fraction of inspired oxygen.

Settable alarms

- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate

3.3.1.3 Illustration



3.3.2 A/C-VC: Assisted/Control-Volume Control

3.3.2.1 Description

The A/C-VC mode provides volume-controlled mandatory or assist-control breaths. When the Trigger Type is set to Off, the ventilator triggers and cycles all breaths. When the Trigger Type is not set to Off, then the ventilator or the patient can trigger a breath, and the ventilator cycles all breaths. To deliver the set volume in the set time, the ventilator alters the flow rate. The flow pattern setting defines the shape of the flow delivery pattern.

3.3.2.2 Settings

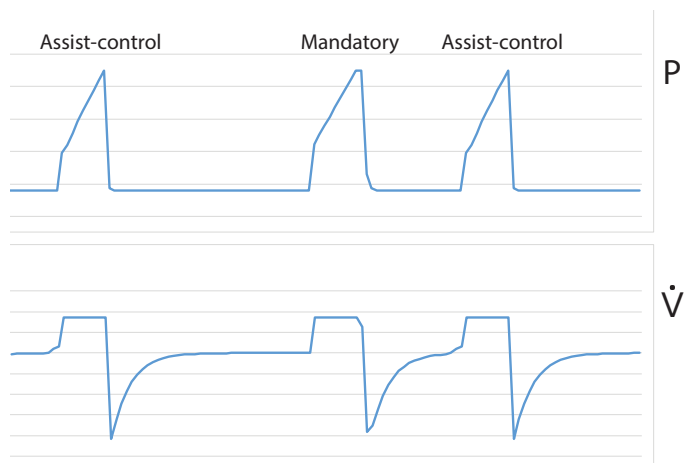
Setting Name	Description
Tidal Volume	Set inspiratory volume
PEEP	Positive end expiratory pressure
Inspiratory Time	Length of the inspiratory phase
Breath Rate	Minimum rate of mandatory breaths per minute
Flow Pattern	Sets the shape of the waveform as a ramp or square
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits) • Off
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point, the device cycles to expiration.
FiO ₂	Fraction of inspired oxygen.

3.3.2.3 Settable alarms

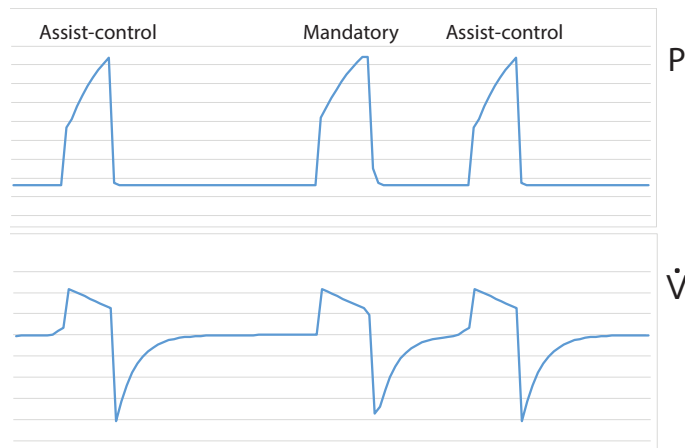
- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate
- High inspiratory pressure
- Low inspiratory pressure

3.3.2.4 Illustration

Square Flow Pattern



Ramp Flow Pattern



3.4 Spontaneous Modes

3.4.1 CPAP: Continuous Positive Airway Pressure

3.4.1.1 Description

In CPAP mode, the pressure delivered to the patient during both inhalation and exhalation is the CPAP pressure setting. All breaths in this mode are spontaneous breaths.

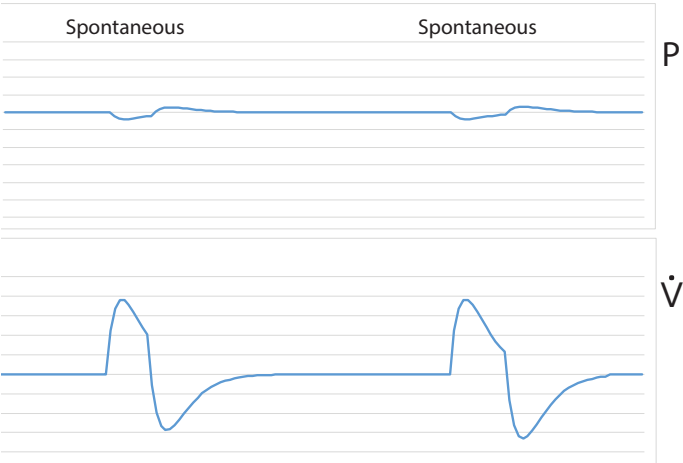
3.4.1.2 Settings

Setting Name	Description
CPAP	Continuous positive airway pressure range
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits)
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point, the device cycles to expiration.
FiO ₂	Fraction of inspired oxygen.

3.4.1.3 Settable alarms

- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate
- Apnea alarm (requires backup ventilation)

3.4.1.4 Illustration



3.4.2 PSV: Pressure Support Ventilation

3.4.2.1 Description

PSV mode is patient-triggered, pressure-limited, and flow-cycled. With this strategy, breaths are assisted by a set inspiratory pressure that is delivered until inspiratory flow drops below a set threshold.

In the PSV mode, the ventilator delivers spontaneous, pressure-supported, breaths and patient initiated breaths. The ventilator functions as a demand flow system, with the patient triggering breaths and determining their timing and volume. The ventilator can support the breaths with the set pressure support.

The Pressure Support setting defines the applied pressure above PEEP. The patient determines the breath timing. It is recommended that you set backup ventilation in PSV mode.

3.4.2.2 Settings

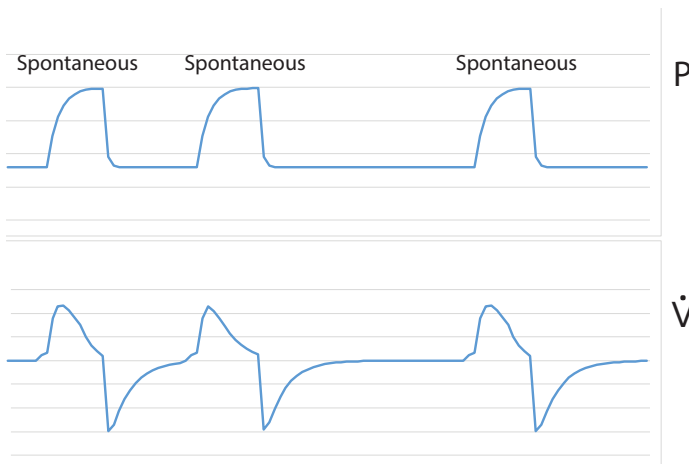
Setting Name	Description
Pressure Support	Pressure that the device delivers during the inspiratory phase of a spontaneous breath
PEEP	Positive end expiratory pressure
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered. May impact patient comfort and volume delivered.

Setting Name	Description
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits)
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point, the device cycles to expiration.
FiO ₂ (optional)	Fraction of inspired oxygen. Requires model with oxygen blender.

3.4.2.3 Settable alarms

- Circuit disconnected
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate

3.4.2.4 Illustration



3.5 Mixed Modes

3.5.1 S/T: Spontaneous/Timed

3.5.1.1 Description

A bi-level therapy mode where each breath is patient-triggered and patient-cycled, or ventilator-triggered and ventilator-cycled. In this mode, an IPAP is delivered during inhalation and a lower EPAP is delivered during exhalation. The duration of a spontaneous breath is determined by the patient effort. The duration of a mandatory breath is determined by the inspiratory time setting. Remember that the IPAP setting is the maximum pressure the ventilator will deliver; it is not in addition to the EPAP setting.

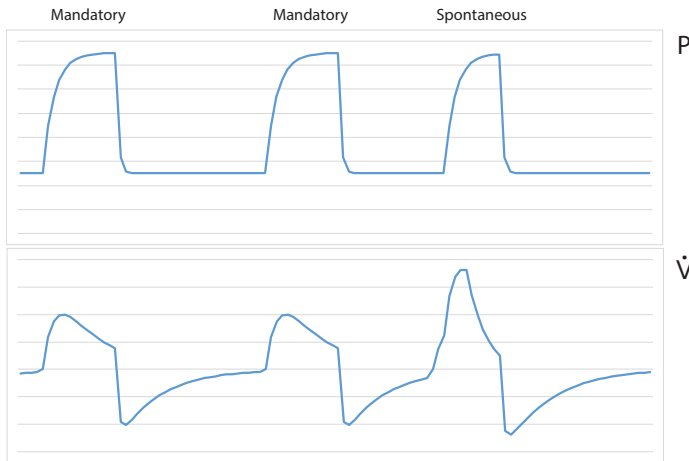
3.5.1.2 Settings

Setting Name	Description
IPAP	Inspiratory positive airway pressure. Must be greater than or equal to EPAP
EPAP	Expiratory positive airway pressure
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered. May impact patient comfort and volume delivered.
Breath Rate	Minimum rate of breaths per minute. If the patient doesn't trigger a breath within this time, the ventilator triggers the breath.
Inspiratory Time	For a mandatory breath, length of the inspiratory phase
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits)
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point, the device cycles to expiration.
FiO ₂	Fraction of inspired oxygen.

3.5.1.3 Settable alarms

- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate

3.5.1.4 Illustration



3.5.2 SIMV-PC: Synchronous Intermittent Mandatory Ventilation-Pressure Control

3.5.2.1 Description

SIMV-PC mode is a pressure control mode that provides a mixture of mandatory, assist-control and spontaneous breaths. SIMV-PC mode guarantees one mandatory breath in each cycle. Spontaneous breaths can be delivered with pressure support. The breath rate determines the length of the cycle. The first phase of the cycle is reserved for synchronizing a mandatory breath with patient effort. If the patient triggers a breath during this phase of the cycle, the ventilator delivers a synchronized mandatory breath also referred to as an assist-control breath. If a patient does not trigger a breath during the mandatory phase of the cycle, then the ventilator delivers a mandatory breath. Breaths triggered by the patient after the mandatory breath in the cycle are spontaneous breaths. This process is repeated at the start of every cycle.

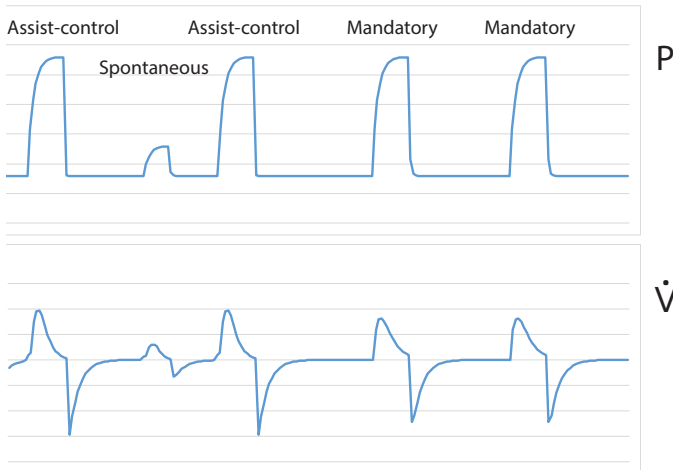
3.5.2.2 Settings

Setting Name	Description
Pressure Control	Defines the applied pressure above PEEP for mandatory and assist-control breaths
Pressure Support	Defines the applied pressure above PEEP for spontaneous breaths
PEEP	Positive end expiratory pressure Positive pressure maintained in the patient circuit during exhalation: must be less than or equal to the pressure setting.
Inspiratory Time	For a mandatory breath, length of the inspiratory phase
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered. May impact patient comfort and volume delivered.
Breath Rate	Minimum rate of mandatory breaths per minute
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits)
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point, the device cycles to expiration.
FiO ₂	Fraction of inspired oxygen.

3.5.2.3 Settable alarms

- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate
- Apnea alarm (requires backup ventilation)

3.5.2.4 Illustration



3.5.3 SIMV-VC: Synchronous Intermittent Mandatory Ventilation-Volume Control

3.5.3.1 Description

Similar to SIMV-PC, but with volume control.

3.5.3.2 Settings

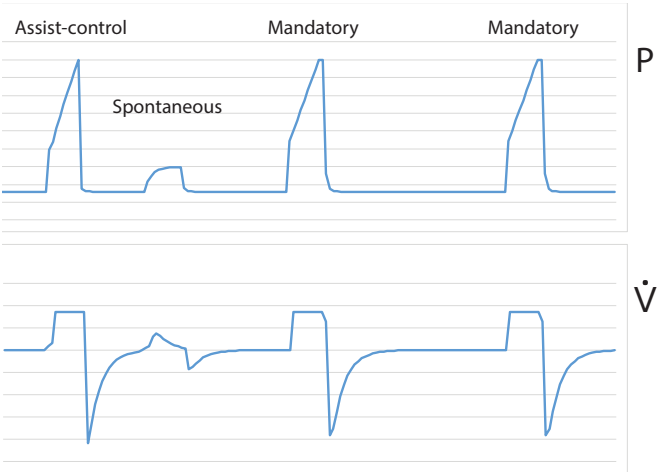
Setting Name	Description
Tidal Volume	Gas volume that the device delivers during mandatory and assist-controlled breaths
Pressure Support	Pressure that the device delivers during the inspiratory phase of a spontaneous breath
PEEP	Positive end expiratory pressure Positive pressure maintained in the patient circuit during exhalation: must be less than or equal to the pressure setting.
Inspiratory Time	For a mandatory breath, length of the inspiratory phase
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered. May impact patient comfort and volume delivered.
Breath Rate	Minimum rate of mandatory breaths per minute
Flow Pattern	Sets the flow-pressure waveform

Setting Name	Description
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (passive, active PAP, active flow, or dual limb circuits)
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point, the device cycles to expiration.
FiO ₂	Fraction of inspired oxygen.

3.5.3.3 Settable alarms

- Circuit disconnect
- High tidal volume
- Low tidal volume
- High minute ventilation
- Low minute ventilation
- High respiratory rate
- Low respiratory rate
- High inspiratory pressure
- Low inspiratory pressure
- Apnea alarm (requires backup ventilation)

3.5.3.4 Illustration



3.6 AVAPS-AE Mode

3.6.1 AVAPS-AE

3.6.1.1 Description

AVAPS-AE is a bi-level therapy mode that automatically adjusts Expiratory Positive Airway Pressure (EPAP), pressure support, and the backup breath rate. AVAPS-AE monitors the resistance in the patient's upper airway and adjusts EPAP automatically to maintain a patent airway. AVAPS-AE mode also monitors delivered tidal volumes and automatically adjusts pressure support to maintain the target tidal volume. AVAPS-AE also has the ability to automatically set and maintain a backup breath rate (max 20) based on the patient's own spontaneous breathing rate.

The clinician sets a target volume and sets pressure limits. The system uses algorithms to calculate the optimal pressure support required to meet the target. The user can reset the algorithms that are used to calculate all automatic adjustments.

Warning: Limit the pressure setting according to the needs of the prescribed patient population.

Only the passive circuit type may be used with AVAPS-AE.

The AVAPS-AE therapy mode is contraindicated for invasive use and patients less than 10 kg.

3.6.1.2 Settings

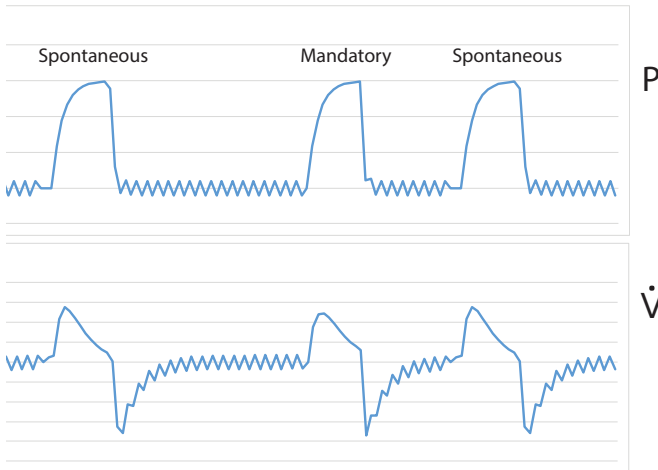
Setting Name	Description
Tidal Volume	Target gas volume that the device delivers during a spontaneous breath
EPAP Min/Max	Expiratory positive airway pressure range
PS Min/Max	Pressure support minimum and maximum. Target pressure that the device delivers during the inspiratory phase of a spontaneous breath.
PC Min/Max	Pressure control minimum and maximum. Target pressure that the device delivers during the inspiratory phase of a mandatory or assist-controlled breath.
Max Pressure	Maximum pressure – inspiratory pressure will never exceed this value.
Breath Rate	Minimum rate of mandatory breaths per minute (0-60 BPM) Note: When you select the Automatic Breath Rate, then you cannot set the Inspiratory Time. The device sets the inspiratory time.
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered. May impact patient comfort and volume delivered.
Inspiratory Time	For a mandatory or assist-controlled breath, length of the inspiratory phase This control is enabled when PC Breath is enabled, or when the breath rate setting is greater than 0 This control is disabled when breath rate is set to Automatic or 0 BPM.

Setting Name	Description
AVAPS Speed	This setting limits the changes in pressure support between the minimum and maximum values over a 1 minute period. The breath by breath changes in pressure support are then consequently further limited to a fraction of this setting according to how many breaths occur in 1 minute.
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger
Trigger Sensitivity	This control is available when the trigger type is Flow Trigger. The flow trigger initiates when the patient's inspiratory effort creates a flow equal to or greater than the trigger sensitivity setting.
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	This control is available when the mode is AVAPS-AE, the trigger type is Flow Trigger, and PC Breath is off. As flow begins to decrease during inspiration, if the patient flow is less than the flow cycle set point, the device cycles to expiration.
PC Breath	When PC Breath is on, then inspiratory time applies to all breaths. When PC Breath is off, and breath rate is not set to automatic, then the inspiratory time applies only to ventilator-triggered breaths.
FiO ₂	Fraction of inspired oxygen.

3.6.1.3 Settable alarms

- Circuit Disconnect
- High Tidal Volume
- Low Tidal Volume
- High Minute Ventilation
- Low Minute Ventilation
- High Respiratory Rate
- Low Respiratory Rate

3.6.1.4 Illustration



3.7 Therapy Features

The following features are available in addition to the therapy modes.

3.7.1 Backup Ventilation

3.7.1.1 Description

Set the device to deliver ventilator-initiated breaths when patient-initiated breaths are not detected, based on the Apnea alarm interval. When you turn Backup Ventilation on, set an Apnea interval in the alarm settings tab. Within the apnea interval; if no breaths are triggered by the patient, the ventilator delivers breaths at the set pressure or volume based on the Backup Rate. When an Apnea alarm occurs, the ventilator automatically starts backup ventilation. When two consecutive patient-initiated breaths are detected, the ventilator automatically reverts to patient-initiated breaths.

Backup ventilation settings take precedence over standard therapy mode settings.

This feature is available based on therapy mode.

3.7.1.2 Settings

- Backup Ventilation (On/Off): when you turn this setting On, set an Apnea interval in the alarm settings tab.
- Backup Rate (4-80): when in backup ventilation, the backup breath rate takes precedence over any breath rate set in the therapy mode. The rate cannot be less than the Breath Rate set in the current therapy mode.
- Backup Inspiration Time (.3 – 5 seconds): CPAP and PSV modes only. When in backup ventilation, the Back Up Tinsp controls the duration of inspiration.
- Backup PS (CPAP mode only)
- Backup Rise Time (CPAP mode only)

To access the Backup Ventilation feature, in the **Prescription** window, tap **Advanced**. When you turn the feature on, the additional settings appear in the prescription window.

If Trigger Type is Off, then this feature is unavailable.

3.7.1.3 Applicable Therapy Modes

- CPAP
- PSV
- SIMV-PC
- SIMV-VC

3.7.2 Insp Time Min/Max

3.7.2.1 Description

Sets the minimum and maximum inspiratory time for spontaneous breath types (not available for spontaneous breaths in CPAP mode). This feature adds a range of time for spontaneous breaths to cycle via the patient if within the min/max window or via time if reaching the set Insp Time Max time.

To access this feature, in the **Prescription** window, tap **Advanced**. When you turn the feature on, the additional settings appear in the prescription window.

3.7.2.2 Applicable Therapy Modes

- PSV
- S/T
- SIMV-PC
- SIMV-VC
- AVAPS-AE

3.7.3 AVAPS

3.7.3.1 Description

Automatically adjusts pressure to meet a target tidal volume. Inspiratory pressure fluctuates between the minimum and maximum settings to reach the set Tidal volume. EPAP or PEEP remains the same in each breath.

Pressure settings are dependent on the mode you are in:

- Tidal volume
- IPAP minimum (S/T only)
- IPAP maximum (S/T only)
- PS minimum (PSV only)
- PS maximum (PSV only)
- PC minimum (A/C-PC only)
- PC maximum (A/C-PC only)
- AVAPS speed

To turn on AVAPS, in the **Prescription** window, tap **Mode**. In the **AVAPS** section, tap **On**.

3.7.3.2 Applicable Therapy Modes

Passive circuits only:

- A/C-PC
- PSV
- S/T

3.7.4 Sigh

3.7.4.1 Description

Delivers a periodic, larger volume breath.

Settings:

- Sigh (On/Off)
- Sigh Volume (1.5-2.5 times the set volume)
- Sigh Frequency (50-250 breaths)

To access the Sigh feature, in the **Prescription** window, tap **Advanced**. When you turn the feature on, the additional settings appear in the prescription window.

3.7.4.2 Applicable Therapy Mode

- A/C-VC

3.8 Therapy Control Settings

Therapy control settings can be interdependent. For guidance, see the previous therapy mode descriptions.

Setting Name	Setting Range/Increment
AVAPS Speed	1-5 cm H ₂ O per minute, 1 cm H ₂ O per minute increment
Backup Pressure Support	Adult patient type: 2-57 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
	Pediatric patient type: 2-30 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
	Infant patient type: 2-20 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
Backup Ventilation	On/Off
Breath Rate	- Adult patient type: 0-80 BPM, 1 BPM increments - Pediatric patient type: 0-60 BPM, 1 BPM increments - Infant patient type: 0-40 BPM, 1 BPM increments - For AVAPS-AE mode, the Breath Rate can be Auto (automatic)
CPAP	- Adult and pediatric patient types: 3-25 cm H₂O, 1 cm H₂O increments - Infant patient type: 3-15 cm H₂O, 1 cm H₂O increments
EPAP Min/Max	3-25 cm H₂O, 1 cm H₂O increments
FiO ₂	21-100%, 1% increments (21% = ambient condition, no control)
Flow Cycle Sensitivity	10-90%, 1% increments
Flow Pattern	Square: airflow is constant Ramp: inspiratory flow starts high and decreases
Trigger Sensitivity	0.5 (high sensitivity) to 9 L/min (low sensitivity)
Inspiratory Time	Adult patient type: 0.5-5.0 seconds, 0.1 second increments
	Pediatric patient type: 0.3-2.0 seconds, 0.1 second increments
	Infant patient type: 0.3-1.0 seconds, 0.1 second increments
Insp Time Min/Max Enable	On/Off
Insp Time Min/Max	0.3-3 seconds, 0.1 second increments
IPAP	Adult patient type: 3-60 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
	Pediatric patient type: 3-45 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
	Infant patient type: 3-35 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
IPAP Min/Max	Adult patient type: 3-60 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
	Pediatric patient type: 3-45 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
	Infant patient type: N/A
Max Pressure	6-50 cm H ₂ O, 1 cm H ₂ O increments
PC Breath	On/Off

Setting Name	Setting Range/Increment
PEEP	Adult patient type: - Active circuit: 0-35 cm H₂O - Passive circuit: 3-25 cm H₂O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
	Pediatric patient type: - Active circuit: 0-25 cm H₂O - Passive circuit: 3-25 cm H₂O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
	Infant patient type: - Active circuit: 0-15 cm H₂O - Passive circuit: 3-15 cm H₂O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
Pressure Control	Adult patient type: - All circuits but passive: 0-60 cm H₂O - Passive circuit: 0-57 cm H₂O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
	Pediatric patient type: All circuits: 0-30 cm H ₂ O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
	Infant patient type: All circuits: 0-20 cm H ₂ O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
Pressure Support	Adult patient type: All circuits but passive: 0-60 cm H ₂ O Passive circuit: 0-57 cm H ₂ O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
	Pediatric patient type: All circuits: 0-30 cm H ₂ O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
	Infant patient type: All circuits: 0-20 cm H ₂ O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
PC Min/Max	Adult patient type: 0-40 cm H ₂ O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
	Pediatric patient type: 0-30 cm H ₂ O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
PS Min/Max	Adult patient type: 0-40 cm H ₂ O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O
	Pediatric patient type: 0-30 cm H ₂ O Increments: 1 cm H ₂ O

Setting Name	Setting Range/Increment
Rise Time	0 (faster) to 6 (slower), increment of 1
Tidal Volume	Adult patient type: 70–2000 ml Increment: 5 ml
	Pediatric patient type: Dual limb or active flow: 35–400 ml Passive or Active PAP: 50–400 ml Increment: 5 ml
Trigger Type	• Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Sensitive Auto-Trak (passive circuits only) • Flow Trigger (all circuits) • Off

3.9 Lung Parameters

The advanced measurement system of Trilogy EV300 estimates lung compliance, airway resistance, AutoPEEP and plateau pressure during normal mechanical ventilation without requiring a static maneuver. It is unnecessary to perform an inspiratory hold to assess the plateau pressure and other lung parameters.

3.9.1 Dyn R

Airway resistance is the opposition to the motion of gas within the airways. In the Measured and Calculated Parameters window, this value is Dyn R (dynamic resistance). Dyn R is an estimate of the airway resistance in cmH₂O/L/s and is computed on a breath-to-breath basis without requiring a static maneuver.

It is updated at the end of exhalation of every mandatory or assisted (timed cycled) breath, and is displayed as the average over the last three mandatory or assisted breaths. It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions.

This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the therapy mode is A/C-PC, A/C-VC, SIMV-PC, or SIMV-VC and the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.

To calculate Dyn R, at the end of inhalation, Trilogy EV300 estimates the airway resistance by computing the ratio between the driving pressure from within the lung to the air flow. The flow term is corrected to take into account the contributions of the following:

- Intrinsic PEEP, by subtracting the expiratory flow at the end of exhalation
- The elastic recoil of the lungs, by adding the tidal volume divided by the respiratory time constant, τ . (*Respiratory time constant is the airway resistance times the summed compliance of the lung and chest wall*)

Trilogy EV300 calculates Dyn R using the following formula:

$$\text{Dyn R} = \frac{PIP - PEEP_e}{Q_p(t = EOI) - Q_p(t = EOE) + \frac{V_t}{\tau}}$$

Where:

- PIP is the peak inspiratory pressure (pressure at the end of inhalation)
- $PEEP_e$ is the extrinsic pressure (pressure applied by the ventilator) at the end of the breath
- V_t is the tidal volume
- $Q_p(t=EOE)$ is the patient flow at the end of the exhalation (EOE)
- $Q_p(t=EOI)$ is the patient flow at the end of inhalation (EOI)

To understand the calculations adopted to compute Dyn R, note that the above equation can be rewritten as the classic equation for airway resistance:

$$PIP - (PEEP_e + PEEP_i + V_t / \text{Dyn R} \cdot C) = \text{Dyn R} \cdot Q_p(EOI)$$

That is to say, pressure across the resistance equal to resistance times flow, where:

- $PEEP_i = -\text{Dyn R} \cdot Q_p(EOE)$ this value is the intrinsic PEEP or AutoPEEP (See “3.6.4 AutoPEEP”)
- $PEEP_e + PEEP_i$ is the total pressure (extrinsic plus intrinsic) at the end of the breath

3.9.2 Dyn C

Lung Compliance is the ratio between the tidal volume and the changes in pressure. In the Measured and Calculated Parameters window, this value is Dyn C (dynamic compliance). Dyn C is an estimate of the compliance of the pulmonary system (lung and chest wall) in milliliters per cmH₂O, computed on a breath-to-breath basis without requiring a static maneuver.

It is updated at the end of exhalation of every mandatory or assisted breath (time cycled), and is displayed as the average over the last three mandatory or assisted breaths. It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions.

This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the therapy mode is A/C-PC, A/C-VC, SIMV-PC, or SIMV-VC and the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.

To calculate Dyn C, the compliance of the respiratory system can be derived from the measurement of plateau pressure, Dyn P_{plat} using the relationship between the tidal volume, V_t, and the difference between the Dyn P_{plat} and PEEP.

Trilogy EV300 calculates Dyn C using the following formula:

$$Dyn\ C = \frac{V_t}{Dyn\ P_{plat} - PEEP}$$

Where:

- PEEP is the total pressure (intrinsic plus extrinsic) at the start of the breath (PEEP= PEEP_i+ PEEP_e)
- V_t is the tidal volume

Note that the compliance is related to the airway resistance by the respiratory time constant, τ, by the relationship described above.

$$Dyn\ C = \frac{\tau}{Dyn\ R}$$

3.9.3 Dyn Pplat

Plateau pressure is the maximum pressure applied to small airways and alveoli during positive-pressure mechanical ventilation. In the Measured and Calculated Parameters window, this value is Dyn Pplat. Dyn Pplat is an estimate of the maximum alveolar pressure during inspiration in cmH₂O, computed on a breath-to-breath basis without requiring a static maneuver. It is compensated for Auto-PEEP. This value is updated at the end of exhalation of every mandatory or assisted (timed cycled) breath.

This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the therapy mode is A/C-PC, A/C-VC, SIMV-PC, or SIMV-VC and the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.

Having already estimated the compliance (Dyn R and Dyn C above), Trilogy EV300 calculates Dyn Pplat as follows:

$$Dyn P_{plat} = \frac{V_t}{Dyn C} + PEEP_e + PEEP_i$$

Where:

- V_t is the tidal volume
- $Dyn C$ is dynamic compliance
- $PEEP$ is the total pressure (intrinsic plus extrinsic) at the start of the breath ($PEEP = PEEP_i + PEEP_e$)
- $PEEP_i = -Dyn R * Q_p (EOE)$ this value is the intrinsic PEEP or AutoPEEP

3.9.4 AutoPEEP

Intrinsic PEEP, $PEEP_i$, is the resistive pressure at the end of exhalation (EOE), that occurs when a new breath is initiated before the previous breath is completed. In the Measured and Calculated Parameters window, this value is AutoPEEP. AutoPEEP is an estimate of the any pressure (above PEEP) that exists in the patient airway at the end of exhalation. This value is updated at the end of exhalation of every mandatory or assisted (timed-cycled) breath.

This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the therapy mode is A/C-PC, A/C-VC, SIMV-PC, or SIMV-VC and the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.

Trilogy EV300 calculates AutoPEEP using the following formula:

$$PEEP_i = -Dyn R * Q_p(t = EOE)$$

Where:

- $Dyn R$ is the dynamic resistance (explained in “3.6.1 Dyn R”)
- $Q_p(t=EOE)$ is the patient flow at the end of the exhalation (EOE)

4. Device Setup

4.1 Overview

To set up Trilogy EV300, follow the steps shown below. See the accompanying section for instructions.

1. “Placement”
2. “Connecting AC Power”
3. “Installing Filters”
4. “Connecting a Circuit”
5. “Connecting External Patient Monitors” (optional step)
6. “Adding Oxygen”
7. “Starting Trilogy EV300”

4.2 Placement

Place Trilogy EV300 on a stable, flat, hard surface. Air must flow freely into the air inlet port and out of the exhalation valve. Do not block the air vents with items such as bedding or curtains. Do not place Trilogy EV300 near any heating or cooling equipment or air supplies such as forced air vents, radiators, or air conditioners. Be sure the USB and detachable battery panel doors remain closed when not in use.

If the device has been stored outside the normal operating temperature stated in “Technical Data,” be sure the device reaches operating temperature before starting.

See the “EMC Information” section for guidance on possible electromagnetic interference.

4.3 Connecting AC Power

Use the AC cord provided to connect AC power. Verify Trilogy EV300 is using AC power, indicated by the green LED light next to the On/Off (Standby) button.

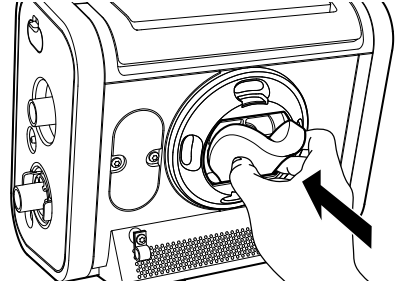
To use another power source, such as a battery, see the “Power Management” section.

4.4 Installing Filters

4.4.1 Air-Inlet Foam Filter

Be sure the air-inlet foam filter is installed correctly.

To install the air-inlet foam filter, pinch the filter as you press it into the filter cover as shown. Position it securely behind the top and bottom restraints.



4.4.2 Particulate Filter

To install a particulate filter, see "Replacing the Particulate Filter."

4.5 Connecting a Circuit

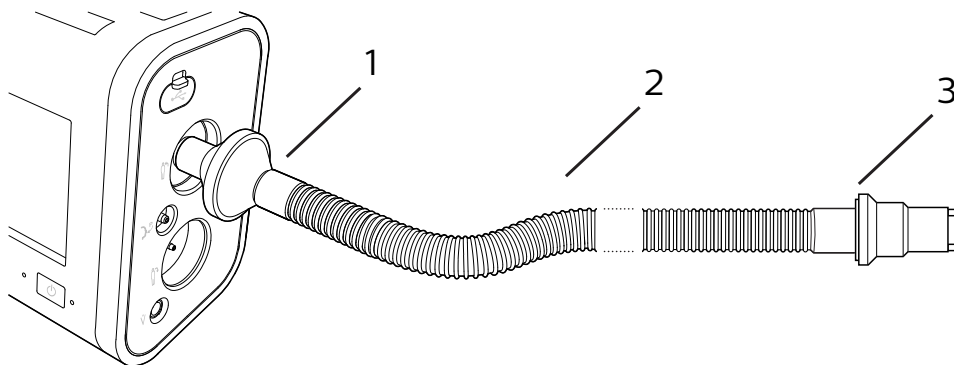
Be certain that any bacterial filter used with this device complies with ISO 23328-1 and ISO 23328-2. To prevent patient or ventilator contamination, you must use a Philips Respironics-approved main flow bacterial filter on the patient gas outlet port. Filters not approved by Philips Respironics may degrade system performance. For a list of accessories, see the Trilogy EV300 accessories guide.

For passive circuits, a leak device is mandatory during invasive ventilation or when using a circuit with a non-vented mask.

After you connect the circuit, you may calibrate the circuit. See "Calibration."

For low tidal volumes, see "Low Tidal Volume Therapy."

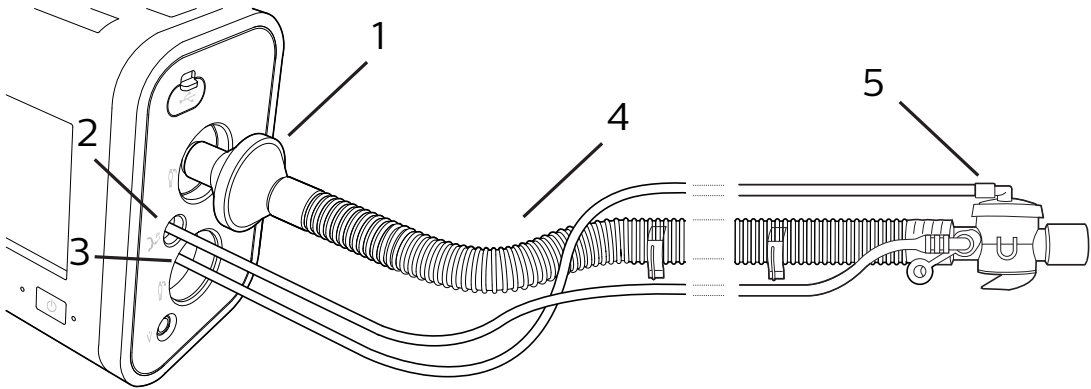
4.5.1 Passive Single Limb Circuits



1	Bacterial filter
2	Tubing
3	Leak device

Connect the bacterial filter (1) on the circuit to the inspiratory port.

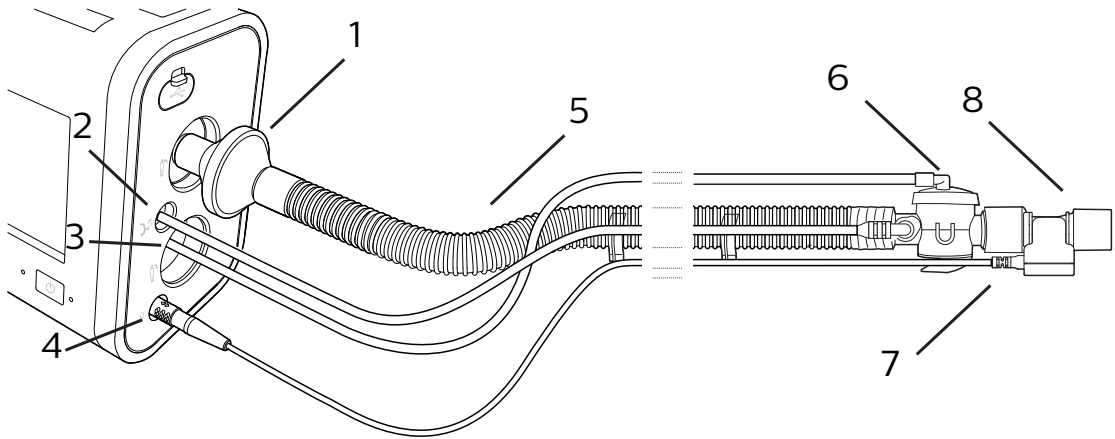
4.5.2 Active PAP Circuits



1	Bacterial filter
2	Proximal pressure port
3	Active exhalation valve line connection
4	Tubing
5	Active exhalation valve

1. Connect the bacterial filter (1) on the circuit to the inspiratory port.
2. Connect the proximal pressure line to the proximal pressure port (2).
3. Connect the active exhalation valve pressure line to the active exhalation valve line connection (3).

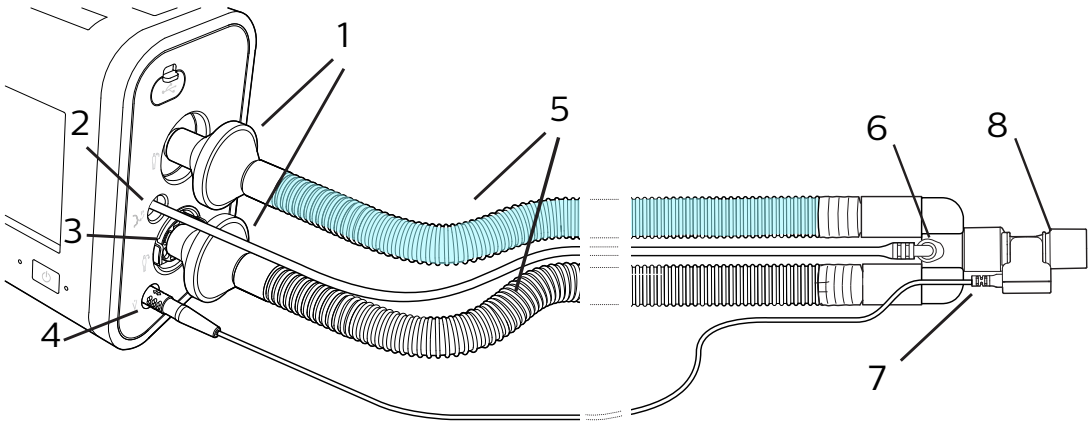
4.5.3 Active Flow Circuits



1	Bacterial filter
2	Proximal pressure port
3	Active exhalation valve line connection
4	Flow sensor cable connector
5	Tubing
6	Active exhalation valve
7	Flow sensor cable
8	Flow sensor connected to circuit

1. Connect the bacterial filter (1) on the circuit to the inspiratory port.
2. Connect the proximal pressure line to the proximal pressure port (2).
3. Connect the active exhalation valve pressure line to the active exhalation valve line connection (3).
4. Connect the flow sensor (8) to the flow sensor cable (7).
5. Connect the flow sensor to the active exhalation valve on the circuit (6).
6. Connect the flow sensor cable to the ventilator (4).

4.5.4 Dual Limb Circuits



1	Bacterial filters
2	Proximal pressure port
3	Dual-limb active exhalation valve (AEV)
4	Flow sensor cable connector
5	Tubing
6	Y-shaped connector
7	Flow sensor cable
8	Flow sensor connected to circuit

1. Attach the bacterial filter (1) end of the colored inspiration tube to the inspiratory port.
2. Attach the proximal pressure line (2) to the proximal pressure port.
3. Install the AEV. Press until you hear two clicks (3).
4. Attach the bacterial filter end of the clear expiration tube to the AEV (3).
5. Connect the flow sensor (8) to the flow sensor cable (7).
6. Connect the flow sensor to the Y-shaped connector on the circuit (6).
7. Connect the flow sensor cable to the ventilator (4).
8. Attach the proximal pressure line to the Y-shaped connector on the circuit (6).

4.6 Connecting External Patient Monitors

Connect compatible external patient monitors, such as a pulse oximeter or CO₂ monitor, if using. The device includes two USB ports that are capable of communicating with patient monitoring accessories. For help, see the accessory's instructions and "Accessories."

4.7 Adding Oxygen

Warning: Do not operate the ventilator in the presence of flammable gases. This could cause a fire or explosion.

4.7.1 High Pressure Oxygen

When using the oxygen blender, use an FiO₂ sensor to verify the oxygen concentration in the delivered gas.

To connect high-pressure oxygen:

1. Connect an oxygen hose to the high-pressure oxygen connector on the back panel.
2. Connect the other end of the hose to the source.
3. Calibrate the FiO₂ sensor. See the "Calibration" section.

4.7.2 Low Flow Oxygen

Delivered oxygen concentration varies with changes in flow in the circuit. The following may have an impact on oxygen concentration:

- Pressure settings
- Patient Tidal Volume
- Peak Inspiratory Flow
- I:E Ratio
- Respiratory rate
- Circuit leak rate
- Oxygen flow rate

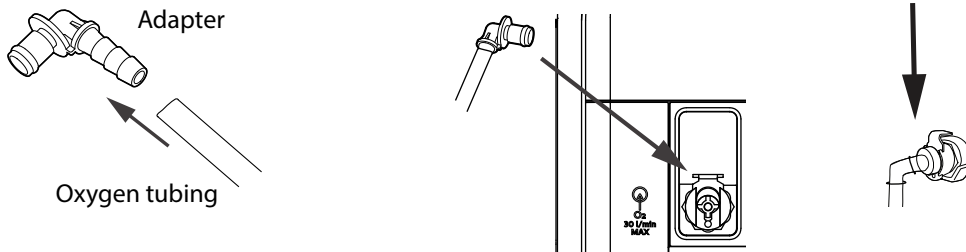
Warnings:

- This device DOES NOT alarm for loss of the low flow oxygen supply. Use a pulse oximeter or FiO₂ sensor, as medically indicated.
- The oxygen concentration may not be consistent. The inspired oxygen concentration will vary, depending on the pressures, patient flow, and circuit leak. Substantial leaks may reduce the inspired oxygen concentration to less than the expected value. Use appropriate patient monitoring, such as pulse oximeter or FiO₂ sensor with alarm, as medically indicated.
- Do not connect the device to an unregulated or high-pressure oxygen source.

- The device may result in incorrect flow and tidal volume measurements and improper operation of related alarms if you add low flow oxygen directly into the patient circuit or mask instead of directly adding it into the oxygen inlet on the back of the ventilator.
- Turn off oxygen when the device is not in use. When the device is not in operation and the oxygen flow remains on, oxygen delivered into the tubing may accumulate within the device's enclosure.

To add oxygen to the circuit, the oxygen supply must comply with the local regulations for medical oxygen. The oxygen flow into the oxygen valve cannot exceed 30 L/min and the pressure cannot exceed 10 psi.

To connect low flow oxygen:



1. Connect the oxygen tubing to the O₂ adapter supplied with the device.
2. Connect the O₂ adapter to the low flow oxygen inlet on the Utility Panel by pressing down on the valve.

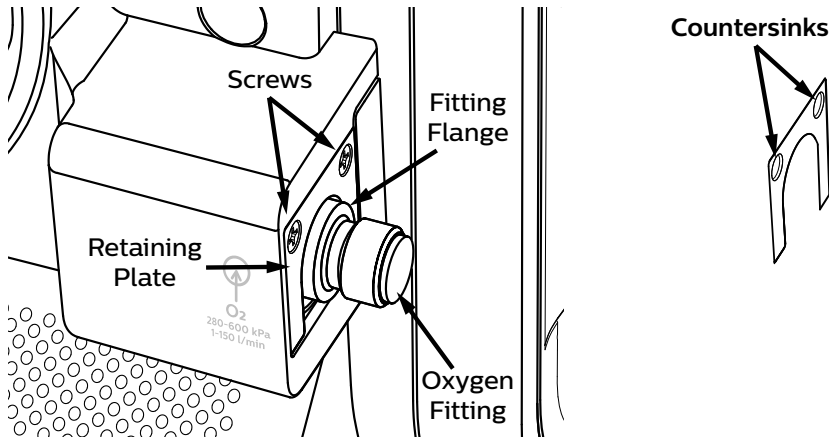
4.7.3 Replacing Oxygen Fitting

The Trilogy EV300 Oxygen Blending Module (OBM) is supplied from the factory with a DISS interface to allow connection to an oxygen source. Not all countries or facilities use this interface.

To replace the installed fitting:

1. Remove screws from OBM retaining plate.
2. Remove retaining plate.
3. Firmly pull oxygen fitting straight out of pocket.
4. Insert desired fitting into pocket with flat sides aligned. Fitting flange should be flush with face of pocket after installation.
5. Replace retaining plate with countersinks facing outward.

Replace screws to secure retaining plate.



4.8 Starting Trilogy EV300

To start Trilogy EV300:

1. Visually inspect Trilogy EV300 and all accessories, cords, and tubes attached to the device.
2. Verify that circuit connections are secure.
3. Press the On/Off (Standby) button.
4. Listen for a minimum of three beeps as the device performs system startup checks. The beeps test alarm signals to ensure proper function. Ensure no system messages appear.
5. Watch as the light bar and Alarm Silence button blink once red and once yellow.
6. Confirm the power sources you have connected are working and that power is sufficient. See “Power Management.”

5. Device Operation

5.1 Overview

After setting up the device, it is ready for operation.

5.2 Clinical Assessment

Warnings:

- Before placing a patient on the ventilator, perform a clinical assessment. Considerations should include:
 - Choosing and testing alarm settings
 - Assessing whether alternative ventilation equipment is required
 - Selecting additional accessories, including the patient monitoring accessories you will use
- For ventilator patients, always have alternate ventilation equipment, such as a back-up ventilator or manual resuscitator available.
- Ventilator patients should be continuously monitored by qualified personnel. These personnel should be prepared to provide alternate therapy in the event of ventilator failure or inoperative equipment.

5.3 Entering New Patient Information

To select new patient information:

1. In the **Home** window, tap the **New Patient** button. This button clears all existing patient data.
2. In the **New Patient** window, select a **Patient Type**:
 - **Infant**
 - **Pediatric**
 - **Adult**
3. Select the **Patient Sex**.
4. For infant patients, in the **Patient Weight** section, use the slider or the plus and minus buttons to select the patient's weight (2.5 to 8 kg).
For pediatric or adult patients, in the **Patient Height** section, select the patient's height.
 - **Pediatric**: 57 to 165 cm
 - **Adult**: 122 to 214 cm

Note: this information is used to establish default therapy and alarm settings, including tidal volume and alarms based on tidal volume. This information also limits setting ranges.
5. In the title bar, tap **Accept** to save your choices.
6. Acknowledge the reminder to ensure a viral/bacterial filter is installed.

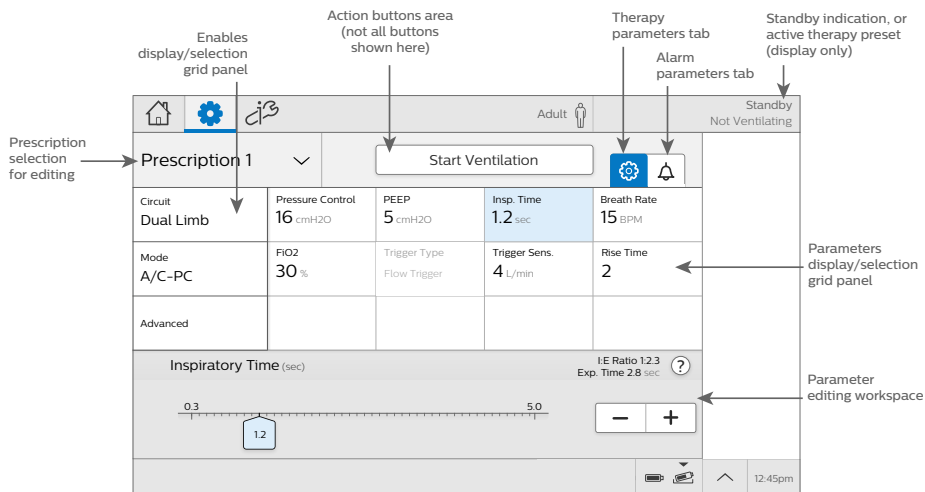
7. Edit the prescription settings according to the procedure in the next section, “About Prescriptions.” Therapy and alarm settings differ based on Patient Type. See “Therapy Modes and Controls” and “Alarms and System Messages.”

5.4 About Prescriptions/Settings

5.4.1 System Timeout

When working in the Prescription Settings window, be sure you save your changes. After a period of inactivity, the system reverts to the previous setting and your changes are not saved. If you are making changes during therapy delivery, the period of inactivity is 30 seconds. If you are making changes when the system is in standby, the period of inactivity is 5 minutes.

5.4.2 Parts of the Prescription Settings Window



5.4.3 Editing Prescription and Alarm Settings

To edit prescription settings:

1. In the menu bar, tap the prescription settings icon. 
2. In the prescription grid, tap **Circuit**. In the workspace below the grid, select the circuit **Type** and **Size**.
3. If you are using a humidifier, in the **Active Humidification** section, tap **On**. Otherwise, tap **Off**.

Note: The Active Humidification setting is used by the ventilator software to adjust the default circuit compliance and resistance to account for the water chamber. The software always uses this setting in the BTPS correction factor.

4. To save your changes, tap **Accept**.
5. In the prescription grid, tap **Mode**. In the workspace below the grid, select the mode. For modes where you want to use AVAPS, in the **AVAPS** section, tap **On**.
6. Tap a prescription parameter. In the lower pane, move the slider or use the plus and minus buttons to change the parameter value.
7. Tap the Alarm tab to view and edit the associated alarm settings. For more information about alarms, including details about each alarm, see “Alarms and System Messages.” 
8. Change the alarm parameters in the lower pane and then click Accept at the top of the window.
9. Continue editing prescription and alarm parameters. To work with advanced options, tap **Advanced**.
10. Test the alarms. See “Testing Alarms.”
11. When you are finished, tap **Accept** to save your changes.

5.4.4 Adding a Prescription

If you want to add another prescription:

1. In the home window, tap the Prescription Settings icon. 
2. Tap the Prescription List to expand it and then tap **Add New**.
3. On the **Select Prescription Name** dialog box, tap the prescription name that you want to use.
4. Edit the prescription settings as you would for a new prescription.

5.4.5 Deleting a Prescription

To delete a prescription, the device must not be delivering therapy.

1. Press the On/Off (Standby) button on the front panel.  On the confirmation window, tap **Standby**.
2. Tap the prescription that you want to delete.
3. In the **Home** window, tap the trash can icon. 

5.5 Starting and Stopping Therapy

- **To start therapy from standby:**
In the **Prescription Settings** window, select the prescription you want to use. and then tap **Start Ventilation**.
- **To stop therapy and put the device into the *standby* state:**
Press the On/Off (Standby) button on the front panel.  On the confirmation window, tap **Standby**.
- **To turn the device off:**
Press the On/Off (Standby) button on the front panel.  On the confirmation window, tap **Power Off**.

5.6 Actions During Ventilation

5.6.1 Using Different Prescriptions



To select a prescription that uses a circuit type that is *the same as the current prescription*:

1. On the menu bar, tap the Home icon to go to the home window.
2. On the menu bar, tap the active prescription to expand the prescription list.
3. Tap the prescription you want to use and then confirm your choice.

To select a prescription that uses a circuit type that is *different from the current prescription*:

1. Press the On/Off (Standby) button  on the front panel. On the confirmation window, tap **Standby**.
2. Attach the circuit type that corresponds to the prescription.
3. In the home window workspace, tap the prescription you want to use.
4. Tap **Start Ventilation**.

5.6.2 Locking and Unlocking the Screen



To lock the screen, expand the **Device Actions** menu then tap the **Lock Screen** button. 

To unlock the screen, tap the screen. On the screen unlock dialog box, tap and hold **Yes** for three seconds.

When an alarm or system message becomes active, the screen saver is stopped and the automatic screen lock is disabled. For more information, see “Alarms and System Messages.”

5.6.3 Oxygen Flush

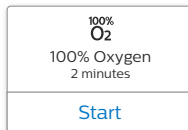
5.6.3.1 Description

When active, the device delivers 100% oxygen for two minutes. This feature functions independent of any oxygen blending setting. During an oxygen flush, the High FiO₂ alarm is disabled.

5.6.3.2 Working with Oxygen Flush

To start an oxygen flush:

Tap **100% O₂** in the status bar and then tap **Start**. A timer appears that counts down the two minutes.



To stop an oxygen flush:

Tap **100% O₂** in the status bar and then tap **Stop**.



5.6.4 AVAPS Algorithm Restart

5.6.4.1 Description

This feature requires AVAPS to be in use. This feature gives you the ability to reset the algorithms that automatically adjust the pressure.

During active therapy, in the Status Bar, tap the algorithm restart button. 

The following will occur upon tapping the algorithm restart button:

- Pressure will restart at the midpoint.
- EPAP will return to EPAPmin. (AVAPS-AE only)
- If Breath Rate is set to Auto, the algorithm will restart. (AVAPS-AE only)

Applicable therapy modes:

- AVAPS-AE
- Modes with AVAPS enabled:
 - A/C-PC
 - PSV
 - S/T

6. Alarms and System Messages

6.1 Overview

Trilogy EV300 generates audible and visual alarms to alert you when conditions require attention. Alarm data is recorded in the Alarm and Event Log. For help, see "Alarm and Event Log."

Alarm settings are retained when power is lost.

Warnings:

- To prevent death or serious injury, monitor the patient and the ventilator regularly to determine the need to provide emergency ventilation when an alarm sounds or the ventilator malfunctions. Always test the alarms after changing the circuit or prescription.
- An increase in circuit resistance can prevent proper operation of some alarms.
- When adding any components to the breathing system, the flow resistance and dead space of the added components such as humidifiers, speaking valves, Heat Moisture Exchangers (HMEs) and filters should be carefully considered in relation to the potential for adverse effects on the patient's ventilator management and device alarms.
- Do not rely on any single alarm to detect a disconnected circuit. Certain components may affect the performance of the alarms chosen to signal that a circuit is disconnected. Use the apnea, low tidal volume, low minute ventilation, and low respiratory rate alarms in conjunction with the circuit disconnect alarm. Test these alarms daily and after you change ventilator settings.

6.2 About Alarms

When an alarm is active, the following indicators occur:

- An Alarm list appears in the menu bar.
- An Alarm light bar flashes red or yellow, or glows steady red or yellow, depending on the alarm level. To turn the light bar on or off, see "Device Options."
- The Alarm Silence button on the device flashes red or yellow, or glows steady red or yellow, depending on the alarm level.
- An audible alarm sounds.

The device uses three alarm levels:

- High Priority – Requires an immediate response
- Medium Priority – Requires a prompt response
- Low Priority – Requires awareness

System messages inform you about changing conditions. These messages are described in "Alarms and System Messages."

When an alarm or system message becomes active, the screen saver stops and the screen unlocks automatically.

When patient monitors such as a CO₂, FiO₂, or SpO₂ sensor are used, related alarm settings only appear when the ventilator detects sensor connection. Alarm settings are stored in the system. So if a sensor becomes disconnected, the alarm settings are restored upon reconnection.

Most alarm settings are fixed values: you cannot change them. For example, all system and power alarm settings are fixed. But you can set certain patient-related alarms. The patient-related alarm settings may be limited based on patient type. These are explained in the sections that follow.

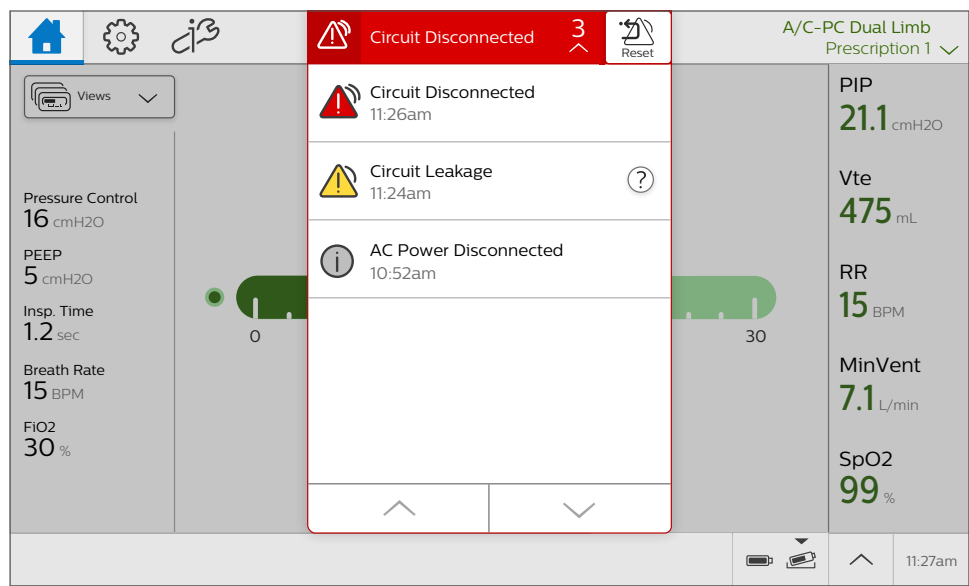
Alarm and Message Indicators

Icon	Description	Light and sound indicators
	High priority alarm	Light bar flashes red
		Audible alarm repeats rapidly
	Medium priority alarm	Light bar flashes yellow
	Low priority alarm	Audible alarm repeats moderately
		Light bar glows steady yellow
	System message	Audible alarm repeats slowly
		Single beep
	Resolved alarm or system message	None

6.3 The Alarm List

The Alarm List appears in the menu bar. The list is sorted by priority and then by time. The most urgent, most recent alarm appears at the top of the list. An alarm counter shows the number of active alarms.

Tap the alarm list to expand it and view the alarms. Tap the up and down arrows to navigate through the list.



When an alarm-triggering condition is no longer present, the alarm status changes to Resolved. The alarm or message remains visible but disabled in the list until you reset the alarm list. The Alarm Reset icon resets all active and resolved alarms.

To reset the alarm list, tap the **Alarm Reset** icon.



6.4 Setting and Changing Alarms

Warning: Be sure all alarms are appropriate for the patient before use.

You can change alarm settings when creating a new prescription or when editing an existing prescription. Each prescription will have a unique set of alarms and alarm settings.

To change an alarm setting:

1. On the menu bar, tap the **Prescription Settings** icon. 
2. In the **Prescriptions** window, tap the **Alarm** tab.



3. Select the alarm you want to change.

4. Adjust the parameters in the lower pane.
5. To undo changes, tap the **Undo** button in the lower pane.
6. When you are ready to save your changes, tap **Accept**.

6.5 Setting the Alarm Volume

Warning: Be sure the alarm volume is set loud enough for the caregiver to hear it. Consider the use of a remote alarm or nurse call system. If you do use a remote alarm or nurse call system, fully test it before starting ventilation.

To set the alarm volume:

1. In the menu bar, tap the Options icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Device Options**.
3. In the **Device Options** window, tap **Alarm Volume**.
4. On the **Alarm Volume** dialog box, select the volume you want and then tap the **Accept** checkmark.

6.6 Responding to an Alarm

Warning: Visually monitor the patient and ventilator at all times during an alarm silence period. Allowing alarms to continue without intervention may result in harm to the patient.

When an alarm occurs:

1. Be sure the patient has adequate ventilation and oxygen. If required, provide an alternate method of ventilation.
2. Tap the **Alarm List** to view all alarms and messages. If you see the help icon,  you can tap it for more information.
3. If you want to silence the alarm temporarily, press the **Alarm Silence** button on the device to pause all audible alarms for 2 minutes.
4. Take action to resolve the alarm. For help on specific alarms, see "Alarms and System Messages."

6.7 Alarms and System Messages

This section contains the details of each alarm and system message. Troubleshooting suggestions address the most common causes of each alarm and are not necessarily an exhaustive list.

6.7.1 High-Priority System Alarms

6.7.1.1 Ventilator Inoperative

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The system self-test indicates a failure or malfunction of a component. The failure causes therapy to stop or not meet essential performance criteria.
What to do	Assess the patient and provide an alternate method of ventilation, then contact customer service.
Device performance	Therapy is stopped. Both audible and visual alarms are continuous. Depending on the systems impacted, you may or may not see a message on the screen.

6.7.1.2 Ventilator Service Required

Priority	High
Why it occurs	This alarm occurs when the device cannot perform to specification, a backup safety feature is compromised, or the delivery of therapy is compromised. The device continues to function (possibly in a reduced capacity mode).
What to do	Assess the patient, then contact customer service.
Device performance	The device continues to function (possibly in a reduced capacity mode). If the problem is not corrected, the device will generate a reminder message until the issue is corrected. If therapy is stopped, a reminder message will immediately appear when therapy is turned on again.

6.7.1.3 Obstruction

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The ventilator detects an obstruction in the patient's inhalation path, exhalation path, or external flow sensor. The ventilator detects that the leak device is missing.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Check the circuit. Is it kinked or pinched? • Check the bacterial filter. Is it blocked? • If using an Active Flow or Dual Limb circuit, check the HME. Is it blocked? • Is the leak device blocked or missing? • Is the external flow sensor blocked?
Device performance	The device automatically opens the active exhalation valve and continues to function.

Algorithm summary	Any circuit, inhalation limb: an obstruction is detected when either of the following conditions exist: • The flow exiting the device is less than 0.5 L/min for 5 seconds continuously. • For Active Flow and Dual Limb circuits, the flow exiting the device during inspiration is less than 1 L/min for 5 seconds, 2 breaths, or 65 seconds for very low breath rates. Any circuit: The expiratory port is missing and causes an obstruction alarm if the average flow is less than 1 L/min for 2 breaths or 60 seconds. Active flow or dual limb circuit: an obstruction is detected when the external flow sensor measures less than 0.5 L/min for 65 continuous seconds. Note: The Obstruction alarm will not be triggered if there is an obstruction after the exhalation port (passive circuit) or after the active exhalation valve (Active PAP circuit). To detect such a condition, use the applicable alarm settings: Low Tidal Volume, Low Minute Ventilation, Low Respiratory Rate, or High Peak Inspiratory Pressure (volume modes) alarms.
-------------------	--

6.7.1.4 High Expiratory Pressure

Priority	High
Why it occurs	During the expiratory phase, the delivered pressure exceeds the target patient pressure by 5 cm H ₂ O or more.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Check the circuit. Is it kinked or pinched? • Is the leak device blocked or occluded? Note: This alarm condition may be due the patient having a fast breath rate.
Device performance	The alarm is automatically resolved when the delivered pressure comes within 5 cm H₂O of the target patient pressure during the expiratory phase. The device continues to function.

6.7.1.5 High Inspiratory Pressure (pressure modes)

This High Inspiratory Pressure alarm applies to pressure modes only. For the High Inspiratory Pressure alarm that applies to volume modes, see "High Inspiratory Pressure (volume modes)."

Priority	High
Why it occurs.	Applies to PSV, S/T, SIMV-PC, A/C-PC, or AVAPS-AE therapy modes. During the inspiratory phase, the delivered pressure exceeds the target patient pressure by 5 cm H ₂ O or more.
What to do.	Assess the patient. • Is the patient coughing? • Does the patient have excessive secretions? • Is the patient having bronchospasms? • Is the tracheotomy tube stable? Check the ventilator. • Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Is the leak device blocked? • Is the exhalation device blocked? • Are secretions in the HME?
Device performance	Inspiration is terminated with this alarm. The device automatically cycles to the expiratory phase and continues to function. The system resolves the alarm when the pressure returns to a normal value.

6.7.1.6 External Flow Sensor Failed

Priority	High
Why it occurs	A flow sensor offset or sensor failure is detected when the device is in standby or delivering therapy.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Are the sensor and cable connected? • Are the sensor and cable damaged? • Clean if needed. • Replace if necessary.
Device performance	• The device continues to provide therapy at the set breath rate. • Volume control performance is reduced. • The ability to trigger on a patient-initiated breath is reduced. • Displays and alarms that use flow measurement, such as tidal volume, might not function properly. • Displays and alarms that use pressure measurement continue to function.

6.7.1.7 External Flow Sensor Cable Disconnected

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The external flow sensor cable becomes disconnected from the ventilator during active therapy. Active flow or dual limb circuit is selected and an external flow sensor cable is not connected.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Are the sensor and cable connected? • Are they damaged? • Replace if necessary.
Device performance	• The device continues to provide therapy at the set breath rate. • Volume control performance is reduced. • The ability to trigger on a patient-initiated breath is reduced. • Displays and alarms that use flow measurement, such as tidal volume, might not function properly. • Displays and alarms that use pressure measurement continue to function.

6.7.1.8 External Flow Sensor Not Connected

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The external flow sensor becomes disconnected from the external flow sensor cable during active therapy.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Are the sensor and cable connected? • Are they damaged? • Replace if necessary.
Device performance	• The device continues to provide therapy at the set breath rate. • Volume control performance is reduced. • The ability to trigger on a patient-initiated breath is reduced. • Displays and alarms that use flow measurement, such as tidal volume, might not function properly. • Displays and alarms that use pressure measurement continue to function.

6.7.1.9 External Flow Sensor Reversed

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The external flow sensor is connected backwards during active therapy.
What to do	Assess the patient, then check the sensor position. The arrow direction should align with the air delivered to the patient.
Device performance	• The device continues to provide therapy at the set breath rate. • Volume control performance is reduced. • The ability to trigger on a patient-initiated breath is reduced. • Displays and alarms that use flow measurement, such as tidal volume, might not function properly. • Displays and alarms that use pressure measurement continue to function.

6.7.1.10 Active Exhalation Valve Failed

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The active exhalation valve is stuck closed.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Single-limb active circuit: check all connections to the valve and check that the valve is clear. • Dual limb circuit: check that the valve is clear. • Replace the circuit or valve if necessary.
Device performance	Therapy delivery will be compromised. All displays and alarms will continue to function.

6.7.1.11 Check AEV Pilot Line

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The active-exhalation pressure control line is not connected, becomes disconnected, or contains water droplets that affect the active exhalation valve line pressure reading.
What to do	Assess the patient, then inspect the line. Empty or replace it if necessary.
Device performance	Therapy delivery will be compromised. All displays and alarms will continue to function.

6.7.1.12 Proximal Pressure Line Disconnected

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The proximal pressure line is not connected.

What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Is the line connected at both ends? • Is the line clean and not tangled? • Be sure the main circuit is connected and does not have large leaks. • Be sure the exhalation valve is intact.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the proximal pressure line connection is correct. Pressure displays and alarms do not function. Therapy delivery is not compromised.

6.7.1.13 Oxygen Regulation

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The controller cannot regulate flow to guarantee FiO_2 accuracy within $10\% \pm 3\%$ of the FiO_2 setting.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Verify the oxygen blender is connected properly. • Be sure that the oxygen source is appropriate. • Contact Philips Respironics Customer Service
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.2 High-Priority Patient Alarms with Variable Settings

6.7.2.1 Apnea

Priority	High
Why it occurs	Time between patient-initiated breaths is more than the alarm setting.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Is the circuit connected to the patient? • Is there a leak or disconnect? • Is the circuit kinked or pinched?
Device performance	The alarm is automatically resolved when two patient breaths are detected that occur within set interval. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	5 to 60 seconds in increments of 5 seconds Available when Backup Ventilation is enabled

6.7.2.2 Circuit Disconnected

Warning: You should not rely on any single alarm to detect a circuit disconnect condition. Use the following alarms along with the Circuit Disconnected alarm:

- Low Tidal Volume
- Low Minute Ventilation
- Low Respiratory Rate
- Apnea

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The patient is not connected to the ventilator breathing circuit or there is a large leak.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Is the circuit connected to the patient? • Is the circuit connected to the ventilator? • Does a large unplanned leak exist?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the circuit is reconnected or the excessive leak is fixed. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	Off, 5 to 60 seconds in increments of 5 seconds.
Algorithm summary	The alarm occurs when either of the following conditions are met: • The flow out of the device is excessive for a time greater than the alarm setting. • The ventilator examines all expiratory flow for a minimum of three breaths or amount of time greater than the alarm setting and determines that the circuit is disconnected or obstructed.

6.7.2.3 Low MinVent (Low Minute Ventilation)

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The patient's minute ventilation is less than or equal to the alarm setting. Or, no breath has occurred for 15 seconds.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Does the circuit have a leak or disconnect? • Remove excessive water from the tubing. • Is the bacterial filter blocked or not connected? • Is the leak device blocked or not connected?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the minute ventilation is greater than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.

Alarm Settings | 0.2 to 30 L/min in increments of 0.1 L/min.

6.7.2.4 Low Respiratory Rate

Priority	High
Why it occurs	The patient's respiratory rate is less than or equal to the low respiratory rate alarm setting. Or, no breath has occurred for 15 seconds.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Does the circuit have a leak? • Is the circuit connected? • Check the patient.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the respiratory rate is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.

Alarm Settings | Off, 1 to 90 BPM (breaths per minute) in increments of 1 BPM.

6.7.2.5 High Inspiratory Pressure (volume modes)

This High Inspiratory Pressure alarm applies to volume modes only. For the High Inspiratory Pressure alarm that applies to pressure modes, see "High Inspiratory Pressure (pressure modes)."

Priority	This alarm occurs in several stages and escalates from an audible beep, to a medium priority alarm, then to a high priority alarm if the condition persists
Why it occurs.	Applies to volume modes. The measured patient pressure exceeds the High Inspiratory Pressure setting.
What to do.	Assess the patient. • Is the patient coughing? • Does the patient have excessive secretions? • Is the patient having bronchospasms? • Is the tracheotomy tube stable? Check the ventilator. • Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Is the leak device blocked? • Is the exhalation device blocked? • Are secretions in the HME?
Device performance.	Inspiration is terminated with this alarm. The device automatically cycles to the expiratory phase and continues to function. The system resolves the alarm when the pressure returns to a normal value.

Alarm Settings	10 to 90 cm H ₂ O in increments of 1.
Algorithm summary	The first two consecutive occurrences of the High Inspiratory alarm condition will generate an audible beep. On the third consecutive breath that meets the High Inspiratory alarm detection condition, the audible beeps escalate to a medium-priority alarm. The alarm will escalate to a High priority alarm if one of the following criteria are met: • The pressure at the end of inspiration exceeds the alarm limit and the time elapsed is ≥ 30 seconds. • The pressure at the end of inspiration on the tenth consecutive breath exceeds the alarm limit.

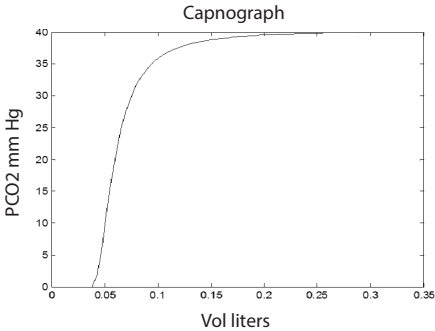
6.7.3 Medium-Priority System Alarms

6.7.3.1 Circuit Leakage

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	In the Active PAP circuit, a leak in the active exhalation valve is detected
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Is the valve or either line kinked or pinched? • Does the circuit or either line have a leak? • Is the circuit and AEV connected at both ends? • Is the valve damaged? • Can it open and close?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the circuit is reconnected or the valve is fixed. The device continues to function.
Algorithm summary	The flow from the device at the end of the expiratory phase is greater than a threshold based on a typical flow that would result if a 0.25" diameter orifice leak were present in the circuit.

6.7.3.2 Rebreathing Detected

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The ventilator detects the potential for the inhalation of exhaled gases.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Is the leak device partially clogged? • Is the exhalation valve attached? • Increase expiratory leak flow.

Device performance	The alarm is automatically resolved when the condition of rebreathing is removed. The device continues to function.
Algorithm summary	This alarm is based on an estimation of the inhaled fraction of carbon dioxide (FiCO_2). For each breath, the ventilator assigns a percentage of FiCO_2. When the sum of the percentages for the most recent breaths exceeds 30%, the alarm is announced. (i.e. 1% for 30 consecutive breaths) The concentration estimate is based on nominal volumetric capnography curves, measured flow in the inhalation limb, and patient tidal volume. This figure shows the assumed shape of the capnograph for a given volume of exhaled gases. 

6.7.3.3 Volume Under Delivery

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	Applies to A/C-VC and SIMV-VC therapy modes. A system limit is reached and the set volume cannot be reached for 3 consecutive breaths.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Is the circuit blocked? • Is the airway blocked? • Is the high pressure alarm limit correct? • Review these settings to make sure they are correct. — Inspiratory Time — Tidal Volume — Flow Pattern • Make sure the patient and ventilator are aligned by looking at the waveforms and changing the trigger settings.
Device performance	The device continues to function. The device attempts to deliver the set therapy. All monitored parameters and alarms continue to function.

Algorithm summary	These modes are designed to regulate the tidal volume on each breath, thus the alarm is generated when the inhaled tidal volume is less than or equal to 85% of the tidal volume setting for 3 consecutive breaths.
-------------------	---

6.7.3.4 Loss of CO₂ Signal

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The High EtCO₂ alarm or Low EtCO₂ alarm is enabled and the sensor has reported valid data for 3 consecutive seconds. Then one of the following happens: • The EtCO₂ sensor reports invalid data. • The sensor signal is lost. • No breaths are detected for more than 10 seconds during therapy.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Is the sensor attached to the ventilator? • Is the sensor attached to the circuit?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the sensor is properly attached and reporting data. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.5 Loss of SpO₂ Signal

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	One of the following alarms is enabled: • Low SpO₂ • High SpO₂ • Low Pulse Rate • High Pulse Rate And the oximeter has reported valid data for 3 seconds. But then, while in the therapy or standby state, one of the following occurs. • The oximeter reports invalid data. • The oximeter is not connected for more than 10 seconds.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Be sure that the SpO₂ sensor is properly attached to the patient. Reposition if necessary. • Be sure all cables are connected.
Device performance	The device continues to function. The system resolves the alarm when the oximeter reports data for more than 10 seconds.

6.7.3.6 CO₂ Sensor Adapter Zero Required

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The CO ₂ sensor requests a zero (reset) during therapy.
What to do	Assess the patient, then reset the CO ₂ level. See "CO ₂ Sensor Adapter Zero."
Device performance	CO ₂ displays and alarms do not function. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.7 Check/Change CO₂ Airway Adapter

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The CO ₂ sensor reports that a check is required during therapy.
What to do	Assess the patient, then check the CO ₂ sensor.
Device performance	CO ₂ displays and alarms do not function. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.8 CO₂ Sensor Failure

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The CO ₂ sensor reports a fault during therapy.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Disconnect and then reconnect the sensor. • Replace the sensor.
Device performance	CO ₂ displays and alarms do not function. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.9 FiO₂ Sensor Disconnected

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The High FiO ₂ alarm or Low FiO ₂ alarm is enabled and the sensor has become disconnected.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Be sure that the FiO₂ sensor is connected. • Replace the sensor, if needed.
Device performance	• FiO₂ monitoring is lost until the sensor issue is resolved. • The device continues to function.

6.7.3.10 Replace FiO₂ Sensor

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The High FiO ₂ alarm or Low FiO ₂ alarm is enabled and the sensor has failed or reached its end of life..
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Replace the sensor. • To continue therapy without alarming, either remove the sensor or disable FiO₂ in Device settings.
Device performance	• FiO₂ monitoring is ineffective or is no longer functioning. • The device continues to function.

6.7.3.11 Low Expiratory Pressure

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	During the expiratory phase, the delivered pressure is 5 cm H ₂ O or more below the target patient pressure.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Does the circuit have a leak? • Is the circuit connected? • Is the circuit kinked or pinched?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the delivered pressure comes within 5 cm H ₂ O of the target patient pressure during the expiratory phase. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.12 Low Inspiratory Pressure (pressure modes)

This Low Inspiratory Pressure alarm applies to pressure modes only. For the Low Inspiratory Pressure alarm that applies to volume modes, see "Low Inspiratory Pressure Alarm (volume modes)."

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	Applies to PSV, S/T, SIMV-PC, A/C-PC, or AVAPS-AE therapy modes. During the inspiratory phase, the delivered pressure is 5 cm H ₂ O or more below the target patient pressure.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Does the circuit have a leak? • Is the circuit connected? • Is the circuit kinked or pinched?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the delivered pressure comes within 5 cm H ₂ O of the target patient pressure during the inspiratory phase. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.13 Low Oxygen Inlet Pressure

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The pressure at the O ₂ inlet is too low to support the FiO ₂ setting.
What to do	Assess the patient, then check the O ₂ source.
Device performance	FiO ₂ delivery may be inaccurate. The device continues to function.

6.7.3.14 High Oxygen Inlet Pressure

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured oxygen inlet pressure is greater than or equal to 87 psig.
What to do	Assess the patient, then check the O ₂ source.
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.4 Medium-Priority Patient Alarms with Variable Settings

6.7.4.1 High Tidal Volume

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	<i>Passive, active flow, or dual limb circuit types:</i> The estimated exhaled tidal volume is more than or equal to the alarm setting for a number of breaths depending on the therapy mode: • Three consecutive breaths: A/C-PC, CPAP, PSV, S/T, SIMV-VC, SIMV-PC, and AVAPS-AE. • Six consecutive breaths: A/C-VC When AVAPS or AVAPS-AE mode is enabled, this alarm occurs when the Tidal Volume is more than or equal to the alarm threshold for one minute and Set Inspiratory Pressure is less than or equal to (Set Inspiratory Pressure min + 1 cm H₂O). <i>Active PAP circuit type:</i> The delivered tidal volume is more than or equal to the alarm setting for three consecutive breaths.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Is the active exhalation valve attached? Note: For active flow and dual limb circuits, low flow O₂ or a nebulizer may increase tidal volumes above the alarm setting.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when a breath occurs in which the exhaled tidal volume is below the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	10 to 2000 ml in increments of 5 ml.

6.7.4.2 Low Tidal Volume

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	<i>Passive, active flow, or dual limb circuit types:</i> The estimated exhaled tidal volume is less than or equal to the low tidal volume alarm setting for a number of breaths depending on the therapy mode: • Three consecutive breaths: A/C-PC, CPAP, PSV, S/T, SIMV-VC, SIMV-PC, and AVAPS-AE. • Six consecutive breaths: A/C-VC The delivered tidal volume is less than or equal to the low tidal volume setting. When AVAPS is enabled, this alarm occurs when the Tidal Volume is less than or equal to the alarm setting for one minute and IPAP is greater than or equal to (IPAP max - 1 cm H₂O). <i>Active PAP circuit type:</i> The delivered tidal volume is less than or equal to the low tidal volume setting.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Is the leak device blocked or clogged? • Is the leak device connected? • Is the diaphragm in the active exhalation device placed correctly? • Does the mask fit? • Do you need to change the mask?
Device performance	<i>Passive, active flow, or dual limb circuit types:</i> The system resolves the alarm when a breath occurs in which the exhaled tidal volume is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function. <i>Active PAP circuit type:</i> The system resolves the alarm when a breath occurs in which the exhaled tidal volume is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	10 to 2000 ml in increments of 5 ml.

6.7.4.3 High MinVent (High Minute Ventilation)

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The patient's minute ventilation is more than or equal to the high minute ventilation alarm setting.
What to do	Assess the patient.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the minute ventilation is less than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	0.2 to 30 L/min in minimum increments of 0.1 L/min.

6.7.4.4 High Respiratory Rate

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The respiratory rate is more than the alarm setting. When the trigger type is 'Off' then the spontaneous respiratory rate does not trigger the alarm.
What to do	• Assess the patient. • Is the trigger too sensitive?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the respiratory rate is less than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	Off, 1 to 90 BPM (breaths per minute) in increments of 1 BPM.

6.7.4.5 Low Inspiratory Pressure Alarm (volume modes)

This Low Inspiratory Pressure alarm applies to volume modes only. For the Low Inspiratory Pressure alarm that applies to volume modes, see "Low Inspiratory Pressure (pressure modes)."

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	Applies to volume modes. The measured peak inspiratory pressure is less than or equal to the alarm setting.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Could patient changes have caused this alarm? Such as excessive patient inspiratory effort? • Is the circuit kinked or pinched? • Is there a leak in the circuit? • Is the circuit connected?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the peak inspiratory pressure is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	PEEP+1 to 89 cm H ₂ O in increments of 1 cm H ₂ O.

6.7.4.6 Low SpO₂

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured SpO ₂ is less than or equal to the alarm setting for 10 seconds during therapy or in the standby state.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Check all oxygen connections. • Is the oxygen source appropriate? • Are the therapy settings appropriate?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the SpO ₂ is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	50 to 99% in increments of 1%.

6.7.4.7 High SpO₂

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured SpO ₂ is greater than or equal to the alarm setting for 10 seconds during therapy or in the standby state.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Is the oxygen source appropriate? • Are the therapy settings appropriate?
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the SpO ₂ is less than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	90 to 100% in increments of 1%.

6.7.4.8 Low EtCO₂

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured EtCO ₂ is less than or equal to the alarm setting for 10 seconds during therapy.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • If there is a tracheal tube, is it inserted? • Is the leak excessive? A high leak reduces the EtCO₂. • Check the tidal volume, minute ventilation and respiratory rate settings. Are they correct?

Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the EtCO ₂ is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	Off, 1 to 100 mmHg in increments of 1 mmHg.

6.7.4.9 High EtCO₂

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured EtCO ₂ is more than or equal to the alarm setting for 10 seconds during therapy.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Passive circuit: check for an insufficient leak • Active and dual limb circuits: be sure the valve is operable
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the EtCO ₂ is less than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	Off, 1 to 100 mmHg in increments of 1 mmHg.

6.7.4.10 Low FiO₂

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured FiO ₂ is less than or equal to the alarm setting for 10 seconds during therapy.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Check all oxygen connections. • Is the oxygen source appropriate? • Recalibrate the FiO₂ sensor.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the FiO ₂ is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	21 to 95% in increments of 1%.

6.7.4.11 High FiO₂

This alarm is disabled when 100% O₂ is active.

Priority	Medium
Why it occurs	The measured FiO ₂ is more than or equal to the alarm setting for 10 seconds during therapy.

What to do	Assess the patient, then: - Is the oxygen source appropriate? - Recalibrate the FiO_2 sensor.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the FiO_2 is less than the alarm setting for 10 consecutive seconds. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	27 to 100% in increments of 1%

6.7.5 Low-Priority System Alarms

6.7.5.1 Stuck Key

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	An On/Off (Standby) button or Alarm Silence button is stuck for at least 120 seconds.
What to do	Assess the patient, then contact customer service.
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.5.2 Inlet Filter Blocked

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	The inlet filter becomes blocked and delivered therapy is reduced.
What to do	Assess the patient, then: - Is the air inlet blocked? - Remove any filter. If the filter is the air-inlet foam filter, rinse it. See "Rinsing the Air-Inlet Foam Filter." Otherwise, replace the filter.
Device performance	The device continues to function.
Algorithm summary	Because the inlet filter is blocked, the pressure generated by the ventilator is less than 75% of the estimated outlet pressure based on the nominal performance characteristics of the device.

6.7.5.3 Check Proximal Pressure Line

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	The proximal pressure line connection may be faulty. The line may contain water droplets that affect the pressure reading.

What to do	Assess the patient, then: • Is the proximal pressure line connected at both ends? • Is the line clean and untangled? • If necessary, clear the line and reconnect.
Device performance	• Displays and alarms that use the pressure measurement do not function • Displays and alarms that use the flow measurement, such as tidal volume, continue to function • The device continues to function.
Algorithm summary	During periods of the breath when there is low flow in the inhalation limb, the pressure measured at the outlet of the device is compared to the pressure measured by the proximal line. When the difference is greater than 5 cm H ₂ O at low flow for three consecutive breaths, the alarm occurs.

6.7.6 Low-Priority Patient Alarms with Variable Settings

6.7.6.1 Low Pulse Rate

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	The pulse oximeter must have reported valid data for the previous three seconds. In the standby and therapy states, the pulse rate is less than or equal to the low pulse rate alarm setting.
What to do	• Assess the patient. • Check sensor placement and reposition.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the pulse rate is more than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	Off, 18 to 300 beats per minute in increments of 1 beat per minute.

6.7.6.2 High Pulse Rate

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	The pulse oximeter must have reported valid data for the previous three seconds. In the standby and therapy states, the pulse rate is more than or equal to the high pulse rate alarm setting.
What to do	Assess the patient.
Device performance	The system resolves the alarm when the pulse rate is less than the alarm setting. The device continues to function.
Alarm Settings	Off, 18 to 300 beats per minute in increments of 1 beat per minute.

6.7.7 Power Alarms

6.7.7.1 Low Battery

Warning: If the high-priority “Low Battery” alarm occurs, immediately connect the ventilator to an alternate power source. If no alternate power source is available, immediately place the patient on an alternate source of ventilation.

Priority	<i>Medium priority</i> when the last available battery can provide close to 20 minutes of therapy. <i>High priority</i> when the last available battery can provide close to 10 minutes of therapy.
Why it occurs	The last battery available is low or nearly depleted.
What to do	• Immediately connect the ventilator to an alternate power source. • If no alternate power source is available, immediately place the patient on an alternate source of ventilation.
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.7.2 AC Power Disconnected

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	AC power is disconnected during therapy or standby states.
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.7.3 Internal Battery in Use

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	• The power source has switched to the internal battery. • You start therapy on internal battery power.
What to do	• Confirm the remaining battery capacity. This is the last available power source. • Prepare an alternative power source such as AC power or an external battery.
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.7.4 Replace Detachable Battery

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	The detachable battery has failed. Or, the battery is nearing the end of its useful life.

What to do	Replace the detachable battery. If the alarm continues, plug the device into an AC power source.
Device performance	The device continues to function. If the condition still exists 60 minutes after you reset the alarm, the alarm repeats.

6.7.7.5 Internal Battery Depleted

Priority	Low
Why it occurs	The internal battery is depleted.
What to do	Connect AC power or an external battery to charge the internal battery.
Device performance	The device continues to function.

6.7.7.6 Loss of All Power

Priority	High
Why it occurs	All power to the device is lost while delivering therapy.
What to do	• Immediately connect the ventilator to an alternate power source. • If no alternate power source is available, immediately place the patient on an alternate source of ventilation.
Device performance	This alarm behaves differently from other high-priority alarms. When all power is lost, the ventilator beeps and LED lights flash. To stop the alarm, press the Audio Pause button or connect a usable power source.

6.7.8 System Messages

Message	Cause
External DC Source Disconnected	Power supplied from an external DC source becomes disconnected or depleted.
External DC Source Depleted	The external DC power source is depleted.
Check External DC Source	An external battery is connected but cannot supply sufficient power. Check for a faulty cable, bad connection, or bad battery.
Detachable Battery Depleted	The detachable battery is depleted.
Internal Battery Not Charging – Temperature	The system is unable to charge the internal battery due to temperature. Change the environmental temperature or relocate the device.
Internal Battery Not Discharging – Temperature	The internal battery is unable to power the device due to temperature. Change the environmental temperature or relocate the device.
Detachable Battery Not Charging – Temperature	The system is unable to charge the detachable battery due to temperature. Change the environmental temperature or relocate the device.
Detachable Battery Not Discharging – Temperature	The system is unable to discharge the detachable battery due to temperature. Change the environmental temperature or relocate the device.
Start On Battery	- Trilogy EV300 is turned on and AC power is not detected. Reconnect AC power. - Power is restored after losing all power and AC power is not detected. Reconnect AC power.
Circuit Mismatch	The circuit type selected for use does not match the circuit connected for three consecutive breaths. Check the circuit type. Connect a circuit that matches the prescription. Or, change the circuit type.
Unsupported Accessory Connected	An unsupported accessory is connected to Trilogy EV300.
FiO ₂ sensor not calibrated	FiO ₂ monitoring is enabled but the FiO ₂ sensor was not calibrated
Replace FiO ₂ sensor	The FiO ₂ sensor is at the end of life or is no longer functioning.
SpO ₂ Monitor Connected	Indicates a pulse oximeter is now connected.

6.8 Patient-related Alarm Availability by Therapy Mode

Most alarms function regardless of the therapy mode being delivered. However, certain alarms function only when certain therapy modes are being delivered.

The chart below lists those alarms and the therapy modes in which the alarms are available.

Alarm	A/C-PC	A/C-VC	CPAP	PSV	S/T	SIMV-PC	SIMV-VC	AVAPS-AE
Apnea (requires Backup Ventilation)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Circuit Disconnected	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
High Tidal Volume	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Low Tidal Volume	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
High MinVent	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Low MinVent	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
High Respiratory Rate	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Low Respiratory Rate	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
High Inspiratory Pressure		•					•	
Low Inspiratory Pressure		•					•	
High SpO ₂	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Low SpO ₂	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
High Pulse Rate	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Low Pulse Rate	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
High EtCO ₂	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Low EtCO ₂	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
High FiO ₂	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Low FiO ₂	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

6.9 Testing Alarms

Test alarms any time you make a significant change to the system. If the alarm that you are testing does not activate, adjust the alarm settings and retry.

6.9.1 Testing Circuit Disconnection Alarms

For ventilator-dependent patients, do not rely on any single alarm to detect when a circuit is disconnected. One or more of the following alarms may indicate a disconnected circuit.

- Circuit Disconnected
- Low Tidal Volume
- Low Minute Ventilation
- Low Respiratory Rate
- Low Peak Inspiratory Pressure alarms (user settable for volume modes)
- Leakage alarm (Active PAP circuit only)

To test that these alarms detect a circuit disconnection, follow these steps.

1. Be sure the patient is connected to the ventilator and that therapy is stable. Be sure that none of the alarms above are active.
2. Disconnect the circuit at the patient interface. Be sure all circuit accessories remain attached.
3. Confirm that one or more of the alarms listed above activate.
4. Reconnect the circuit and confirm that any active alarm automatically resets.

6.9.2 Testing Circuit Obstruction Alarms

For ventilator-dependent patients, do not rely on any single alarm to detect when a circuit is obstructed. One or more of the following alarms may indicate an obstructed circuit.

- Obstruction
- High Inspiratory Pressure
- Circuit Disconnected
- Low Tidal Volume
- Low Minute Ventilation
- Low Respiratory Rate
- Low Peak Inspiratory Pressure alarms (settable for volume modes)
- Leakage alarm (Active PAP circuit only)
- Rebreathing Detected

To test that these alarms detect a circuit obstruction, follow these steps.

1. Be sure that the patient is connected to the ventilator and that therapy is stable.
2. *For a Passive circuit:* Disconnect the circuit at the patient end, remove the leak device and block the end of the circuit.
For an Active circuit: Disconnect the circuit at the patient end and block the end of the circuit.
3. Confirm that one or more of the alarms listed above activate.
4. Reconnect the circuit and confirm that any active alarm automatically resets.

6.9.3 Testing the Leakage Alarm

For an Active PAP circuit, the Leakage alarm detects a leak in the active exhalation valve (AEV).

To test the Leakage alarm, follow these steps.

1. Be sure that the patient is connected to the ventilator and that therapy is stable.
2. Disconnect the AEV control line from the ventilator.
3. Confirm that the *Circuit Leakage*, and/or *Check AEV Line* alarm activates.
4. Reconnect the AEV control line and confirm that the alarm automatically resets.

6.9.4 Testing the Low FiO₂ Alarm with the Low Flow Oxygen

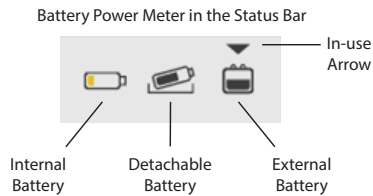
This test applies only when low flow oxygen is in use. The Low FiO₂ alarm requires an FiO₂ sensor to be connected and the FiO₂ sensor setting to be turned on.

To test the loss of low flow oxygen, follow these steps.

1. Be sure that the patient is connected to the ventilator and that therapy is stable.
2. Disconnect the oxygen from the ventilator
3. Confirm that the *Low FiO₂* alarm activates.
4. Reconnect the oxygen and confirm that the alarm automatically clears, which may take 30 seconds or more.

6.9.5 Testing Power Alarms

When a power source is disconnected, Trilogy EV300 automatically switches to the next available power source. For the priority of power sources, see "Overview." When confirming that the system is using battery power, the In-use Arrow should point to the battery that is providing power. The device should continue to function during these tests.



To test the power alarms, follow these steps.

1. Connect the device to AC power.
2. Be sure the device is using AC power. The green LED next to the power button should be lit.
3. Disconnect AC power (pull the power cord out of the outlet).
4. Confirm that the *AC Disconnected* alarm activates.
5. If connected to an external battery, go to the next step. Otherwise go to step 9.
6. Confirm that the power source is the external battery.
7. Disconnect the external battery.
8. Confirm that the *External DC Source Disconnected* system message appears.
9. Confirm that the power source is the detachable battery.
10. Remove the detachable battery.
11. Confirm that the power source is now the internal battery and that the *Internal Battery in Use* alarm activates.

To test the low battery alarm:

This test may require several hours to complete. During the test, if you want to silence the alarm temporarily, press the **Alarm Silence** button on the device to pause all audible alarms for 2 minutes. Because this test is performed during therapy, monitor the patient closely to ensure therapy is not interrupted.

1. Be sure that AC power is available to recharge the batteries at the end of the test.
2. Disconnect external power sources and remove the detachable battery.
3. Continue to allow the device to use internal battery power while delivering therapy.
4. Confirm that the medium-priority *Low Battery* alarm activates and that the device continues to function.
5. Continue to allow the device to use internal battery power. Ensure you monitor the patient.
6. Confirm that the high-priority *Low Battery* alarm activates and that the device continues to function.
7. Insert the detachable battery and reconnect AC power to recharge the batteries.

6.9.6 Testing Therapy Setting Alarms

When testing alarms, remember that you can use the Alarm Silence button.

To test the alarms related to therapy settings, you set the alarm limit outside of the measured value and confirm that the alarm activates. Perform the test for both the high and low limits.

To test alarms related to the limits of therapy settings, follow these steps.

1. Set the therapy mode to A/C-VC.
2. Connect a circuit to the device and to a test lung.
3. Observe the measured values.
4. Set the alarm limit below the measured value.
5. Confirm that the alarm activates.
6. Restore the alarm limit.
7. Repeat steps 4 through 6, setting the alarm above the measured value.

Perform the test for each of the following alarms:

- High Tidal Volume
- Low Tidal Volume
- High Minute Ventilation
- Low Minute Ventilation
- High Respiratory Rate
- Low Respiratory Rate
- High Inspiratory Pressure
- Low Inspiratory Pressure

6.9.7 Testing Patient-Monitoring Alarms

Before testing these alarms, be sure that the patient is connected to the ventilator and that ventilation is stabilized. Be sure that the monitor is connected and functional.

To test alarms related to patient monitoring where the alarm limits are settable:

1. Observe the measured values.
2. Set the alarm limit below the measured value.
3. Confirm that the alarm activates.
4. Restore the alarm limit.
5. Repeat steps 1 through 4, setting the alarm above the measured value.

Repeat the test for each of the following alarms that you want to test:

- High EtCO₂
- Low EtCO₂
- High FiO₂
- Low FiO₂
- High Pulse Rate
- Low Pulse Rate
- High SpO₂
- Low SpO₂

7. Device Options

7.1 Overview

Use the Options window to change device options, run calibrations and tests, and view and work with data.

The Options window includes the following features:

- “Device Options”
- “Calibration”
- “Data Transfer”
- “Information”
- “Alarm and Event Log”

7.2 Device Options

Use the Device Options feature to customize Trilogy EV300. When working with settings, be sure you save your changes. After 30 seconds of inactivity, the system reverts to the previous setting and your changes are not saved.

To change a setting:

1. In the menu bar, tap the Options icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Device Options**.
3. In the **Device Options** window, tap the setting you want to change.
4. In the option dialog box, make your selection.
5. When your selection is complete, on the title bar, tap the **Accept** checkmark.

Option	Description
Language	Set the device language.
Alarm Volume	Set system alarm loudness.
Screen Brightness	Set screen brightness.
Light Bar	Turn the light bar on or off.
Automatic Touchscreen Lock	Automatically locks the screen after five minutes of inactivity. The screen automatically unlocks during an alarm.
Screen Saver	Select the type of screen saver that you want to use.
Date and Format	Set the system date and format.
Time and Format	Set the system time and select 12- or 24-hour format.
FiO ₂ Sensor	Turn the FiO ₂ sensor on or off.

NFC	Turn near field communication on or off.
Bluetooth	• <i>To enable a Bluetooth connection:</i> tap Bluetooth. On the dialog box, tap On. A Bluetooth symbol appears in the Status Bar to show when devices are connected. • <i>To disable a Bluetooth connection:</i> tap Bluetooth. On the dialog box, tap Off. • <i>To clear all devices from memory:</i> tap Bluetooth. On the dialog box, tap Forget All Devices. (Disabled when Bluetooth is not enabled.) Note: Bluetooth may not be present in all models.
Data Encryption	• The data on Trilogy EV300 is already encrypted. • By enabling Encryption, some additional information will be required to read the data by a certified provider • If the Encryption was enabled and the user selects OFF, all of the patient data will be deleted. We recommend that only the certified provider makes this action.
Device Units	Select the pressure and CO ₂ measurement units

7.3 Calibration

7.3.1 Circuit Calibration Concepts

The Trilogy EV300 is optimized for circuits that are within the specifications shown in “Circuit Requirements.” If you want to use a different circuit, you can perform an optional Circuit Calibration, intended to characterize compliance and resistance. The circuit calibration process includes the following procedures, based on the circuit type:

- *Active circuits:* calibrates according to the results of the leak test, compliance, and resistance
- *Passive circuits:* calibrates according to the compliance and resistance

When you calibrate the circuit, follow the instructions on the screen as the system completes the tests.

If the calibration is successful, then you will see a confirmation message.

If the circuit fails any part of the test, the reason appears on the screen. Adjust the circuit and repeat the calibration. If you repeat the calibration but the circuit still fails, either replace the circuit and try again or use the default settings.

Information about the circuit calibration is recorded in the Event Log. For help with the Event Log, see “Alarm and Event Log.”

7.3.1.1 Calibrating a Circuit

To calibrate a circuit, follow these steps.

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Calibration & Setup**.
3. In the **Calibration & Setup** window, tap **Circuit Calibration**.
4. In the **Calibrate Circuit** window, in the **Current Prescriptions** list, tap the prescription you want to calibrate and then tap **Calibrate**.
5. Follow the instructions on the screen.
 - If any part of the test fails, correct the issue suggested on the screen and then tap **Retest** to continue the test.
 - To cancel the test, tap **Quit**.

7.3.1.2 Using Default Settings

If you want to stop using calibrated settings and return to the default settings, follow these steps:

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Calibration & Setup**.
3. In the **Calibration & Setup** window, tap **Circuit Calibration**.
4. In the **Calibrate Circuit** window, in the **Current Prescriptions** list, locate the prescription you want to calibrate and then tap **Set to Default Calibration**.
5. On the confirmation window, tap **Yes**.

7.3.2 Leak Test

A full circuit calibration includes a leak test to check the active exhalation valve. Use the Leak Test procedure when you only want to check this valve.

Prerequisites:

- Be sure the prescription is for an active circuit type:
 - Active Flow
 - Active PAP
 - Dual Limb
- Remove the patient interface from the circuit.
- Block the end of the circuit where the patient interface would be.
- Be sure the external active exhalation valve is assembled and connected.

To perform a leak test, follow these steps.

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Calibration & Setup**.

3. In the **Calibration & Setup** window, tap **Leak Test**.
4. Review the prerequisites and then tap **Start**.
5. The system performs the test. The results appear in the test progress pane. If the test:
 - *Fails*: Review the failure reasons. If you want to try again, tap **Retest**; otherwise, tap **Quit**.
 - *Passes*: Tap **OK**.

7.3.3 FiO₂ Sensor Calibration

Prerequisites:

- Be sure the patient circuit is connected.
- Remove the patient interface from the circuit.
- Remove any passive exhalation device.
- Connect high-pressure O₂.
- Be sure that low-flow O₂ is not connected.

To calibrate the FiO₂ sensor, follow these steps.

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Calibration & Setup**.
3. In the **Calibration & Setup** window, tap **O₂ Sensor Calibration**.
4. Review the prerequisites and then tap **Start**.
5. The system performs the Circuit Flush test. The results appear in the progress pane. If the test:
 - *Fails*: Review the failure reasons. If you want to try again, tap **Retest**; otherwise, tap **Quit**.
 - *Passes*: Go to the next step.
6. Block the end of the circuit and then tap **Continue**.
7. The system performs the 21% Calibration test. The results appear in the progress pane. If the test:
 - *Fails*: Review the failure reasons. If you want to try again, tap **Retest**; otherwise, tap **Quit**.
 - *Passes*: Go to the next step.
8. Confirm that high-pressure O₂ is connected and the circuit outlet is blocked and then tap **Continue**. Otherwise, the test is complete.
9. The system performs the test. The results appear in the test progress pane. If the test:
 - *Fails*: Review the failure reasons. If you want to try again, tap **Retest**; otherwise, tap **Quit**. To deactivate the FiO₂ sensor, turn off the FiO₂ sensor. See “Device Options.”
 - *Passes*: Tap **OK**.

7.3.4 CO₂ Sensor Adapter Zero

Perform this task when installing a CO₂ sensor (capnograph) and when indicated by the Check/Change CO₂ Airway Adapter alarm.

To establish a baseline CO₂ level, follow these steps.

1. Place the CO₂ sensor onto a clean and dry airway adapter that is exposed to room air, but is away from all CO₂ sources including the ventilator, your breath, and the patient's breath.
2. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
3. In the **Options** window, tap **Calibration & Setup**.
4. In the **Calibration & Setup** window, tap **CO₂ Sensor Adapter Zero**.
5. Review the prerequisites and then tap **Start**.
6. The system performs the test. The results appear in the test progress pane. If the test:
 - Fails: Review the failure reasons. If you want to try again, tap **Retest**; otherwise, tap **Quit**.
 - Passes: tap **OK**.

7.4 Data Transfer

Use data transfer functions to import and export data. When working with personal health information, be sure the data is kept secure. When working with an external storage device that contains patient information, such as a USB flash drive, be sure you delete that data by reformatting the storage device.

The following data transfer icons appear in the Status Bar during transfer.

USB Data Transfer icon:



Bluetooth Data Transfer icon:



To access the data transfer functions, follow these steps.

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Data Transfer**.
3. In the **Data Transfer** window, tap the procedure you would like to perform and then follow the prompts on the screen:

Function	Description
Export Alarm & Event Log	Export the alarm and event logs. If two storage devices are connected, the logs are saved to the device that was connected first.

Function	Description								
Export Data - USB	Export data to a storage device connected to the USB port. Data is identified by the device serial number.								
	<table><tr><th>Data type</th><th>Data stored</th></tr><tr><td>Changes to the ventilator, alarms, prescriptions, accessories and oxygen</td><td rowspan="2">6 months</td></tr><tr><td>30-second averages of each therapy parameter related to the therapy provided to the patient</td></tr><tr><td>Waveform data including pressure, flow, volume, and total leak</td><td rowspan="2">31 days</td></tr><tr><td>Patient monitors: • CO₂ monitor data • Oximeter data • FiO₂ monitor data </td></tr></table>	Data type	Data stored	Changes to the ventilator, alarms, prescriptions, accessories and oxygen	6 months	30-second averages of each therapy parameter related to the therapy provided to the patient	Waveform data including pressure, flow, volume, and total leak	31 days	Patient monitors: • CO₂ monitor data • Oximeter data • FiO₂ monitor data
	Data type	Data stored							
	Changes to the ventilator, alarms, prescriptions, accessories and oxygen	6 months							
	30-second averages of each therapy parameter related to the therapy provided to the patient								
	Waveform data including pressure, flow, volume, and total leak	31 days							
Patient monitors: • CO₂ monitor data • Oximeter data • FiO₂ monitor data									
Export Data - Bluetooth	Export data to a storage device connected through Bluetooth. Data is identified by the device serial number.								
	<table><tr><th>Data type</th><th>Data stored</th></tr><tr><td>Changes to the ventilator, alarms, prescriptions, accessories and oxygen</td><td rowspan="2">6 months</td></tr><tr><td>30-second averages of each therapy parameter related to the therapy provided to the patient</td></tr><tr><td>Patient monitors: • CO₂ monitor data • Oximeter data • FiO₂ monitor data </td><td rowspan="2">31 days</td></tr><tr><td></td></tr></table>	Data type	Data stored	Changes to the ventilator, alarms, prescriptions, accessories and oxygen	6 months	30-second averages of each therapy parameter related to the therapy provided to the patient	Patient monitors: • CO₂ monitor data • Oximeter data • FiO₂ monitor data	31 days	
	Data type	Data stored							
	Changes to the ventilator, alarms, prescriptions, accessories and oxygen	6 months							
	30-second averages of each therapy parameter related to the therapy provided to the patient								
	Patient monitors: • CO₂ monitor data • Oximeter data • FiO₂ monitor data	31 days							
Install Software Update	Be sure the version number that you are installing is higher than the current software version. After installing the update, the system automatically restarts.								

7.5 Information

The information window shows general information about the device, including the following:

- Model Number
- Serial Number
- Software Version Number
- Hardware Version Number
- Internal Battery Serial Number
- Detachable Battery Serial Number
- Operational Hours – Total Blower Hours
- Operational Hours – Total Patient Hours
- Software licenses

To change pages, tap the page icons at the bottom of the window. To view software licenses, tap the item you want to view.

7.6 Alarm and Event Log

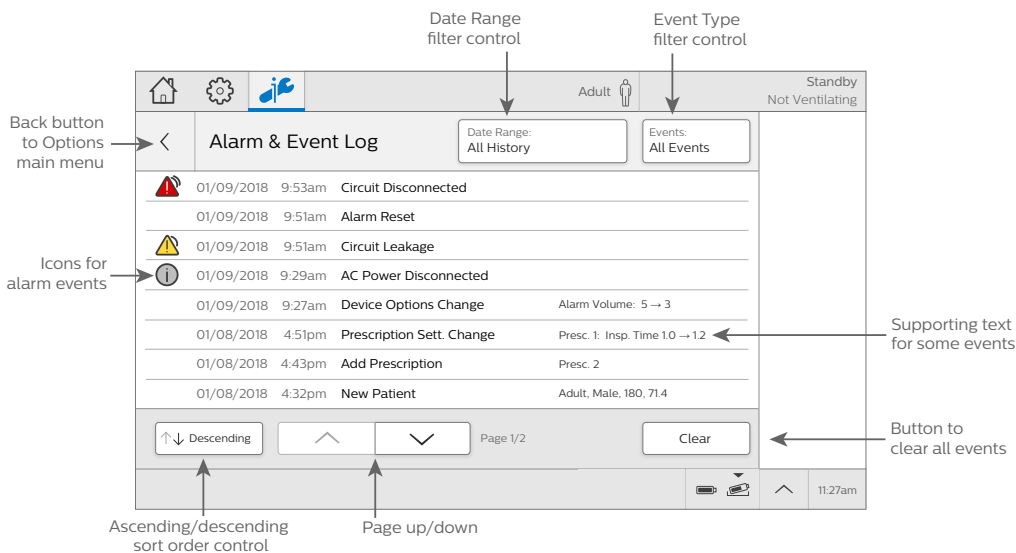
The Alarm and Event Log is a record of all events related to the device and to therapy. The log shows the event, when it occurred, and a brief description. Information is saved even when you shut off the device or when power is lost. The log stores the most recent 6-months of information with the exception of the event log, which stores the most recent 10,000 records. Older records are overwritten.

When the device access level is limited, selected events do not appear.

To access the Alarm and Event Log:

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the Options window, tap **Alarm & Event Log**.

7.6.1 Parts of the Alarm and Event Log



Item	Description		
Date Range button	Tap to filter events by date. On the Select Date Range dialog box, select the date range and then tap Accept .		
Events button	Tap to filter events so only alarms and system messages appear in the list. Tap again to view all event types.		
Alarm and event list	Alarms and messages	Event Type	Icon
		High priority alarm	
		Medium priority alarm	
		Low priority alarm	
		System message	
	Events	Events such as: • Power or battery • Calibration event • Change to therapy setting, alarm setting, or device option • Data transfer • Access level change	
Ascending/Descending button	Sort the list by date and time.		
Page up and down button	Tap to scroll through the log.		
Clear	Clear all events from the screen. Not available in all device configurations.		

8. Cleaning and Disinfection

8.1 Overview

Warnings:

- Because Trilogy EV300 is intended for multi-patient use, be sure you follow the cleaning and disinfection instructions in this chapter.
- Be certain that any bacterial filter used with this device complies with ISO 23328-1 and ISO 23328-2. To prevent patient or ventilator contamination, you must use a Philips Respironics-approved main flow bacterial filter on the patient gas outlet port. Filters not approved by Philips Respironics may degrade system performance. For a list of accessories, see the Trilogy EV300 accessories guide.

8.2 Exterior Cleaning and Disinfection

Warning: To avoid electric shock, do not remove the enclosure cover. Only service personnel should remove the enclosure. After cleaning and disinfecting, be sure the device is completely dry before reattaching accessories and connectors and before reconnecting it to a power source. To avoid electrical shock, always unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before cleaning the ventilator. If the device has been exposed to rain or dampness, dry the device (including the area around the power cord connection) with the power cord disconnected from the device before applying AC power.

Caution: Do not immerse the device or allow liquids into any of the controls or inside the enclosure as the device may be damaged. If this occurs, contact your equipment provider for assistance. Use only the cleaning agents and methods described in this section to clean and disinfect the device.

8.2.1 Cleaning the Exterior

Frequency: Clean Trilogy EV300's exterior surface weekly or more often if necessary and between patients.

Requirements:

- Lint-free cloth
- Soft-bristle brush
- Liquid dishwashing detergent solution:
1 teaspoon of liquid dishwashing detergent (such as Dawn Ultra Dishwashing Liquid®) per gallon of warm water

To clean the exterior, follow these steps.

1. Turn the device off and disconnect it from the power source.
2. Detach all accessories and connectors.
3. Use a lint-free cloth dampened (not dripping) with a liquid dishwashing detergent solution to clean the exterior of the enclosure.
4. Use a soft-bristle brush in the areas around the screen, buttons, and any other areas where soil may be difficult to remove. Ensure you remove all visible soil.
5. Use a lint-free cloth dampened (not dripping) with clear water to remove all detergent residue.
6. Use a lint-free cloth to dry the enclosure.
7. Inspect the device for cleanliness.
8. Repeat the cleaning steps until the surfaces are visibly clean.
9. Inspect the device for damage after cleaning. If any parts are damaged, contact customer service.

8.2.2 Disinfecting the Exterior

Frequency: Disinfect the exterior surface weekly or more often if necessary and between patients.

Prerequisite: Before disinfecting the exterior, be sure you have cleaned the device as instructed in the previous section, “Cleaning the Exterior.”

8.2.2.1 Isopropyl Alcohol

Requirement: 70% isopropyl alcohol, lint-free cloth

To disinfect with alcohol, follow these steps.

1. Use a lint-free cloth dampened with alcohol to wipe the alcohol onto the exterior, thoroughly wetting the surfaces.
2. Keep wet 10 minutes.
3. Allow to air dry.

8.2.2.2 Chlorine Bleach

Requirement: Household chlorine bleach containing 8.25% sodium hypochlorite, lint-free cloth

To disinfect with bleach, follow these steps.

1. Combine 10 parts water to 1-part bleach.
2. Use a lint-free cloth dampened with the bleach solution to wipe the bleach solution onto the exterior, thoroughly wetting the surfaces.
3. Keep wet 10 minutes.
4. Allow to air dry.

8.2.2.3 Clorox Healthcare® Bleach Germicidal Wipes

Requirement: Pre-moistened Clorox Healthcare® Bleach Germicidal Wipes

To disinfect with Clorox Healthcare® Bleach Germicidal Wipes, follow these steps.

1. Using the pre-moistened wipes, wipe the exterior surfaces, thoroughly wetting them.
2. Keep wet 10 minutes.
3. Allow to air dry.

8.2.2.4 70% Ethyl Alcohol

Requirement: Solution of 70% Ethyl Alcohol, lint-free cloth

To disinfect with 70% Ethyl Alcohol, follow these steps.

1. Use a lint-free cloth dampened with the 70% Ethyl Alcohol solution to wipe the Ethyl Alcohol solution onto the exterior, thoroughly wetting the surfaces.
2. Keep wet 10 minutes.
3. Allow to air dry.

8.2.2.5 Mikrozid AF

Requirement: Mikrozid AF liquid, lint-free cloth

To disinfect with Mikrozid liquid, follow these steps.

1. Use a lint-free cloth dampened with the Mikrozid liquid solution to wipe the Mikrozid solution onto the exterior, thoroughly wetting the surfaces.
2. Keep wet 10 minutes.
3. Allow to air dry.

8.2.2.6 Bacillol AF

Requirement: Bacillol AF liquid, lint-free cloth

To disinfect with Bacillol liquid, follow these steps.

1. Use a lint-free cloth dampened with the Bacillol liquid to wipe the Bacillol liquid onto the exterior, thoroughly wetting the surfaces
2. Keep wet 10 minutes.
3. Allow to air dry.

8.3 Cleaning the Detachable Battery

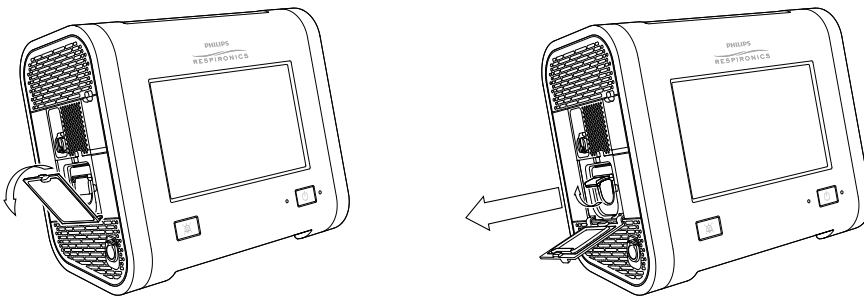
Frequency: Clean the detachable battery monthly.

Requirements:

- Lint-free cloth
- Soft-bristle brush
- Liquid dishwashing detergent solution:
1 teaspoon of liquid dishwashing detergent (such as Dawn Ultra Dishwashing Liquid) per gallon of warm water

To clean the detachable battery:

1. Remove the detachable battery.
Open the detachable battery access door. Lift the battery handle and pull the battery to remove it from the battery bay.



2. Use a lint-free cloth dampened (not dripping) with a liquid dishwashing detergent solution to wipe the battery. Ensure you remove all visible soil.
3. Use a dry, soft-bristle brush to clean any small areas, such as crevices or small openings that are not accessible with the cloth.
4. Use a lint-free cloth dampened (not dripping) with clear water to remove all detergent residue.
5. Allow the battery to air dry completely.
6. Inspect the battery for damage after cleaning. If any part is damaged, contact Philips Respironics Customer Service.
7. Replace the battery. Open the detachable battery access door. Slide the battery into the bay until you hear a click.

8.4 Rinsing the Air-Inlet Foam Filter

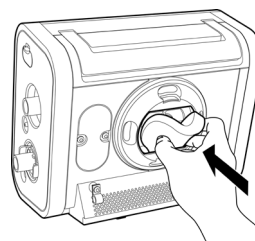
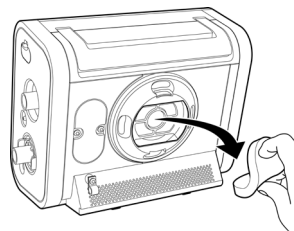
The air-inlet foam filter is the gray foam located on the back panel. It protects Trilogy EV300 from dirt and dust. This filter is for single patient use. Only use Philips Respironics-supplied filters. Ventilation can continue while you are replacing the filter.

Frequency: In the clinical environment, rinse daily and replace monthly.

Requirements: Replacement filter, water

To rinse the disposable inlet filter:

1. Ensure you have a replacement filter nearby.
2. Pinch the filter and pull it out of the filter cover.
3. Insert the clean replacement filter into the filter cover. Ensure it is positioned securely.
4. Visually inspect the filter you just removed from the device.
5. If it is damaged, discard it according to your local regulations. Otherwise, proceed to the next step.
6. Rinse the dirty filter in clear water. Inspect the filter for cleanliness and repeat previous step until the filter is clean.
7. Allow the filter to air dry completely before reinstalling it.



9. Service and Maintenance

9.1 Service Overview

Repairs and maintenance must be performed by service personnel only. Unauthorized repairs and adjustments could cause death or injury, invalidate the warranty, or result in costly device damage.

The device should be sent for preventative maintenance every four years. Trilogy EV300's expected service life is 10 years.

9.2 Disposal

Dispose according to local regulations. If you need help, contact customer service.

9.3 Daily Maintenance

Conduct the following maintenance every day.

- Visually inspect accessories for damage or signs of wear. Discontinue use and replace if damaged.
- When using the FiO₂ sensor, to maintain accuracy, calibrate the FiO₂ sensor daily. See "FiO₂ Sensor Calibration."

9.4 Replacing the Air-Inlet Foam Filter

The air-inlet foam filter is the gray foam located on the back panel. It protects Trilogy EV300 from dirt and dust. Replace if it becomes damaged.

In the clinical environment, replace monthly and between patients. Only use Philips Respironics-supplied filters. Dispose according to local regulations. Ventilation can continue while you are replacing the filter.



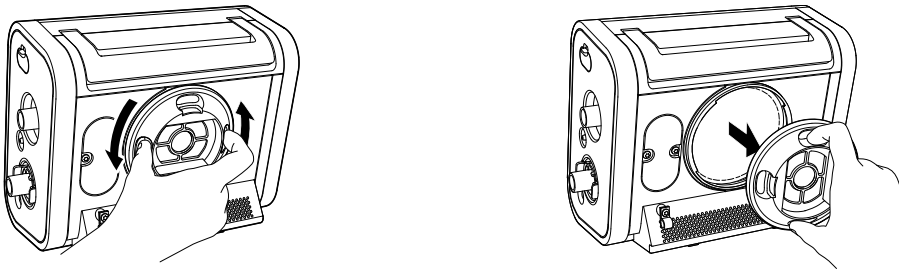
To replace the disposable inlet filter:

1. Be sure you have a replacement filter nearby.
2. Pinch the filter and pull it out of the filter cover.
3. Insert the clean replacement filter into the filter cover. Be sure it is positioned securely.

9.5 Replacing the Particulate Filter

The particulate filter is an optional filter that protects Trilogy EV300 from dirt and dust. Replace the particulate filter monthly and between patients. Ventilation can continue while you replace the filter.

Twist the filter cover counterclockwise a quarter of a turn, and then pull straight out to remove.



Twist the filter counterclockwise a quarter of a turn, and then pull straight out to remove.



Place a new filter onto the bayonet mount then twist the filter clockwise a quarter of a turn while pressing in to secure.



Replace the filter cover and turn clockwise to secure.

9.6 Preparing the Device for Use by a Different Patient

If you are setting up a prescription for a different patient, before creating a new prescription, tap the New Patient button to reset to the default prescription settings, reset the patient operational hours to zero, and clear all existing patient data, including the following: event and alarm logs, circuit calibration, and historical data. Additionally, tapping New Patient deletes all Bluetooth settings.

Before using Trilogy EV300 with a different patient, perform the following actions. Cleaning and disinfection instructions are in “Cleaning and Disinfection.”

- ☐ Replace the circuit, including the bacterial filter.
- ☐ Clean and disinfect the exterior surface.
- ☐ Clean the detachable battery.
- ☐ Replace the air inlet foam filter and particulate filter.
- ☐ Clear the old patient data from the system: In the **Home** window, tap the **New Patient** button.
- ☐ If you used an external storage device that contains patient information, such as a USB flash drive, be sure you delete that data by reformatting the storage device.

10. Accessories

10.1 Overview

To prevent adverse performance, use Trilogy EV300 only with accessories intended for use with this device, including circuits, patient monitors and power accessories. For a list of accessories, see the Trilogy EV300 accessories guide at:

www.philips.com/EV300

You must be sure accessories and parts are compatible before you connect a patient to the device.

10.2 Portability and Accessories

When using a roll stand, confirm that the ventilator is adequately secured. See the accessory's instructions for use.

10.3 Power Accessories

For instructions, see "Power Management."

10.4 Patient Circuits and Circuit Accessories

For instructions on attaching circuits to the ventilator, see "Device Setup." For information about the circuit you are using, see the accessory's instructions for use. For a list of compatible circuits and circuit accessories, see the Trilogy EV300 accessories guide at:

www.philips.com/EV300

10.4.1 Circuit Principles

When adding any components to the breathing system, the flow resistance and dead space of the added components such as humidifiers, speaking valves, Heat Moisture Exchangers (HMEs) and filters should be carefully considered in relation to the potential for adverse effects on the patient's ventilator management and device alarms. If a bacterial filter is exposed to nebulization or humidification, to prevent increased resistance or blockage, the bacterial filter requires replacement more frequently.

10.4.2 Circuit Requirements

For safe operation, the ventilator requires a patient circuit and filter(s) that meet the following requirements.

Inspiratory/expiratory resistance: up to 5 cmH₂O at:

- 30 L/min for adult (20 to 22 mm) circuit size
- 15 L/min for pediatric (14 to 16 mm) or pediatric/adult (19 mm) circuit size
- 2.5 L/min for infant (9 to 13 mm) circuit size

Compliance: up to 4 ml/cmH₂O

10.4.3 Leak Compensation

Passive circuits:

The ventilator provides leak compensation for inhaled and exhaled tidal volume measurements. This includes compensation for intentional leak in the patient circuit and leaks that occur at the patient interface, such as cuff leak or mask leak.

Active flow and dual limb circuits:

The ventilator compensates for leak that occurs between the ventilator and the external flow sensor. Leaks that are downstream of the external flow sensor are not compensated for in measurement of inhaled or exhaled tidal volume. Leaks that are downstream of the external flow sensor are compensated for triggering.

Active PAP circuits:

Leak compensation is not available.

10.4.4 Tracheostomy Adapters and Connectors

For disposable tracheostomy adapters and connectors, inspect for damage or wear. Replace weekly or as needed to prevent accumulation of secretion.

10.4.5 Humidification Accessories

For humidification accessories, see the accessory's instructions for use.

10.4.6 Exhalation Accessories

For exhalation accessories, see the accessory's instructions for use.

10.4.7 Flow Sensors

For flow sensors, see the accessory's instructions for use.

10.4.8 Circuit Filters

For circuit filters, see the filter's instructions for use.

10.5 Monitors and Sensors

10.5.1 FiO₂ Sensor

To use the FiO₂ sensor, follow the instructions provided with the sensor. For instructions on using and calibrating this sensor, see “FiO₂ Sensor Calibration.”

10.5.1.1 Intended Use

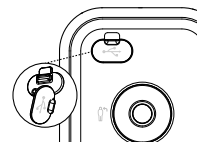
The Philips Respironics FiO₂ Sensor is an oxygen sensor device that is used for measuring the fraction of inspired oxygen (oxygen concentration in a percentage).

For instructions on using and calibrating this sensor, see “FiO₂ Sensor Calibration.”

10.5.2 External Pulse Oximeter and Sensors

Attach the external pulse oximeter to either USB port on the ventilator. Attach a sensor to the pulse oximeter. Follow the instructions provided with the sensor.

When you connect the external pulse oximeter, the monitored parameters pane will show the SpO₂ and pulse rate values during standby and while delivering therapy.



10.5.3 Capnography

Capnography requires the Mainstream CO₂ sensor, a compatible airway adapter, and a USB to CO₂ monitor adapter cable. For information, see the instructions that accompany each of these accessories.

To connect the CO₂ sensor:

1. Connect the CO₂ sensor to the adapter cable.
2. Plug the adapter cable into one of Trilogy EV300's USB ports.
3. Connect the airway adapter to the sensor. See the sensor instructions.
4. Install the sensor at the proximal end of the circuit. See the sensor instructions.
5. Allow two minutes for the sensor to begin providing data in the Monitored Parameters Pane.

6. Perform an “adapter zero” to establish a baseline CO₂ level. See “CO₂ Sensor Adapter Zero.” Perform an “adapter zero” if you switch from one type of airway adapter to another or when indicated by the system alarm.

10.6 Filters

10.6.1 Air-Inlet Foam Filter

The air-inlet foam filter protects Trilogy EV300 from dirt and dust. This filter is for single patient use. For instructions on rinsing the filter, see “Cleaning and Disinfection.” For instructions on replacing the filter, see “Service and Maintenance.”

10.6.2 Particulate Filter

The particulate filter is an optional filter that protects Trilogy EV300 from dirt and dust. This filter is for single patient use. For instructions on replacing the filter, see “Service and Maintenance.”

10.7 Oxygen

To connect high pressure oxygen, see “High Pressure Oxygen.”

To connect low flow oxygen, see “Low Flow Oxygen.”

10.8 Communications Cables

To connect a communications cable, use either of the USB ports. For more information, see the cable's instructions for use.

10.9 Remote Alarm and Nurse Call

You can use a Philips Respironics remote alarm or institutional nurse call system with your device. Use the remote alarm or nurse call connector (RJ9) on the Utility panel to connect a remote alarm or nurse call system. The remote alarm or nurse call system should be visible and audible to the caregiver at all times. See the remote alarm or cable's instructions for further information. For a list of accessories, see the Trilogy EV300 accessories guide.

If you are using a remote alarm or nurse call system, fully test the system before starting ventilation.

- Verify that you can hear the ventilator's audible alarms on the remote alarm or nurse call system.
- If using a remote alarm, be sure the remote alarm signals when you disconnect the remote alarm cable from the ventilator or the remote alarm. To use the alarm and for further testing instructions, see the remote alarm's instructions.
- If using a normally closed nurse call system, be sure the nurse call system signals when you disconnect the nurse call cable from the ventilator or the nurse call system. Philips Respironics strongly recommends that you use a normally closed nurse call system.

Warnings:

- Do not rely solely on the audible indicator provided by a remote alarm or nurse call system as the primary indicator of the operating state of the device or of patient events. Use of a remote alarm or nurse call system should be considered a backup to the ventilator's primary alarm system. The remote alarm or nurse call system is for use only in a medically supervised environment.
- If you are using a nurse call system, Philips Respironics strongly recommends that you use a normally closed nurse call system. Only a normally closed system will alarm if the nurse call cable becomes disconnected. A normally open system will not alarm.
- Be sure that the nurse call systems used do not exceed 42.4VAC peak or 60VDC under normal operating conditions.

10.10 USB Flash Drive

The USB flash drive (removable storage) included with your device can be used to import and export data. See "Data Transfer."

11. Power Management

11.1 Overview

Trilogy EV300 can operate on AC (wall outlet) or DC (battery) power from several sources. Sources are listed in descending priority below.

1. AC Power, see “AC Power” below.
2. External battery (DC) such as a vehicle battery – requires an external battery cable, see “External Battery” below.
3. Detachable battery (DC), see “Detachable Battery.”
4. Internal battery (DC), see “Internal Battery.”

11.2 AC Power

AC power has the highest priority. When AC power is present, the device uses that power to run the device and to charge the detachable and internal batteries.

To use AC power, follow these steps.

1. Plug the socket end of the AC power cord into the power inlet on the device.
2. Attach the retention clip to the cord and screw the clip into the back panel of the device.
3. Plug the pronged end of the power cord into an electrical outlet that is not controlled by a wall switch.
4. Verify the device is using AC power. You should see the green LED light next to the power button appear. If you do not see this light, contact customer service.
5. Periodically inspect the power cord for damage or signs of wear. Discontinue use and replace if damaged.

To remove AC power, disconnect the AC power cord from the electrical outlet.

11.3 External Battery

You can use an external DC power source, such as a vehicle battery, to power the device. The external battery can charge the internal and detachable batteries. You must use a compatible battery cable to connect the battery to the device. Do not use any other cable or improper operation of the device may occur. For a list of accessories, see the Trilogy EV300 accessories guide at:

www.philips.com/EV300

For complete instructions, see the battery cable’s accompanying documents. The external battery will power the device when it is disconnected from AC power.

Verify that the external battery is set up correctly. You should see the external battery icon appear in the Battery Power Meter on the Status Bar.

11.4 Detachable Battery

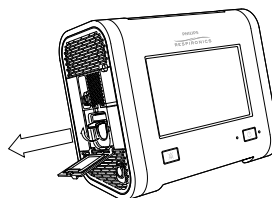
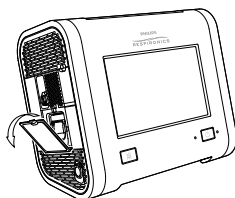
The detachable battery can power the device when disconnected from AC or external battery power. Use only the Philips Respironics Trilogy EV300-series Detachable Battery Pack.

Battery operating time depends on device usage. The operating time shown on the device is only an estimate of the actual remaining power.

The battery includes an LED charge meter. To view the percentage of charge, remove the battery and press the button on the battery. Green lights appear to indicate how much charge remains in the battery.

To remove the detachable battery: open the detachable battery access door. Lift the battery handle and pull the battery to remove it from the battery bay.

To replace the detachable battery: open the detachable battery access door. Slide the battery into the battery bay until you hear a click.



Verify the detachable battery is installed correctly. You should see the detachable battery icon appear in the Battery Power Meter on the Status Bar.

11.4.1 Warnings

- Do not disassemble or open, drop, crush, bend or deform, puncture, or shred the detachable battery pack.
- If the detachable battery is dropped or mishandled, discontinue use of the battery and contact Philips Respironics Customer Service.
- Do not modify or remanufacture, attempt to insert foreign objects into the battery, immerse or expose the battery to water or other liquids, or expose the battery to fire, excessive heat, or put the battery in a microwave oven.
- Only use the battery for the systems for which it is specified.
- Only use the battery with a charging system specified by the manufacturer/supplier.
- Do not allow metallic or conductive objects to contact battery terminals, which may result in a short-circuit.

- Replace the battery only with another battery specified by the manufacturer. Use of an unqualified battery may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage, or other hazard.
- Improper battery use may result in a fire, explosion, or other hazard.

11.4.2 Cautions

- Do not expose the battery to temperatures outside of the specifications. This may increase the risk of fire or damage the battery.
- Do not leave the battery in a fully discharged state for an extended time.
- The service life of the detachable battery will decrease depending on the battery age, the number of charge-discharge cycles, and operation or storage at higher temperatures.
- As with most rechargeable lithium-ion batteries, exposing the battery to elevated temperatures for extended times reduces the amount of power that battery can store. For example, a battery may be stored for up to a year at 25° C without experiencing a significant impact to the amount of power that it can store. After being stored for a year at 60° C, that same battery may lose as much as 30% of the power it can store.

11.4.3 Detachable Battery Specifications

Voltage:	14.4 to 14.8 VDC
Rated capacity:	80 Wh minimum
Chemistry type:	Lithium-Ion
Charge operating temperature:	0° C to 45° C
Storage temperature:	-20° C to 60° C
Relative humidity (operating and storage):	5 to 93% (non-condensing)

11.5 Internal Battery

Internal battery power is the lowest priority power source.

The internal battery appears in the Battery Power Meter on the Status Bar. For help, see “Battery Status.”

11.6 Battery Status

The battery power meter appears in the status bar at the bottom of the window. The meter shows the battery status. The In-use Arrow points to the battery in use (if any).

Battery operating time depends on the characteristics of the battery and usage of the device. The capacity of the battery shown on the Battery Power Meter is only an estimate.

During active therapy, tap the power meter to view more details.

- Estimated battery time remaining (for the internal and detachable batteries)
- Estimated remaining battery power shown as a percent of total capacity (for the external battery)

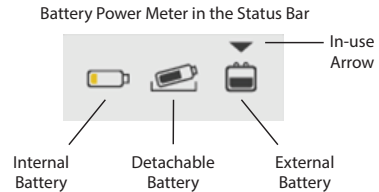
You can also view battery status in the Monitoring Window: see “Monitoring Window.”

For a list of power icons, see “Power Icons.”

11.7 Power Loss

Several alarms are related to power and power loss. For help on these alarms and test procedures, see “Alarms and System Messages.”

If all power sources are lost during active therapy, as soon as a power source is connected, the device will begin to deliver therapy again. All alarm settings are retained and restored.



11.8 Power Icons

The following is a list of power icons that appear in the status bar.

Note: The charge icon ⚡ appears on top of the power icon when the internal or detachable battery is charging.

Estimated capacity	Internal Battery	Detachable Battery	External Battery
81-100% capacity			
61-80% capacity			
41-60% capacity			
21-40% capacity			
1-20% capacity			
Low power remaining			
Nearly depleted			
0% capacity or failed			

12. Connectivity

12.1 Overview

You can connect this device to external systems through USB or wireless connections.

12.2 External Systems

Use either USB port to connect to external systems such as hospital systems.

12.3 Wireless

This device has Bluetooth SmartReady wireless technology, which includes Bluetooth Classic and Bluetooth Low Energy. Bluetooth allows Trilogy EV300 to communicate with a compatible Bluetooth device approved by Philips Respironics. Bluetooth functionality may not be present in all models.

Warning: Other equipment may interfere with this device, even if the other equipment complies with CISPR 8 emission requirements.

Warning: The Health Industry Manufacturers Association recommends that a minimum separation of six inches be maintained between a wireless phone and a pacemaker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. The Trilogy EV300 on-board Bluetooth communication should be considered a wireless phone in this regard.

QoS: Wireless Quality of Service (QoS) refers to the necessary level of service and performance needed for the wireless functions of the device. It involves parameters such as reliability of data transmission, effective transfer rate, error rate, and mechanisms to define priority levels for time-critical signals.

Bluetooth QoS: Bluetooth uses frequency hopping, channel coding, and error correction to address interference and is designed to operate with other devices that occupy the same spectrum. In addition to the measures defined in the Bluetooth standard, the Trilogy EV300 radio incorporates other methods to minimize the likelihood of QoS problems. These include:

- Data sent between the ventilator and any external devices uses additional checksum verification to ensure that data is correctly received without errors.
- The ventilator is a portable device and will not always be near the external gateway device when the ventilator is ready to transfer data. The system is designed to take this into account. The system can tolerate latency and will keep retrying if something occurs that prevents successful data transfer. This retry mechanism happens automatically and requires no intervention by the user. The external Bluetooth gateway device attempts to reconnect once per minute until it successfully connects and the data transfer is complete.

If the device's display is erratic, relocate the device to an area away from electronic equipment (such as cellular phones, cordless phones, computers, TVs, electronic games, or hair dryers).

If Bluetooth communication issues are encountered, check to see if other nearby devices are operating in the immediate vicinity at the same 2.4 GHz frequency as the ventilator Bluetooth radio. These devices include:

- Other Bluetooth devices
- Wi-Fi devices
- Microwave ovens

Portable and mobile RF communications equipment should be used no closer to any part of the device, including cables, than the recommended 30 cm separation distance.

12.4 Connectivity Actions

To access the Bluetooth window:

1. In the menu bar, tap the **Options** icon. 
2. In the **Options** window, tap **Device Options**.
3. In the **Device Options** window, tap **Bluetooth**.

To enable Bluetooth connections, In the **Bluetooth** window, in the **Bluetooth** section, tap **On**.

To view connection status, the Bluetooth window contains a connection status indicator, including the MAC address of the current or most recently connected device.

13. Technical Data

13.1 Overview

This chapter contains technical data and specifications.

13.2 Specifications

13.2.1 Ventilation types and modes

- A/C-PC: Assisted control (pressure control)
- A/C-VC: Assisted control (volume control)
- CPAP: Continuous positive airway pressure
- PSV: Pressure support ventilation
- S/T: Spontaneous/timed ventilation
- SIMV-PC: Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (pressure control)
- SIMV-VC: Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (volume control)
- AVAPS-AE

13.2.2 Controls

AVAPS with passive circuit	PSV, S/T, and A/C-PC modes only
Tidal volume	35 – 2000 ml
Breath rate	0 – 80 BPM
PEEP	0 – 35 cm H ₂ O for active exhaust circuits 3 – 25 cm H ₂ O for passive circuits
EPAP/CPAP	3 – 25 cm H ₂ O
IPAP	3 – 60 cm H ₂ O
Pressure support/pressure control	0 – 60 cm H ₂ O, patient pressure limited to 60 cm H ₂ O
Inspiratory time	0.3 – 5.0s, constrained to prohibit an inverse I:E ratio
Rise time	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
Triggering and cycling	Off, Auto-Trak, Sensitive Auto-Trak, and Flow Trigger
Flow trigger sensitivity	0.5 – 9 L/min
Flow cycle sensitivity	10% – 90% of peak flow
Flow pattern	Square, Ramp
FiO ₂	21% – 100%
Inspiratory time min/max	0.3 – 3.0 sec
Backup ventilation	On – Off

13.2.3 Measured and Displayed Patient Parameters

Tidal volume (V _{ti} or V _{te})	0 to 2000 ml in increments of 1 ml
Minute ventilation (MinVent)	0 to 30 L/min in increments of 0.1 L/min
Leak	0 to 200 L/min in increments of 0.1 L/min
Respiratory rate (RR)	0 to 90 BPM in increments of 1 BPM
Peak inspiratory flow (PIF)	0 to 200 L/min in increments of 0.1 L/min
Peak inspiratory pressure (PIP)	0 to 90 cm H ₂ O in increments of 0.1 cm H ₂ O
Mean airway pressure	0 to 90 cm H ₂ O in increments of 0.1 cm H ₂ O
Percentage spontaneous triggered breaths (%Spont Trig)	0 to 100% in increments of 1%
I:E ratio	9.9:1 to 1:9.9
Dynamic compliance (Dyn C)	1 to 100 ml/cm H ₂ O in increments of 1 ml/cm H ₂ O
Dynamic resistance (Dyn R)	5 to 200 cm H ₂ O/l/sec in increments of 1 cm H ₂ O/l/sec
Dynamic plateau pressure (Dyn Pplat)	0 to 90 cm H ₂ O in increments of 1 cm H ₂ O
Auto-PEEP	0 to 20 cm H ₂ O in increments of 1 cm H ₂ O
FiO ₂ with FiO ₂ sensor	21% to 100% in increments of 1%
SpO ₂ with pulse oximeter accessory	0 to 100% in increments of 1%
Pulse rate with pulse oximeter accessory	18 to 321 beats per minute in increments of 1 beat per minute See "Pulse Oximeter."
EtCO ₂ with CO ₂ accessory	0 to 150 mmHg in increments of 1 mmHg See "EtCO ₂ (with Mainstream CO ₂ sensor)."
ml/kg	Calculated based on the entered patient weight or the calculated IBW and the measured V _{ti} .

13.2.4 Environmental

Operating	• Temperature: 0° C to 40° C, 32° F to 104° F • Relative humidity: 5% to 90% RH, non-condensing • Atmospheric pressure: 62 to 106 kPa • Altitude: approximately -384 m to 3954 m (-1,261 to 12,971 ft) • Battery charging temperature: 5° C to 40° C, 32° F to 104° F
Transient operating temperature, excluding high pressure oxygen blending	-20° C to 50° C, -4° F to 122° F
Storage	• Temperature: -25° C to 70° C, -13° F to 158° F • Relative humidity: 5% to 93% RH, non-condensing

13.2.5 Physical

Weight	6.3 Kg (13.8 lbs)
Size	• 19.3cm D x 28.6 cm W x 24.5 cm H • 7.6" D x 11.25" W x 9.65" H
Screen dimensions	8", 20.32 cm
Ingress protection	IP22: protection against finger-sized objects and protected against dripping water when tilted up to 15 degrees.
IEC 60601-1 classification	Type of protection against electric shock: Class II equipment Degree of protection against electric shock – type BF applied part
Composition	This device does not contain natural latex rubber or dry natural rubber.
Expected service life	10 years
Internal memory capacity	2 Gb
Mode of operation	Continuous
Maximum limited pressure	90 cm H ₂ O
Minimum limited pressure	Active circuits: 0 cm H ₂ O Passive circuits: 3 cm H ₂ O
Applied parts	• Pulse oximeter • Breathing circuit • Components added to the breathing circuit including: flow sensor, flow sensor cable, and CO₂ accessory and cable

13.2.6 Electrical

AC input voltage	100V – 240V, 50/60 Hz, 1.7-0.6 A
DC input voltage	12/24V 6.5A
Internal and detachable Li-ion batteries	15 hours' nominal total run time per method in IEC 80601-2-72 (7.5 hours each battery) Charge time for detachable and internal battery: • From 0% to 80%: 2.5 hours • From 0% to 100%: 3.5 hours
Degree of protection against electric shock	Type BF applied part

13.2.7 Audio

Alarm sound pressure level	53.9 dBA to 85.5 dBA over the setting range of low, medium, and high
Sound pressure level	≤43.7 dBA <i>Ventilator, circuit and exhalation device measured according to ISO 80601-2-12</i>
Sound power level	≤51.6 dBA <i>Ventilator, circuit and exhalation device measured according to ISO 80601-2-12</i>

13.2.8 Oxygen

Low flow	0 to 30 L/min; maximum 10 psi (dry oxygen)
High pressure	280 to 600 kPa (41 to 87 psi) (dry oxygen)
Ventilator response to a 21 -90% increase in oxygen concentration	< 30 seconds

13.2.9 Control Accuracy

Pressure	± (2 cm H ₂ O + 4% of the setting)
Tidal volume	± (4 ml + 15% of setting)
FiO ₂	± 5 % FiO ₂

13.2.10 Monitored Parameter Accuracy

Airway pressure	± (2 cm H ₂ O + 4% of actual)
Tidal volume	± (4 ml + 15% of actual) for volumes ≥ 35 ml ± 10 ml for volumes < 35 ml
FiO ₂	± (2.5% FiO ₂ + 2.5% of actual reading) within a 24-hour sensor calibration period, or a change in altitude Measurement is not automatically compensated for changes in altitude. Response time: < 11 seconds
EtCO ₂	See “EtCO ₂ (with Mainstream CO ₂ sensor).”
SpO ₂ and pulse rate	See “Pulse Oximeter.”

13.2.11 **Wireless**

Bluetooth	
Operating frequency range	2402-2480 MHz
Channel bandwidth	1 MHz/2 MHz
Maximum output power	15.6 dBm
Modulation	GFSK, Pi/4 DQPSK, 8DQPSK
Range	20 m (66 ft)
Near-field communication (NFC)	
Operating frequency	13.56 MHz
Receiving section bandwidth	1.4 MHz
Maximum output power	58.3 dBuV/m@3m
Modulation	ASK, OOK
Range	2 cm (1 in)
Wi-Fi	
Operating frequency range	2412-2472 MHz
Channel bandwidth	20 MHz/40 MHz
Maximum output power	19.6 dBm
Modulation	DSSS, OFDM, DBPSK, DQPSK, CCK, 16-QAM
Security	WPA2
Range	30m (98 ft)

13.2.12 EtCO₂ (with Mainstream CO₂ sensor)

Displayed EtCO ₂	• Upon connection, allow up to two minutes for data to appear. • Displayed value is the peak of the expired CO₂ waveform, updated on each breath. • Displayed EtCO₂ waveform sample rate is 10 Hz. • Measurement automatically compensates for changes in altitude. • Accuracy is not impacted by the respiration rate. • If breathing is not detected, then no value appears.
Accuracy	0 – 40 mmHg: ± 3 mmHg
	41 – 70 mmHg: ± 5% of reading
	71 – 100 mmHg: ± 8% of reading
	101 – 150 mmHg: ± 10% of reading
Stability	Short Term Drift: Drift over four hours shall not exceed 0.8 mmHg maximum. Long Term Drift: Accuracy specification will be maintained over a 120-hour period.
Total system response time	<2 seconds

13.2.13 Pulse Oximeter

Displayed Oxygen Saturation Range (SpO ₂):	0 to 100% with a resolution of 1%
Displayed pulse rate range:	18 to 321 beats per minute with a resolution of 1
SpO ₂ and pulse rate accuracy:	See the sensor instructions.
Data update period:	Every second
Data averaging:	4 beat average, updated every second

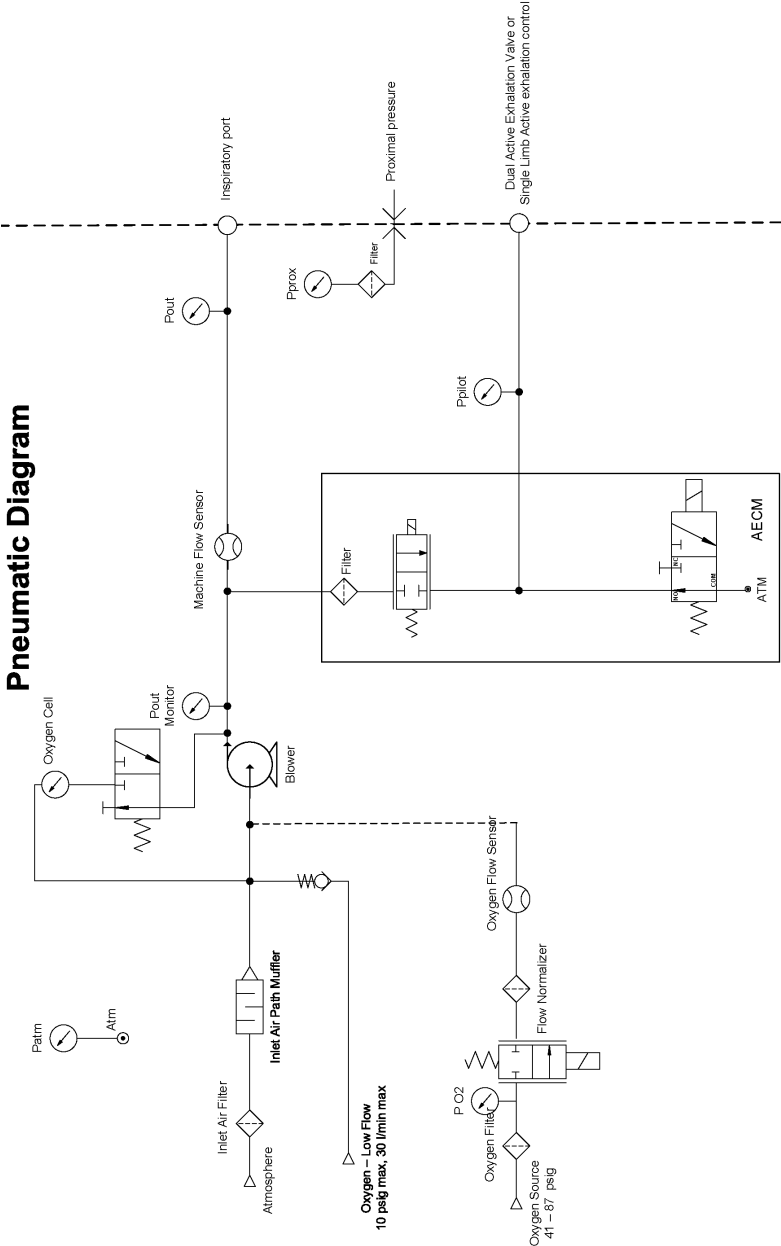
All flows and volumes are expressed in BTPS.

Measurement uncertainty for control and performance specifications

The stated tolerances account for the measurement uncertainty of the test equipment used to verify performance:

- Pressure: ± 0.75% cm H₂O
- Tidal Volume: ±2 ml
- Oxygen: ±1% FiO₂

13.3 Pneumatic Diagram



14. Regulatory Information

14.1 Standards Compliance

This device conforms to the following standards:

14.1.1 General

IEC 60601-1-1 Medical electrical equipment. Part 1-1: General requirements for safety. Collateral standard: Safety requirements for medical electrical systems

14.1.2 Collateral

IEC 60601-1-2 Medical electrical equipment. Part 1-2: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance. Collateral Standard: Electromagnetic disturbances. Requirements and tests

14.1.3 Particular

Device essential performance is specified in each of the following standards:

- ISO 80601-2-12: Medical electrical equipment. Part 2-12: Particular requirements for basic safety and essential performance of critical care ventilators
- ISO 80601-2-55 Medical electrical equipment. Part 2-55: Particular requirements for the basic safety and essential performance of respiratory gas monitors
- ISO 80601-2-61 Medical electrical equipment. Part 2-61: Particular requirements for basic safety and essential performance of pulse oximeter equipment

14.1.4 Wireless communication

- Bluetooth Core Specification version 4.1
- ISO/IEC 18092:2013: Information technology. Telecommunications and information exchange between systems. Near Field Communication. Interface and Protocol (NFCIP-1)
- ISO IEC 21481 ed 2.0: Information technology. Telecommunications and information exchange between systems. Near Field Communication Interface and Protocol -2 (NFCIP-2)
- ISO/IEC 14443 ed 2.0: Identification cards. Contactless integrated circuit cards. Proximity cards.
- WLAN Standard: IEEE 802.11 (2012) b/g/n: Information technology. Telecommunications and information exchange between systems. Local and metropolitan area networks. Specific requirements. Part 11: Wireless LAN Medium Access Control (MAC) and Physical Layer (PHY) Specifications

14.2 EMC Information

This ventilator generates audible and visual alarms to alert you if it is not able to provide ventilation or if external monitoring is lost during an EMC disturbance.

Warnings:

- Avoid using this equipment adjacent to or stacked with other equipment because it could result in improper operation. Although the other equipment may comply with EMC standard requirements, interference can occur. If such use is necessary, observe this equipment and the other equipment to verify that both are operating normally.
- This device shall not be used near active high frequency (HF) surgical equipment, medical devices such as X-ray devices and diathermy, or in an RF shielded room of medical equipment or system for magnetic resonance imaging, where the intensity of electromagnetic (EM) disturbances is high.
- This device shall not be used near RFID or electromagnetic security systems.
- The use of accessories, transducers and/or cables other than those specified, with the exception of those sold by the manufacturer as replacement parts for internal components, may result in increased emissions or decreased immunity of the equipment or system.

14.2.1 Guidance and Manufacturer's Declaration - Electromagnetic Emissions

This device is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The user of this device should make sure it is used in such an environment.

Emissions Test	Compliance	Electromagnetic Environment - Guidance
RF emissions CISPR 11 Industrial, scientific and medical equipment. Radio-frequency disturbance characteristics. Limits and methods of measurement	Group 1	The device uses RF energy only for its internal function. Therefore, its RF emissions are very low and are not likely to cause any interference in nearby electronic equipment.
RF emissions CISPR 11	Class B	The device is suitable for use in all establishments, including domestic establishments and those directly connected to the public low-voltage power supply network.
Harmonic emissions IEC 61000-3-2 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Part 3-2: Limits. Limits for harmonic current emissions (equipment input current smaller than or equal to 16 A per phase)	Class A	
Voltage fluctuations/Flicker emissions IEC 61000-3-3 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - Part 3-3: Limits - Limitation of voltage changes, voltage fluctuations and flicker in public low-voltage supply systems, for equipment with rated current ≤ 16 A per phase and not subject to conditional connection	Complies	
Emission of Radio Frequency Energy RTCA/DO-160G Section 21	Category M	This device is suitable for use on board commercial airplanes inside passenger cabin.

14.2.2 Guidance and Manufacturer's Declaration - Electromagnetic Immunity

This device is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The user of this device should make sure it is used in such an environment.

Immunity Test	IEC 60601 Test Level	Compliance Level	Electromagnetic Environment - Guidance
IEC 61000-4-2 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Part 4-2: Testing and measurement techniques. Electrostatic discharge immunity test	±8 kV contact ±2 kV, ±4 kV, ±8 kV, and ±15 kV air	±8 kV contact ±2 kV, ±4 kV, ±8 kV, and ±15 kV air	Floors should be wood, concrete, or ceramic tile. If floors are covered with synthetic material, the relative humidity should be at least 35%.
IEC 61000-4-4 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Part 4-4: Testing and measurement techniques. Electrical fast transient/burst immunity test	±2 kV for power supply lines ±1 kV for input-output lines	±2 kV for supply mains ±1 kV for input/output lines	Mains power quality should be that of a typical home or hospital environment.
IEC 61000-4-5 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - Part 4-5 Testing and measurement techniques. Surge immunity test	±1 kV line to ground ±2 kV line to ground	±1 kV line to line N/A - this Class II device does not connect to earth ground	Mains power quality should be that of a typical home or hospital environment.
IEC 61000-4-11 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Part 4-11: Testing and measurement techniques. Voltage dips, short interruptions and voltage variations immunity tests	0% U _T 0.5 cycle at 45 degree increments 0% U _T 1 cycle 70% U _T 25 cycles (30 cycles if US) 0% U _T 5 sec	0% U _T 0.5 cycle at 45 degree increments 0% U _T 1 cycle 70% U _T 25 cycles (30 cycles if US) 0% U _T 5 sec	Mains power quality should be that of a typical home or hospital environment. If the user of the device requires continued operation during power mains interruptions, it is recommended that the device be powered from an uninterruptible power supply or a battery.

Immunity Test	IEC 60601 Test Level	Compliance Level	Electromagnetic Environment - Guidance
IEC 61000-4-8 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Part 4-8: Testing and measurement techniques. Power frequency (50/60 Hz) magnetic field immunity test	30 A/m	30 A/m	Power frequency magnetic fields should be at levels characteristic of a typical location in a typical hospital or home environment.
NOTE: UT is the AC mains voltage prior to application of the test level.			

14.2.3 Guidance and Manufacturer's Declaration - Electromagnetic Immunity

This device is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The user of this device should make sure it is used in such an environment.

Immunity Test	IEC 60601 Test Level	Compliance Level	Electromagnetic Environment - Guidance
Conducted RF IEC 61000-4-6 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Part 4-6: Testing and measurement techniques. Immunity to conducted disturbances, induced by radio-frequency fields.	3 Vrms 150 kHz to 80 MHz	3 Vrms 150 kHz to 80 MHz	Portable and mobile RF communications equipment should be used no closer to any part of the device, including cables, than the recommended 30 cm separation distance.
	6 Vrms Amateur Radio & ISM Bands between 150 kHz and 80 MHz	Vrms Amateur Radio & ISM Bands between 150 kHz and 80 MHz	
Radiated RF IEC 61000-4-3 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - Part 4-3: Testing and measurement techniques - Radiated, radio-frequency, electromagnetic field immunity test	10 V/m	10 V/m	Interference may occur in the vicinity of equipment marked with the following symbol: 
	80 MHz to 2.7 GHz		
	Telecommunication frequencies as specified in clause 8.10 of IEC 60601-1-2:2014		
	450, 810, 870, 930, 1720, 1845, 1970, and 2450 MHz at 28 V/m	28 V/m	
	385 MHz at 27 V/m	27 V/m	
	710, 745, 780, 5240, 5500, and 5785 MHz at 9 V/m	9 V/m	

14.3 Wireless

Notices: The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Philips Respironics is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

The Trilogy EV300-series device transmits data between the therapy device and a mobile device, but it does not store any of your personally-identifiable health information. This connection between the therapy device and a mobile device is encrypted.

This device contains a certified Bluetooth/Wi-Fi radio:

- FCC ID (USA): 2AN9Z-1127941BT
- IC ID (Canada): 3234B-1127941BT

Near field communication (NFC) is certified under the following IDs:

- FCC ID (USA): 2AN9Z-1127941
- IC ID (Canada): 3234B-1127941

Use of non-original manufacturer-approved accessories may violate your local RF exposure guidelines and should be avoided.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio, TV reception, or other devices which can be determined by turning the equipment on and off, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna (on the radio, TV, or other device).
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer of the device for help.

14.3.1 ISED License Exemption

This device contains license-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's license-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

14.4 Software Licensing

This product contains software licensed under an open source license. For acknowledgements and license texts, a list can be viewed on the User Interface under Options > Information > Software Licenses. Philips Respironics hereby offers to deliver, upon request, a copy of the complete corresponding source code for the copyrighted open source software packages used in this product for which such delivery is requested by the respective licenses. This offer is valid for as long as the respective licenses require this offer to be valid. To obtain source code, please send your request in English with product type to open.source@philips.com. If you prefer not to use email or if you do not receive confirmation receipt within 2 weeks after mailing to this email address, please write in English to "Open Source Team, Philips Intellectual Property & Standards, High Tech Campus 5, 5656 AE Eindhoven, The Netherlands". If you do not receive timely confirmation of your letter, please send an email to the email address above..

15. Glossary

15.1 Glossary of Terms

The following terms and acronyms appear throughout this manual.

Term	Definition
A/C-PC	Therapy mode: Assist control – assist-control and mandatory breaths with pressure control and optional AVAPS
A/C-VC	Therapy mode: Assist control – assist control and mandatory breaths with volume control
Active Circuit	Circuit that includes an active exhalation device
Apnea Interval	Interval in which the ventilator detects patient-triggered breaths.
Assist-Control Breath	Patient-initiated, time-cycled breath
AVAPS-AE Mode	Therapy mode: Provides variable pressure to achieve a target volume and to reduce airway resistance. Breaths are spontaneous, assist-control, mandatory or auto backup
Auto PEEP	Estimate of the any pressure (above PEEP) that exists in the patient airway at the end of exhalation It is updated at the end of exhalation of every mandatory or assisted (timed-cycled) breath. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the therapy mode is A/C-PC, A/C-VC, SIMV-PC, or SIMV-VC and the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.
Average Total Leak (Leak)	The average flow from the ventilator that did not reach the patient during the previous breath. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the circuit type is passive.
Blower Hours	The total number of hours that the blower has been on over the life of the device. This value helps determine when the ventilator needs to be serviced. You cannot reset this value. It can only be reset by a service center.
BPM	Breaths per minute or beats per minute
BTPS	Body temperature and pressure saturated; A standardization for lung volumes and flows to barometric pressure at sea level, body temperature, and saturated with water vapor reflecting the condition of air in the lung.
CPAP	Therapy mode: Continuous positive airway pressure

Term	Definition
Dyn C	Estimate of the compliance of the pulmonary system (lung and chest wall) in milliliters per cmH_2O, computed on a breath-to-breath basis without requiring a static maneuver. It is updated at the end of exhalation of every mandatory or assisted breath (time cycled), and is displayed as the average over the last three mandatory or assisted breaths. It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the therapy mode is A/C-PC, A/C-VC, SIMV-PC, or SIMV-VC and the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.
Dyn R	Estimate of the airway resistance in $\text{cmH}_2\text{O}/(\text{L/s})$, computed on a breath-to-breath basis without requiring a static maneuver. It is updated at the end of exhalation of every mandatory or assisted (timed cycled) breath, and is displayed as the average over the last three mandatory or assisted breaths. It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the therapy mode is A/C-PC, A/C-VC, SIMV-PC, or SIMV-VC and the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.
Dyn Pplat	Estimate of the maximum alveolar pressure during inspiration in cmH_2O, computed on a breath-to-breath basis without requiring a static maneuver. It is compensated for Auto-PEEP. It is updated at the end of exhalation of every mandatory or assisted (timed cycled) breath. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the therapy mode is A/C-PC, A/C-VC, SIMV-PC, or SIMV-VC and the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.
EPAP	Expiratory positive airway pressure
ESD	Electrostatic discharge

Term	Definition
EtCO ₂	End tidal carbon dioxide. The amount of carbon dioxide at the end of exhalation. No value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the CO₂ sensor does not detect a breath. Upon initially connecting a sensor, allow up to 2 minutes for data to appear. Respiration rate accuracy (as measured by the CO₂ sensor) was verified by using a solenoid test setup to deliver a square wave of known CO₂ concentration to the device. 5% and 10% CO₂ concentrations were used and respiration rate was varied over the range of the device. Pass/fail criteria was a comparison of the respiratory rate output from the sensor to the frequency of the square wave. EtCO₂ measurements at those rates were compared to the CO₂ readings under static flow conditions.
Exhaled tidal volume Vte	The exhaled tidal volume in milliliters, derived from summing the expiratory patient flow. The Vte is updated once per breath. It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the circuit type is passive, active flow, or dual limb.
FiO ₂	Fraction of inspired oxygen (the percentage of oxygen in the air inhaled) It is updated approximately every 300msec. The FiO ₂ measurement does not automatically compensate for changes in altitude.
I:E Ratio	The ratio of inspiratory time to expiratory time on the previous breath expressed as 1:X or X:1 for inverse ratios.
IBW	Estimated ideal body weight
Infant	Full term newborn up to one month in age with mass that is greater than or equal to 2.5 kg.
Inhaled tidal volume Vti	The tidal volume, in milliliters, delivered to the patient. This value is derived from summing the inspiratory patient flow. The Vti is updated once per breath. It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions. This value appears in the displayed parameters pane when the circuit type is active PAP.
Inspiratory time	Length of the inspiratory phase
IPAP	Inspiratory positive airway pressure
L/min	Liters per minute
Leak	See Average Total Leak.
LED	Light emitting diode
Mandatory Breath	A ventilator-initiated, time-cycled breath

Term	Definition
Manometer	Pressure indicator
Mean Airway Pressure (MAP)	The average applied pressure during the breath in cmH_2O , displayed as an average over the previous six breaths. It is updated at the end of each exhalation.
Minute Ventilation (MinVent)	The volume of patient exhaled gas in one minute, based on a six-breath average of exhaled tidal volume (V_{te}) and respiratory rate (BPM). It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions. Minute ventilation is updated at the start of each breath, or after 15 seconds if no breath is detected. For active PAP circuits, the displayed minute ventilation is calculated using the inhaled tidal volume (V_{ti}).
mL/kg	Ratio of V_{ti} of the previous breath to the patient weight, corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions. The weight is entered when the patient type is infant, otherwise the IBW is calculated based on the patient height.
Passive Circuit	A circuit that includes a passive exhalation device.
Peak Inspiratory Flow (PIF)	The maximum inspiratory flow delivered to the patient in L/min. It is corrected to body temperature and pressure saturated (BTPS) conditions and updated once per breath.
Peak Inspiratory Pressure (PIP)	The maximum inspiratory pressure delivered to the patient in cmH_2O , updated once per breath.
PEEP	Positive end expiratory pressure.
Percentage Spontaneous Triggered Breaths (%Spont Trig)	The percentage of breaths that are patient-initiated over the most recent 50 breaths. It is updated once per breath.
Pressure Control (PC)	Pressure applied during inspiration above PEEP for time-cycled breaths
Pressure Support (PS)	Pressure applied during inspiration above PEEP for patient-cycled breaths
PS	Pressure support
PSV	Therapy mode: Pressure support ventilation with optional AVAPS
Pulse Rate (PR)	Number of heartbeats per minute (BPM) measured by pulse oximetry
Ramp	Flow pattern in volume control modes where the airflow starts high and decreases throughout inspiration of the breath. See Square.
Respiratory Rate (RR)	The measured breathing rate of the patient/ventilator in breaths per minute (BPM), based on a six-breath average that includes both patient-triggered and ventilator-triggered breaths. It is updated at the start of every breath, after 15sec, or when the low respiratory rate alarm is annunciated, whichever interval is shorter.

Term	Definition
Rise Time	Time required for the ventilator to change from the expiratory pressure setting to the inspiratory pressure setting when the breath is triggered.
S/T	Therapy mode: Spontaneous/timed ventilation – spontaneous breaths with pressure support, mandatory breaths with pressure control, and optional AVAPS
Sigh	Delivers a periodic, larger volume breath. Settings adjust the frequency and volume. Available only in A/C-VC mode.
SIMV-PC	Therapy mode: Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (pressure control) – spontaneous breaths with pressure support, assist–control breaths and mandatory breaths with pressure control
SIMV-VC	Therapy mode: Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (volume control) – spontaneous breaths with pressure support, assist–control breaths and mandatory breaths with volume control
SpO ₂	Blood oxygen saturation measured by pulse oximetry
Spontaneous Breath	Patient-initiated, patient-cycled breath
Square	Flow pattern in volume control modes where the airflow is generally constant throughout inspiration of the breath. See Ramp.
Tidal Volume	The volume of air passing in and out of the lungs during a breath.
Vte	See <i>exhaled tidal volume</i> .
Vti	See <i>inhaled tidal volume</i> .

Warranty

WARRANTY

Respironics, Inc. (Philips Respironics) warrants that defects in the Product due to faulty materials and workmanship will be repaired or replaced at Respironics' expense if convincing proof of purchase within the Warranty Period (as defined herein) is provided. Philips Respironics warrants that the Product will be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal and proper use in accordance with applicable instructions for a period of two years ("Warranty Period") from the date of shipment by Philips Respironics to the original purchaser. Accessories and replacement parts are not covered under this warranty. However, Philips Respironics warrants that the internal battery in the Product will be free from defects in material and workmanship, under normal and proper use and when correctly maintained, for a period of ninety days from the date of shipment by Philips Respironics to the original purchaser.

Contact our Consumer Care Center at 1-800-682-7664 (North America), outside North America contact your local Respironics, Inc. Consumer Care Center. Internet information: www.philips.com/healthcare (North America) or www.philips.com (outside North America).

LIMITATIONS

If any Product purchased from Philips Respironics fails to conform to the warranties set forth herein during the Warranty Period as determined by Philips Respironics, in its sole discretion, Philips Respironics may discharge its warranty obligation by choosing to repair or replace the Product. This may be accomplished by installing new or remanufactured assemblies or components, or by other repairs deemed appropriate in the sole discretion of Philips Respironics. The choice of repair or replacement by Philips Respironics will be the sole and exclusive remedy of the original purchaser. Philips Respironics reserves the right, in its sole discretion, to refund the purchase price in lieu of repair or replacement of the Product. In no event will Philips Respironics' maximum liability under these warranties exceed the price paid to Philips Respironics by the original purchaser for the Product.

CONDITIONS

This warranty does not cover damage or injury whether to the Product or to personal property or persons caused by accident, misuse, abuse, negligence, failure to install in accordance with Philips Respironics' installation instructions, failure to operate under conditions of normal use and in accordance with the terms of the operating manual and instructions, failure to maintain in accordance with the applicable service manuals, or alteration or any defects not related to materials or workmanship of the Product. This warranty does not cover damage which may occur in shipment and does not apply to the device if dropped, misused, altered or otherwise damaged after shipment. This warranty does not apply to any Product or individual part of a Product that may have been repaired or altered by anyone other than Philips Respironics or an authorized Philips Respironics service center. This warranty does not apply to any Product which is not purchased new.

DISCLAIMERS

EXCEPT AS SET FORTH IN THIS LIMITED WARRANTY, PHILIPS RESPIRONICS MAKES NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, REGARDING THE PRODUCT, ITS QUALITY OR PERFORMANCE. PHILIPS RESPIRONICS SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY AND THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL PHILIPS RESPIRONICS BE LIABLE FOR THE COST OF PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE PRODUCTS OR FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE, EXEMPLARY OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, COMMERCIAL LOSS OR LOST REVENUES), FOR ANY CAUSE OF ACTION, WHETHER IN CONTRACT OR TORT, AND WHETHER OR NOT PHILIPS RESPIRONICS WAS AWARE OR SHOULD HAVE BEEN AWARE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF THESE DAMAGES. EXCEPT FOR THE OBLIGATIONS UNDER THIS LIMITED WARRANTY, PHILIPS RESPIRONICS WILL NOT HAVE ANY OBLIGATION OR LIABILITY FOR ANY OTHER LOSS, DAMAGE OR INJURY RESULTING DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY FROM THE PRODUCT. PURCHASER'S SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR BREACH OF THE WARRANTIES SET FORTH IN THIS DOCUMENT WILL BE AS PROVIDED IN THE PARAGRAPH DESCRIBING LIMITATIONS.

Purchaser is cautioned that no person or entity is authorized to make any warranties on behalf of Philips Respironics and any such alleged warranties are hereby disclaimed by Philips Respironics.



PHILIPS

Trilogy EV300
ventilator

Ordering and
accessories guide



Contents

Ventilator unit	6
Power cords	8
O ₂ hoses	9
Instructions for use	10
Roll stand and accessories	11
Patient circuits	14
Humidification devices	20
Patient interfaces	22
Additional parts and accessories	36
Part number index	39
Alphabetic index	42



Trilogy EV300 ventilator

The Trilogy EV300 ventilator provides invasive and noninvasive, positive-pressure ventilation to pediatric through adult patients with a minimum weight of 2.5 kg. It is an electronically controlled, pneumatic ventilation system with an integrated air compressing system. It is compatible with a range of accessories to provide a variety of therapy modes.



Features

Ventilation

- Invasive and noninvasive volume and pressure modes
- Leak compensation through Auto-Trak, which automatically adjusts trigger and cycle thresholds
- Compatible with patient circuits with passive and active exhalation valves
- Suitable for adult and pediatric patients down to 2.5 kg

Monitoring

- Numeric patient data display
- Digital airway pressure manometer
- Direct, proximal flow and volume measurements when used with active flow circuit
- FiO₂ monitoring
- EtCO₂ with CO₂ accessory
- SpO₂ and pulse rate with pulse oximeter accessory

Electrical and gas supplies

- Internal and external, hot-swappable lithium-ion batteries are standard features
- Integral O₂ blender uses either high-pressure or low-flow O₂ input
- Integral blower

Mounting

- Roll stand with O₂ cylinder holder and O₂ manifold

Accessories

- Compatible with dual- and single-limb circuits
- Compatible with passive circuits, which incorporate exhalation ports, and active circuits, which use exhalation valves

Others

- Compact and lightweight with integrated carrying handle for transport
- Identical user interface, modes, and circuit configurations as its homecare namesake, to facilitate the hospital to home transition
- Remote alarm connectivity

Configuring the Trilogy EV300

Item	Description	Page
1	Ventilator unit	5
2	Power cord*	8
3	O ₂ hose and fitting*	9
4	Instructions for use*	10
5	Roll stand and accessories	11
6	Patient circuit	14
7	Humidification device	20
8	Patient interface	22
9	Additional parts and accessories	36

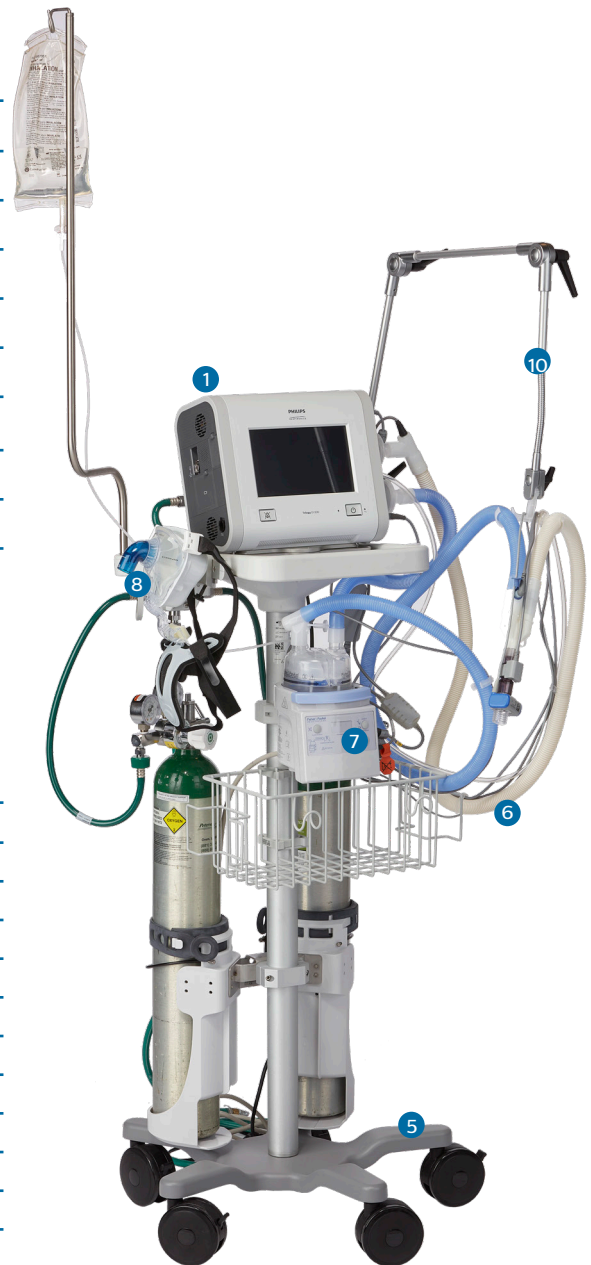
* Included in region-specific ventilator units. If you order the international ventilator unit, order these parts separately.

1 Ventilator unit

Order an international version unless a region-specific version is listed. The contents of the ventilator unit are listed on p. 5.

Description	Order number	Part number
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, international	989805661891	IN2200X15B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, international*	989805667221	FX2200X15B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, Benelux	989805663381	BL2200X15B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, Brazil	989805661841	BR2200X18B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, Canada	989805661851	CA2200X12B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, China	989805661861	CN2200X17B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, Eastern Europe	989805663381	EE2200X15B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, EU	989805663401	EU2200X15B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, EU (non-Bluetooth)	989805663411	EU2200X19
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, France	989805663421	FR2200X14B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, Germany	989805661871	DE2200X13B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, Great Britain	989805663431	GB2200X15B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, Iberia	989805663391	ES2200X15B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, India	989805663441	IA2200X15B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, Italy	989805663451	IT2200X21B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, Korea	989805661911	KR2200X15B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, Nordics	989805663461	ND2200X15B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, Russia	989805663001	RU2200X15B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, Turkey	989805663011	TR2200X15B
Trilogy EV300 ventilator, USA	989805661881	DS2200X11B

* Country exclusions may apply.

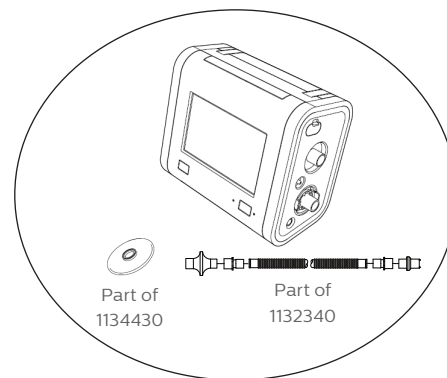


Contents of ventilator unit

International device

The international Trilogy EV300 includes the following.

Description	Order number	Part number
Trilogy EV300 ventilator unit. A DISS male O ₂ fitting comes standard on the ventilator unit. Order an additional, region-specific fitting if needed (p. 9).	—	—
Filter, particulate, each	Part of 989805662301	Part of 1134430
Patient circuit, single-limb, passive, non-heated, single-use, 22-mm ID, each	Part of 989805662101	Part of 1132340
Clamp, power cord (Not shown)	989805662271	1134347

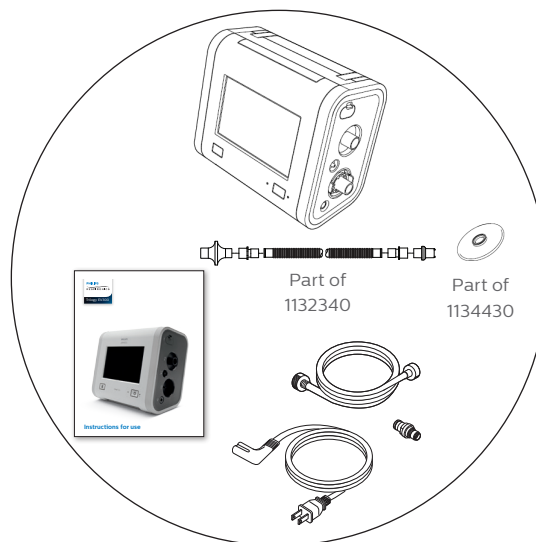


Contents of international EV300

Region-specific device

The region-specific Trilogy EV300 includes the following.

Description	Order number	Part number
Trilogy EV300 ventilator unit	—	—
Filter, particulate, each	Part of 989805662301	Part of 1134430
Patient circuit, single-limb, passive, non-heated, single-use, 22-mm ID, each	Part of 989805662101	Part of 1132340
Clamp, power cord (Not shown)	989805662271	1134347
Power cord	See table on p. 7	
O ₂ hose		
O ₂ fitting		
Instructions for use		
O ₂ input quick connect (Not shown)		
Flex tracheal adapter (Not shown)		



Contents of region-specific Trilogy EV300. Unlabeled parts vary by region. Some versions contain additional parts.

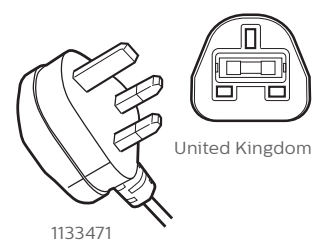
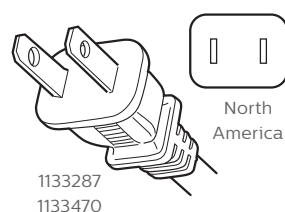
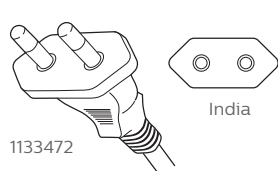
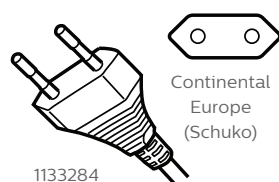
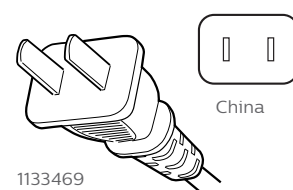
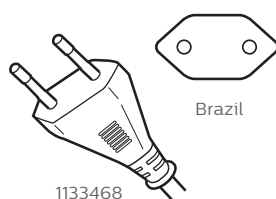
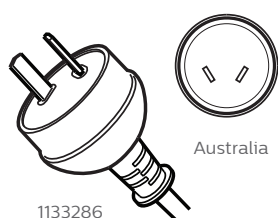
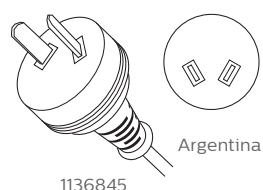
Region-specific ventilator contents

Region	Power cord Order number (Part number) (p. 8)	O ₂ hose Order number (Part number) (p. 9)	O ₂ fitting Order number (Part number) (p. 9)	Instructions for use Order number/ (Part number) (p. 10)	O ₂ input quick- connect (p. 37)	Flex tracheal adapter (p. 17)
Benelux	989805662171 (1133284)	989805613851 (1054836)	989805621691 (1071790)	989805662661 (1143299) 989805662551 (1143288) 989805662491 (1143282)	✓	—
Brazil	989805662211 (1133468)	989805616881 (1001664)	—	989805662701 (1143303)	—	—
Canada	989805662201 (1133287)	989805616201 (1062978)	989805621701 (1071791)	989805662471 (1143280) 989805662561 (1143289)	—	✓
China	989805662221 (1133469)	989805613851 (1054836)	989805621691 (1071790)	989805662781 (1143311)	—	—
Eastern Europe	989805662171 (1133284)	989805613851 (1054836)	989805621691 (1071790)	989805662441 (1143217) 989805662711 (1143304) 989805662731 (1143306)	✓	—
EU	989805662171 (1133284)	989805613851 (1054836)	989805621691 (1071790)	—	✓	—
France	989805662171 (1133284)	989805613851 (1054836)	989805621691 (1071790)	989805662551 (1143288)	✓	—
Germany	989805662171 (1133284)	989805612551 (1054833)	989805621691 (1071790)	989805662491 (1143282)	✓	—
Great Britain	989805662241 (1133471)	989805615961 (1054832)	989805621691 (1071790)	989805662471 (1143280)	✓	—
Iberia	989805662171 (1133284)	989805613851 (1054836)	989805621691 (1071790)	989805662521 (1143285) 989805662691 (1143302)	✓	—
India	989805662251 (1133472)	989805613851 (1054836)	989805621691 (1071790)	989805662471 (1143280)	—	—
Italy	989805662171 (1133284)	989805615971 (1054834)	989805621691 (1071790)	989805662601 (1143293)	✓	—
Korea	989805662171 (1133284)	989805616881 (1001664)	—	989805662621 (1143295)	—	—
Nordics	989805662171 (1133284)	989805615961 (1054832)	989805621691 (1071790)	989805662451 (1143278) 989805662541 (1143287) 989805662671 (1143300) 989805662761 (1143309)	✓	—
Russia	989805662171 (1133284)	989805616881 (1001664)	—	989805662721 (1143305)	✓	—
Turkey	989805662241 (1133471)	989805616881 (1001664)	—	989805662771 (1143310)	✓	—
USA	989805662201 (1133287)	989805616881 (1001664)	—	989805662461 (1143279)	—	✓

2 Power cords

Power cords are 2.44 m (8 ft) long unless otherwise indicated.

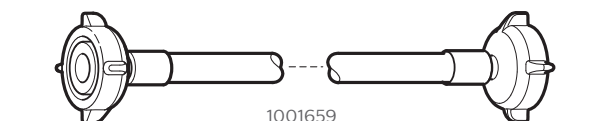
Region	Description	Order number	Part number
Argentina	Power cord, Trilogy EV300, Argentina	989805662381	1136845
Australia, New Zealand	Power cord, Trilogy EV300, Australia	989805662191	1133286
Brazil	Power cord, Trilogy EV300, Brazil	989805662211	1133468
China, Hong Kong, Taiwan	Power cord, Trilogy EV300, China	989805662221	1133469
Armenia, Austria, Azerbaijan, Belgium, Bolivia, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Chile, Croatia, Czech Republic, Denmark, Egypt, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Indonesia, Italy, Latvia, Libya, Lithuania, Macedonia, Mongolia, Morocco, Netherlands, Norway, Peru, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Russia, Serbia, Slovakia, Slovenia, South Korea, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, Tajikistan, Tunisia, Turkey, Turkmenistan, Vietnam	Power cord, Trilogy EV300, continental Europe (Schuko)	989805662171	1133284
India	Power cord, Trilogy EV300, India	989805662251	1133472
USA, Canada, Colombia, Honduras, Mexico, Philippines, Puerto Rico, Thailand	Power cord, Trilogy EV300, North America	989805662201	1133287
	Power cord, Trilogy EV300, North America, 4-m (13-ft)	989805662231	1133470
Bahrain, Ireland, Kenya, Kuwait, Lebanon, Oman, Malaysia, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Singapore, United Arab Emirates, United Kingdom	Power cord, Trilogy EV300, United Kingdom	989805662241	1133471



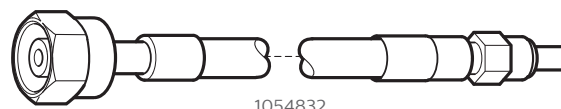
3 O₂ hoses

Hoses are 2.5 m (8 ft) long unless otherwise indicated.

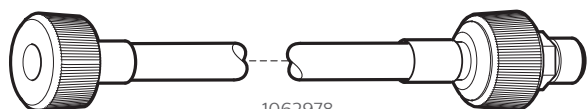
Region	Description	Order number	Part number
Australia, New Zealand	Hose, O ₂ , SIS x SIS, white	989805616871	1001659
Denmark, Finland, Norway, Sweden	Hose, O ₂ , NIST x AGA, white	989805615961	1054832
Canada	Hose, O ₂ , DISS male x DISS female, 3-m (10-ft)	989805616201	1062978
Singapore	Hose, O ₂ , DISS female x DISS female, 3-m (10-ft)	989805612421	1002556
Armenia, Austria, Azerbaijan, Germany, Libya, Mongolia, Russia, Switzerland, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan	Hose, O ₂ , NIST x DIN, white	989805612551	1054833
Bahrain, Egypt, Ireland, Kenya, Kuwait, Lebanon, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, United Arab Emirates, United Kingdom	Hose, O ₂ , NIST x BS, white	989805612691	1001663
Greece, Italy, Morocco, Tunisia	Hose, O ₂ , NIST x AFNOR, white	989805612701	1054835
Italy, Portugal, Spain	Hose, O ₂ , NIST x UNIFOR, white	989805615971	1054834
Argentina, Bolivia, Brazil, Chile, Colombia, Honduras, Indonesia, Israel, Mexico, Panama, Peru, Philippines, Puerto Rico, South Korea, Thailand, Turkey, USA, Vietnam	Hose, O ₂ , DISS female x DISS female, green, 3-m (10-ft)	989805616881	1001664
Continental Europe, China, Hong Kong, India, Ireland, Malaysia, Pakistan, South Africa, Taiwan	Hose, O ₂ , NIST x NIST, white	989805613851	1054836



1001659



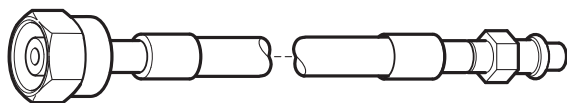
1054832



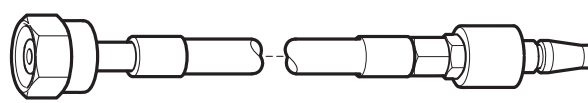
1062978



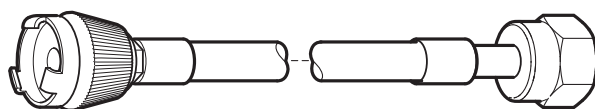
1002556



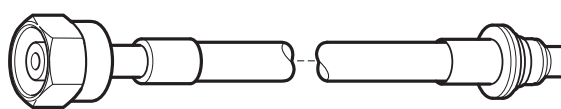
1054833



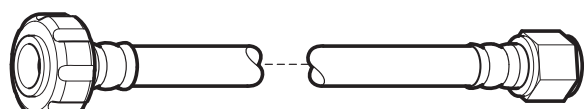
1001663



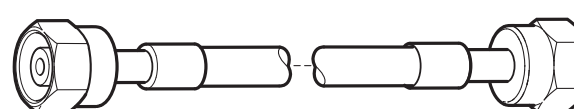
1054835



1054834



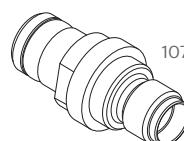
1001664



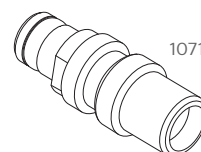
1054836

O₂ fittings

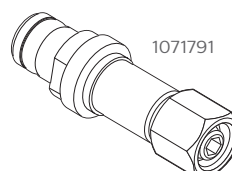
Description	Order number	Part number
Fitting, O ₂ , Trilogy, DISS male	989805621681	1071789
Fitting, O ₂ , Trilogy, DISS female (Canada)	989805621701	1071791
Fitting, O ₂ , Trilogy, NIST	989805621691	1071790
Fitting O ₂ , Trilogy, SIS	989805621711	1071792



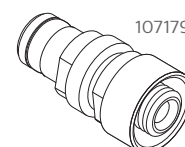
1071789



1071790



1071791



1071792



4 Instructions for use

Additionally, electronic copies are available at www.philips.com/hrcmanuals.

Description	Order number	Part number
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, English, non-U.S.	989805662471	1143280
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, English, U.S.	989805662461	1143279
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Arabic	989805662481	1143281
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Bulgarian	989805662431	1143216
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, simplified Chinese	989805662781	1143311
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, traditional Chinese	989805662791	1143312
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Croatian	989805662581	1143291
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Czech	989805662441	1143217
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Danish	989805662451	1143278
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Dutch	989805662661	1143299
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Estonian	989805662531	1143286
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Finnish	989805662541	1143287
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, French	989805662551	1143288
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, French (Canada)	989805662561	1143289

Description	Order number	Part number
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, German	989805662491	1143282
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Greek	989805662511	1143284
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Hebrew	989805662571	1143290
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Hungarian	989805662591	1143292
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Italian	989805662601	1143293
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Korean	989805662621	1143295
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Latvian	989805662641	1143297
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Lithuanian	989805662631	1143296
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Macedonian	989805662651	1143298
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Norwegian	989805662671	1143300
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Polish	989805662681	1143301
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Portuguese	989805662691	1143302
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Brazilian Portuguese	989805662701	1143303
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Romanian	989805662711	1143304
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Russian	989805662721	1143305
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Serbian	989805662751	1143308
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Slovak	989805662731	1143306
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Slovenian	989805662741	1143307
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Spanish	989805662521	1143285
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Swedish	989805662761	1143309
Instructions for use, Trilogy EV300, Turkish	989805662771	1143310

5 Roll stand and accessories

Order a roll stand, and configure it with any of the parts that follow.

Roll stand

Includes a basket, a slide bracket mount for a humidifier, cord and hose wraps, side mounting rails, and mounting plate. The roll stand comes partially assembled.

Description	Order number	Part number
Roll stand, small product, EV300, 111-cm (43.7-in.) high	989805660781	1141765
Roll stand, small product, EV300, 104-cm (41-in.) high	989805660791	1141766

O₂ cylinder holder

Mounts two O₂ cylinders to the roll stand. Also order the O₂ manifold/transport kit to allow seamless transitions between wall O₂ and cylinder O₂.

Description	Order number	Part number
O ₂ cylinder holder, small product roll stand, for E/M24 size cylinders (11-cm (4.3-in.) diameter)	989805656081	1131463
O ₂ cylinder holder, small product roll stand, for 14-cm (5.5-in.) diameter cylinders	989805656061	1132041

O₂ manifold/transport kit

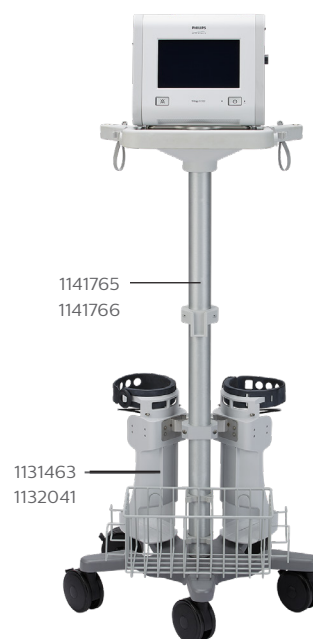
Allows easy transition between wall O₂ and two O₂ cylinders without interruption. Kits include cylinder connecting hoses. Also order the O₂ cylinder holder to mount the cylinders to the roll stand.

Description	Order number	Part number
O ₂ manifold/transport kit, for DISS male O ₂ fitting, with green hoses	989805648241	1109602
O ₂ manifold/transport kit, for NIST O ₂ fitting, with white hoses	989805648741	1109881
O ₂ manifold/transport kit, for SIS O ₂ fitting, with white hoses	989805650181	1113371
O ₂ manifold/transport kit, for DISS female O ₂ fitting, with white hoses (Canada)	989805650191	1113392

Small products roll stand conversion kit

This kit permits the small product roll stand, PN 1126379 or 1131462, to accommodate the Trilogy EV300.

Description	Order number	Part number
Conversion kit, small products roll stand to Trilogy EV300	989805660771	1141764



Support arm

The support arm screws into the roll stand.

Description	Order number	Part number
Support arm, three-section	989805617961	332497

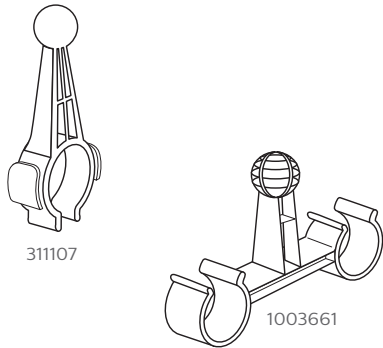
Tubing hangers

Description	Order number	Part number
Tubing hanger, single-limb, 22-mm ID tube	989805648891	311107
Tubing hanger, dual-limb, 22-mm ID tubes	453561507401	1003661

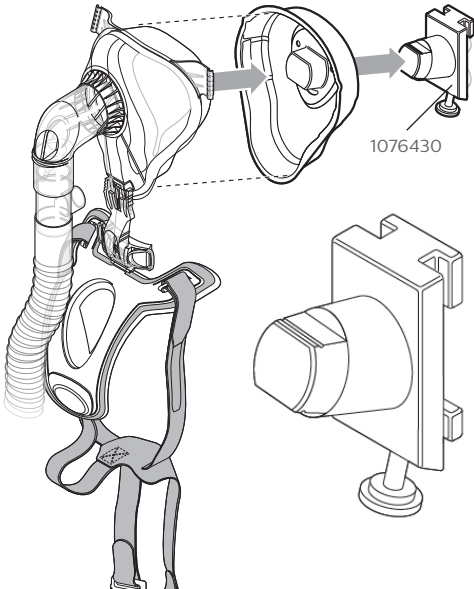
CleanClip mask storage system

Used to store an AF541, AF531, or PerforMax pediatric mask (i.e., one that includes a plastic shell). Attaches to either a rail or humidifier slide bracket.

Description	Order number	Part number
Bracket, CleanClip mask storage	989805627181	1076430



CleanClip mask storage system



Fisher & Paykel humidifier/water bag holder

Mounts the water bag holder and humidifier to the humidifier slide bracket of a roll stand.

Description	Order number	Part number
Bracket, water bag holder mounting, pole-mount	989805613131	1002229
Water bag holder, bent	989805613541	1002506

Mounts the water bag holder to the rail of a roll stand using the accessory post.

Description	Order number	Part number
Post, accessory, rail-mount	453561506591	1048899
Mounting kit, Fisher & Paykel humidifier with water bag holder. Includes:	989805613291	1009753
• Clamp, pole-mount	989805613311	1002230
• Bracket, water bag holder mounting, pole-mount	989805613131	1002229
• Water bag holder, bent	989805613541	1002506

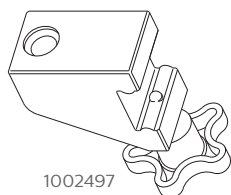
Mounts the water bag holder to the stand rail using the support arm bracket.

Description	Order number	Part number
Bracket, support arm, rail-mount	989805611511	1002497
Water bag holder, bent	989805613541	1002506

Water bag holder, pole-mount

Mounts the water bag holder to the humidifier slide bracket of a roll stand using the accessory post.

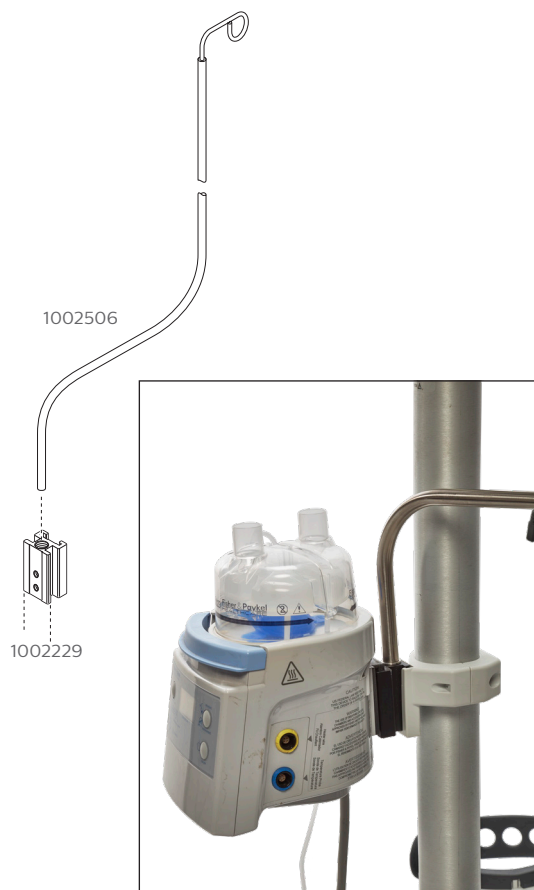
Description	Order number	Part number
Bracket, water bag holder mounting, pole-mount, C-clamp style	989805605731	1052863



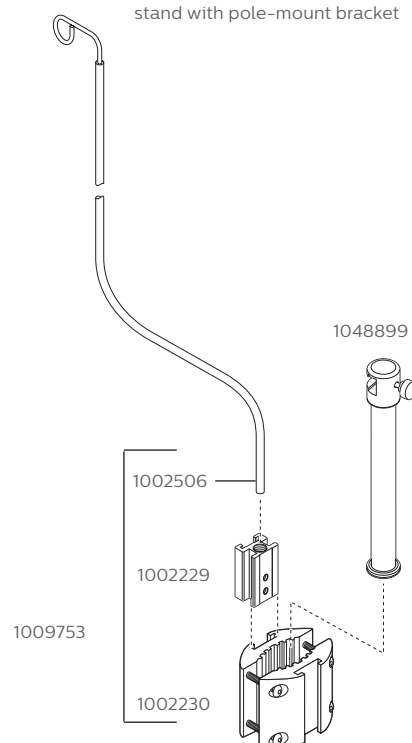
1002497



1052863



Water bag holder and humidifier mounted to stand with pole-mount bracket



Mounted to roll stand rail using accessory post

6 Patient circuits

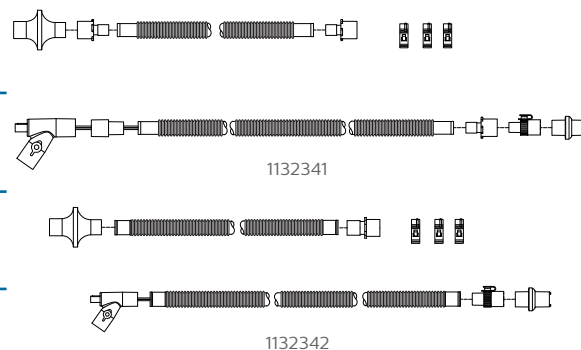
Passive single-limb circuits

Passive single-limb circuits include an exhalation port. In all passive circuits, the exhalation port is a swivel port.

Heated circuits for use with WILAmed AIRcon humidifier

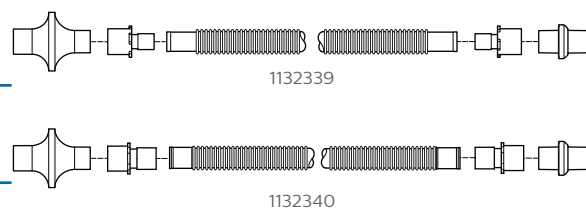
WILAmed heated circuits are not available in North America.

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Patient circuit, single-limb, passive, heated, single-patient use, 22-mm ID (WILAmed)	10	989805662111	1132341
Patient circuit, single-limb, passive, heated, single-patient use, 15-mm ID (WILAmed)	10	989805662121	1132342



Non-heated circuits

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Patient circuit, single-limb, passive, non-heated, single-patient use, 15-mm ID	10	989805662091	1132339
Patient circuit, single-limb, passive, non-heated, single-patient use, 22-mm ID	10	989805662101	1132340



Exhalation ports

For use with all passive circuits. Not available in North America.

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Exhalation port, swivel, disposable (WILAsilent)	10	989805643161	1139909



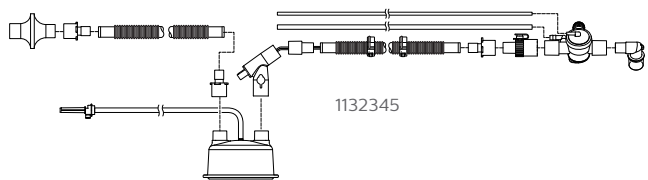
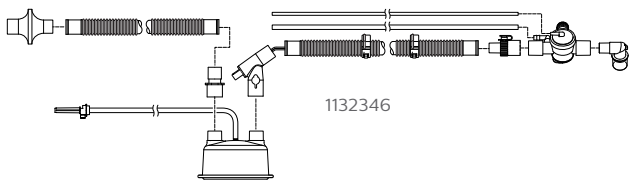
Active single-limb circuits

Active single-limb circuits include an exhalation valve.

Heated circuits for use with WILAmed AIRcon humidifier

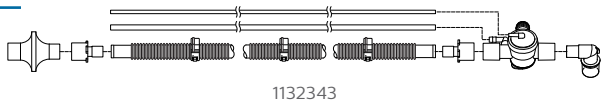
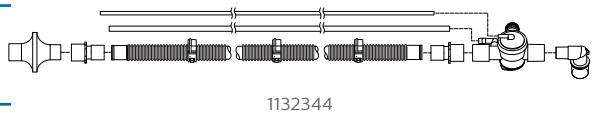
WILAmed heated circuits are not available in North America.

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Patient circuit, single-limb, with active exhalation valve, heated, single-use, 22-mm ID (WILAmed)	10	989805662161	1132346
Patient circuit, single-limb, with active exhalation valve, heated, single-use, 15-mm ID (WILAmed)	10	989805662151	1132345



Non-heated circuits

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Patient circuit, single-limb, with active exhalation valve, non-heated, single-use, 22-mm ID	10	989805662141	1132344
Patient circuit, single-limb, with active exhalation valve, non-heated, single-use, 15-mm ID	10	989805662131	1132343



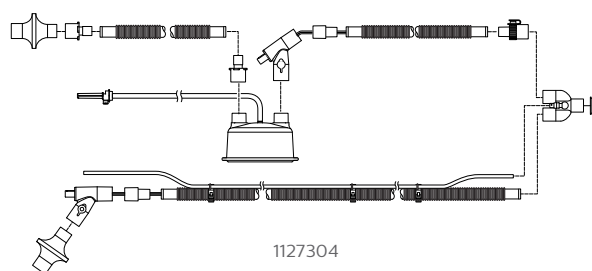
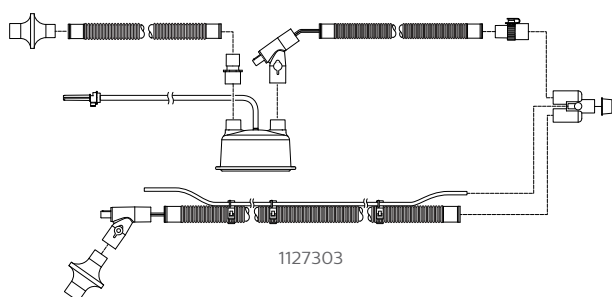
Dual-limb circuits

Dual-limb circuits require an active exhalation valve (p. 18) and an external flow sensor (p. 18).

Heated circuits for use with WILAméd AIRcon humidifier

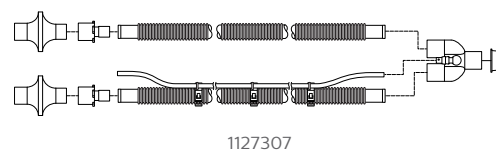
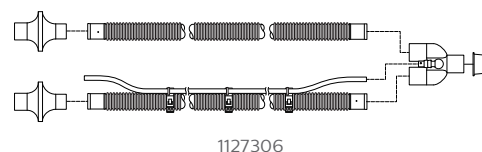
WILAméd heated circuits are not available in North America.

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Patient circuit, with dual heated limbs, with proximal pressure line, single-use, 22-mm ID (WILAméd)	10	989805661961	1127303
Patient circuit, with dual heated limbs, with proximal pressure line, single-use, 15-mm ID (WILAméd)	10	989805661971	1127304



Non-heated circuits

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Patient circuit, dual-limb, non-heated, with proximal pressure line, 22-mm ID, single-use	10	989805661981	1127306
Patient circuit, dual-limb, non-heated, with proximal pressure line, 15-mm ID, single-use	10	989805661991	1127307



Heated circuits for use with Fisher & Paykel MR850 humidifier

Available with the purchase of a humidifier base only.

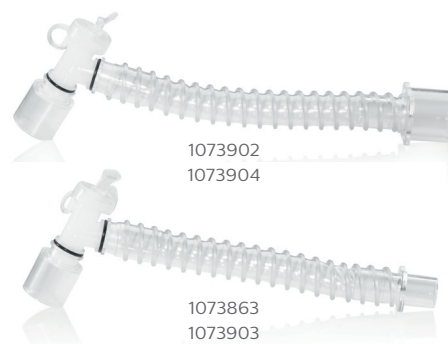
Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Patient circuit, with dual heated limbs, with pressure lines, single-use, adult (Fisher & Paykel RT111) (Not shown)	10	989805652821	1120221
Patient circuit, with dual heated limbs, with auto-feed chamber, with proximal pressure line, single-use, infant (Fisher & Paykel Evaqua RT385) (Not shown)	10	989805654581	1128391
Patient circuit, with dual heated limbs, with auto-feed chamber (flows > 4 L/min), with proximal pressure line, single-use, infant (Fisher & Paykel Evaqua RT265)	10	989805662901	1141548
Patient circuit, with dual heated limbs, with auto-feed chamber, with pressure lines, single-use, adult (Fisher & Paykel RT211)*	10	989805662891	1141427

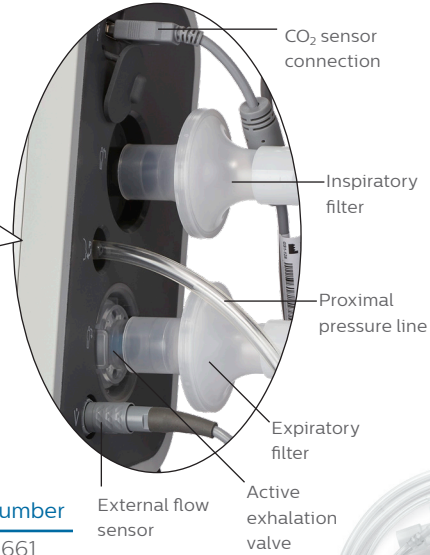
* Exclusively available in the USA

Flex tracheal adapters

Adapters are 15 cm (6 in.) long. Adapters PN 1073902 and 1073904 connect to swivel and fixed, single-use exhalation ports.

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Flex tracheal adapter, single-use, 22M/15F x 22F	10	989805633931	1073902
Flex tracheal adapter, single-use, 22M/15F x 22F	20	989805633951	1073904
Flex tracheal adapter, single-use, 22M/15F x 15M	10	989805633921	1073863
Flex tracheal adapter, single-use, 22M/15F x 15M	20	989805633941	1073903





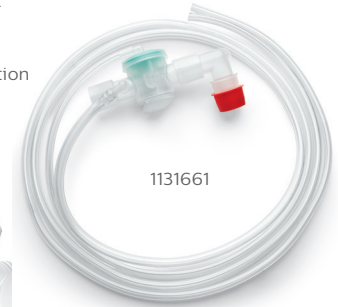
Active exhalation valves

For single-limb use

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Exhalation valve, active, single-limb (WILAmEd)	10	989805662061	1131661

For dual-limb use

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Exhalation valve, active (AEV), dual-limb	10	989805662411	1139436
Exhalation valve, active (AEV), dual-limb	1	989805663541	1132110
Diaphragm, dual-limb active exhalation valve (AEV), dual-limb (Not shown)	10	989805662421	1139912



Bacterial/viral filters

The WILAmEd filter is not available in the USA.

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Filter, bacterial/viral, single-use	10	989805609521	342077
Filter, bacterial/viral, single-patient use (WILAmEd)	10	989805662371	1135776



External flow sensor

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Flow sensor, with cable, external, Trilogy EV300, reusable, adult/pediatric	1	989805662071	1132106
Flow sensor, with cable, external, Trilogy EV300, reusable, pediatric/infant	1	989805662081	1132107
Flow sensor, external, Trilogy EV300, reusable, adult/pediatric	1	989805662351	1134711
Flow sensor, external, Trilogy EV300, reusable, pediatric/infant	1	989805662361	1134712
Flow sensor, external, Trilogy EV300, single-patient use, adult/pediatric	10	989805664651	1146497
Flow sensor, external, Trilogy EV300, single-patient use, pediatric/infant	10	989805664661	1146558
Cable, external flow sensor, Trilogy EV300	1	989805662321	1134592



FiO₂ sensor

Description	Order number	Part number
Sensor, FiO ₂	989805662341	1134668

External pulse oximeter

This highly accurate external pulse oximeter is for use with Nonin PureLight sensors.

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Pulse oximeter, external (Nonin XPOD)	1	989805662051	1129640
Sensor, SpO ₂ , finger, reusable, adult (Nonin)	1	989805603171	936
Sensor, SpO ₂ , finger, reusable, pediatric (Nonin)	1	989805606971	936P
Sensor, SpO ₂ , cloth, disposable, adult (Nonin)	24	989805643671	1070692
Sensor, SpO ₂ , cloth, disposable, pediatric (Nonin)	24	989805643681	1070693
Sensor, SpO ₂ , cloth, disposable, infant (Nonin)	24	989805643691	1070694

Mainstream CO₂ sensor and accessories

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Sensor, mainstream CO ₂	1	989803142651	M2501A
Airway adapter, mainstream CO ₂ , single-patient use, pediatric/adult (clear) (M2533)	10	989805618801	6063-00
Airway adapter, mainstream CO ₂ , single-patient use, neonatal (violet) (M2536A)	10	989805618811	6312-00
Airway adapter, mainstream CO ₂ , reusable, neonatal (red) (M2516A) (Not shown)	10	989805618921	7053-01
Airway adapter, mainstream CO ₂ , reusable, pediatric/adult (black) (M2513A) (Not shown)	1	989805618901	7007-01
Cable, adapter, mainstream CO ₂ sensor to USB	1	989805662031	1127404



7 Humidifiers

Fisher & Paykel MR850 humidifier

For details consult the Fisher & Paykel website, www.fphcare.com.

Humidifier bases

Model	Voltage	Languages	Power plug	Order number	Part number
AEK	230	English	United Kingdom (G)	989805656711	1134414
ADU	230	Danish	Denmark (K)	989805656721	1134416
AEU	230	English, French, Spanish, Greek, Czech, Croatian, Slovak, Romanian	Schuko (F)	989805656631	1134418
AFU	230	Dutch, French, German	Schuko (F)	989805656641	1134399
AGU	230	French, German, Italian	Schuko (F)	989805656691	1134404
ALU	230	Italian, Portuguese, Spanish	Schuko (F)	989805656241	1133848
ANU	230	Finnish, Swedish	Schuko (F)	989805656681	1134403
ARU	230	Bulgarian, Croatian, Czech, English, Hungarian, Polish, Slovak	Schuko (F)	989805656231	1133609
JHU	115	English, French, Spanish	USA (B)	989805634131	1084284



Humidifier chambers

Available with the purchase of a humidifier base only.

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Humidifier chamber, Fisher & Paykel, single-use, adult (MR290)	10	989805642931	22104

Other humidification parts

Available with the purchase of a humidifier base only.

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Adapter, heater wire, inspiratory-limb, MR850, for RT-series circuits (900MR806)	1	989805616981	1024934
Adapter, heater wire, dual (inspiratory/expiratory), MR850, for RT-series circuits (900MR805)	1	989805654511	1128070
Temperature probe, right-angle, for RT-series 1.83-m (6-ft) circuits (900MR861)	1	989805613101	1025039
Adapter, temperature probe, 22F x 22M/15F, single-use (900MR532)	1	989805642951	22161
Adapter, temperature probe, 22F x 22M, with 7.5-mm ID probe connector, single-use	50	453561517001	22164
Adapter, temperature probe, elbow, single-use (900MR131)	1	989805642961	22184



WILamed AIRcon humidifier

For details consult the WILamed website, <https://live.wilamed.de/?lang=en>

The WILamed humidifier is not available in North America.

Humidifier bases

Voltage	Languages	Power plug	Order number	Part number
230	English	United Kingdom (type G)	989805655781	1131790
230	French, German, Spanish	Continental Europe, (Schuko, type F)	989805654761	1129565
230	English	Israel (type H)	989805655801	1131792
230	Italian	Italy (type L)	989805655791	1131791
230	French, German, Italian	Switzerland (type J)	989805655811	1131793

Humidifier chambers

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Humidifier chamber, WILamed AIRcon, auto-fill, single-use, adult	30	989805653111	1121825
Humidifier chamber, WILamed, single-use (500.380 C200AF Universal)	30	989805663041	1136694



8 Patient interfaces

Masks at a glance

NIV masks are classified according to intentional leak levels. Leak 1 masks have the lowest leak. Leak 1 masks require the use of a patient circuit with an exhalation port. SE masks are typically used for ventilation with a dual-limb circuit.

Model	Type	Patient population	Single-use	Reusable
PerforMax	Total face	7 year or older and > 20 kg	✓	✓
PerforMax pediatric (XXS and XS)	Total face	1 year or older and > 7 kg	✓	✓
AF531	Oro-nasal	7 years or older and > 20kg	✓	
AF541	Oro-nasal	7 years or older and > 20kg	✓	
PerformaTrak	Oro-nasal	> 30 kg	✓	
Contour Deluxe	Nasal	> 30 kg	✓	

Total face masks

Total face masks allow quick fitting and eliminate nasal bridge challenges by sealing around the perimeter of the face, where patients have less pressure sensitivity and smoother facial contours.

PerforMax total face mask, single-use

Interchangeable elbows available for the PerforMax easily adapt one mask to multiple ventilators. The masks shown below are intended for adult and pediatric patients (7 years or older and > 20 kg). For smaller pediatric patients, see the PerforMax pediatric ordering information on p. 32.

Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Size	Quantity	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 2	S	10	Global	989805611281	1052535
EE leak 2	S	10	China	989805651481	CN1052535
EE leak 2	S	10	USA	989805611241	1052531
EE leak 2	L	10	Global	989805611291	1052536
EE leak 2	L	10	China	989805651491	CN1052536
EE leak 2	L	10	USA	989805611251	1052532
EE leak 2	XL	5	Global	989805634811	1080424
SE	S	10	Global	989805611301	1052547
SE	S	10	China	989805651501	CN1052547
SE	S	10	USA	989805611261	1052533
SE	L	10	Global	989805611311	1052548
SE	L	10	China	989805651511	CN1052548
SE	L	10	USA	989805611271	1052534
SE	XL	1	Global	989805634841	1080517
SE	XL	5	Global	989805634821	1080425



PerforMax single-use mask with EE leak 2 elbow



PerforMax single-use mask with SE elbow

PerforMax total face mask, reusable

Each mask includes one headgear. Some masks include multiple elbows. Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Size	Quantity	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 2	L	1	USA	989805617091	1047427
EE leak 2	XL	1	USA	989805634761	1080419
EE leak 2 and SE	S	1	Global	989805611091	1044385
EE leak 2 and SE	L	1	Global	989805611101	1044386
EE leak 2 and SE	XL	1	Global	989805634801	1080423



PerforMax reusable mask with EE leak 2 elbow



PerforMax reusable mask with SE and EE leak 2 elbows

PerforMax total face mask set, reusable

Each mask set includes one mask and four headgear. Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Size	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 2	S	Global	989805611381	1052555
EE leak 2	S	China	989805651551	CN1052555
EE leak 2	L	Global	989805611391	1052556
EE leak 2	L	China	989805651561	CN1052556
EE leak 2	XL	Global	989805634781	1080421
SE	S	Global	989805611401	1052568
SE	L	Global	989805611411	1052569
SE	XL	Global	989805634791	1080422
EE leak 2 and SE	S	Global	989805611361	1052553
EE leak 2 and SE	S	USA	989805611411	1049037
EE leak 2 and SE	L	Global	989805611371	1052554
EE leak 2 and SE	L	USA	989805611211	1049038
EE leak 2 and SE	XL	Global	989805634771	1080420



PerforMax mask set with EE leak 2 elbow



PerforMax mask set with SE elbow



PerforMax mask set with SE and EE leak 2 elbows

Oro-nasal masks

Oro-nasal masks are the standard of care for hospital NIV, and the Philips Respironics family includes a comprehensive selection of systems with features that address patient comfort, mask fitting, and ventilator compatibility.

AF541 oro-nasal mask, single-use

Designed to rest comfortably on the face, the AF541 mask features interchangeable under-the-nose and over-the-nose cushions. Alternating between the two cushion types can offload skin pressure points. Other features include a push-button forehead pad for easy mask adjustment and a nebulizer port for easy and efficient drug therapy administration. Interchangeable elbows can easily adapt one mask to multiple ventilators. The CapStrap headgear system simplifies mask application and routine patient care. The CleanClip system, available for the AF541, supports infection control; see p. 12.

The masks shown below are intended for adult and pediatric patients (7 years or older and > 20 kg). Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

With over-the-nose cushion and CapStrap

The over-the-nose cushion, as in a traditional oro-nasal mask, sits on the bridge of the nose. Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Size	Quantity	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 1 NE	S	10	Global	989805653931	1120925
EE leak 1 NE	S	10	USA	989805653851	1120915
EE leak 1 NE	M	10	Global	989805653941	1120926
EE leak 1 NE	M	10	USA	989805653861	1120916
EE leak 1 NE	L	10	Global	989805653951	1120927
EE leak 1 NE	L	10	USA	989805653871	1120917
EE leak 1 NE	XL	10	Global	989805653961	1120928
EE leak 1 NE	XL	10	USA	989805653881	1120918
EE leak 2 NE	S	10	Global	989805654011	1120935
EE leak 2 NE	M	10	Global	989805654021	1120936
EE leak 2 NE	L	10	Global	989805654031	1120937
EE leak 2 NE	XL	10	Global	989805654041	1120938
SE NE	S	10	Global	989805654091	1120945
SE NE	M	10	Global	989805654101	1120946
SE NE	L	10	Global	989805654111	1120947
SE NE	XL	10	Global	989805654121	1120948



AF541 mask with over-the-nose cushion, EE leak 1 NE elbow, and CapStrap



AF541 mask with over-the-nose cushion, EE leak 2 NE elbow, and CapStrap



AF541 mask with over-the-nose cushion, SE NE elbow, and CapStrap

With over-the-nose cushion and four-point headgear

The over-the-nose cushion, as in a traditional oro-nasal mask, sits on the bridge of the nose. Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Size	Quantity	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 1 NE	S	10	Global	989805653891	1120920
EE leak 1 NE	S	10	USA	989805653811	1120910
EE leak 1 NE	M	10	Global	989805653901	1120921
EE leak 1 NE	M	10	USA	989805653821	1120911
EE leak 1 NE	L	10	Global	989805653911	1120922
EE leak 1 NE	L	10	USA	989805653831	1120912
EE leak 1 NE	XL	10	Global	989805653921	1120923
EE leak 1 NE	XL	10	USA	989805653841	1120913
EE leak 2 NE	S	10	Global	989805653971	1120930
EE leak 2 NE	M	10	Global	989805653981	1120931
EE leak 2 NE	L	10	Global	989805653991	1120932
EE leak 2 NE	XL	10	Global	989805654001	1120933
SE NE	S	10	Global	989805654051	1120940
SE NE	M	10	Global	989805654061	1120941
SE NE	L	10	Global	989805654071	1120942
SE NE	XL	10	Global	989805654081	1120943

With under-the-nose cushion and CapStrap

The under-the-nose cushion, which sits just below the nose, is offered in four sizes (XS, A, B, and C). Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Size	Quantity	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 1 NE	XS	10	Global	989805656371	1133668
EE leak 1 NE	XS	10	USA	989805656291	1133660
EE leak 1 NE	A	10	Global	989805656381	1133669
EE leak 1 NE	A	10	USA	989805656301	1133661
EE leak 1 NE	B	10	Global	989805656391	1133670
EE leak 1 NE	B	10	USA	989805656311	1133662
EE leak 1 NE	C	10	Global	989805656401	1133671
EE leak 1 NE	C	10	USA	989805656321	1133663
EE leak 2 NE	XS	10	Global	989805656451	1133676
EE leak 2 NE	A	10	Global	989805656461	1133677
EE leak 2 NE	B	10	Global	989805656471	1133678
EE leak 2 NE	C	10	Global	989805656481	1133679
SE NE	XS	10	Global	989805656531	1133684
SE NE	A	10	Global	989805656541	1133685
SE NE	B	10	Global	989805656551	1133686
SE NE	C	10	Global	989805656561	1133687



AF541 mask with over-the-nose cushion, EE leak 1 NE elbow, and four-point headgear



AF541 mask with over-the-nose cushion, EE leak 2 NE elbow, and four-point headgear



AF541 mask with over-the-nose cushion, SE NE elbow, and four-point headgear



AF541 mask with under-the-nose cushion, EE leak 1 NE elbow, and CapStrap



AF541 mask with under-the-nose cushion, EE leak 2 NE elbow, and CapStrap



AF541 mask with under-the-nose cushion, SE NE elbow, and CapStrap

With under-the-nose cushion and four-point headgear

The under-the-nose cushion, which sits just below the nose, is offered in four sizes (XS, A, B, and C). Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Size	Quantity	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 1 NE	XS	10	Global	989805656331	1133664
EE leak 1 NE	XS	10	USA	989805656251	1133626
EE leak 1 NE	A	10	Global	989805656341	1133665
EE leak 1 NE	A	10	USA	989805656261	1133627
EE leak 1 NE	B	10	Global	989805656351	1133666
EE leak 1 NE	B	10	USA	989805656271	1133658
EE leak 1 NE	C	10	Global	989805656361	1133667
EE leak 1 NE	C	10	USA	989805656281	1133659
EE leak 2 NE	XS	10	Global	989805656411	1133672
EE leak 2 NE	A	10	Global	989805656421	1133673
EE leak 2 NE	B	10	Global	989805656431	1133674
EE leak 2 NE	C	10	Global	989805656441	1133675
SE NE	XS	10	Global	989805656491	1133680
SE NE	A	10	Global	989805656501	1133681
SE NE	B	10	Global	989805656511	1133682
SE NE	C	10	Global	989805656521	1133683



AF541 mask with under-the-nose cushion, EE leak 1 NE elbow, and four-point headgear



AF541 mask with under-the-nose cushion, EE leak 2 NE elbow, and four-point headgear



AF541 mask with under-the-nose cushion, SE NE elbow, and four-point headgear

AF531 oro-nasal mask, single-use

Interchangeable elbows available for the AF531 easily adapt one mask to multiple ventilators. The CapStrap headgear system simplifies mask application and routine patient care. The CleanClip system, available for the AF531, supports infection control; see p. 12.

The masks shown below are intended for adult and pediatric patients (7 years or older and > 20 kg). Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

With CapStrap headgear

Elbow	Size	Quantity	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 1	S	10	Global	989805628731	1072627
EE leak 1	S	10	China	989805652091	CN1072627
EE leak 1	M	1	China	989805652081	CN1061728
EE leak 1	M	10	Global	989805628741	1072628
EE leak 1	L	10	Global	989805628751	1072629
EE leak 1	L	10	China	989805652101	CN1072629
EE leak 2	S	10	Global	989805645621	1100390
EE leak 2	M	10	Global	989805645631	1100391
EE leak 2	L	10	Global	989805645641	1100392
SE	S	10	Global	989805628761	1072630
SE	M	10	Global	989805628771	1072631
SE	L	10	Global	989805628781	1072632
EE leak 1 NE	S	10	Global	989805634621	1072636
EE leak 1 NE	S	10	USA	989805635001	1072618
EE leak 1 NE	M	10	Global	989805634631	1072637
EE leak 1 NE	M	10	USA	989805635011	1072619
EE leak 1 NE	L	10	Global	989805634641	1072638
EE leak 1 NE	L	10	USA	989805635021	1072620
SE NE	S	10	Global	989805645681	1100396
SE NE	M	10	Global	989805645691	1100397
SE NE	L	10	Global	989805645701	1100438



AF531 mask with EE leak 1 elbow and CapStrap



AF531 mask with EE leak 2 elbow and CapStrap



AF531 mask with SE elbow and CapStrap

With four-point headgear

Elbow	Size	Quantity	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 1	S	10	Global	989805628671	1072621
EE leak 1	M	10	Global	989805628681	1072622
EE leak 1	M	1	China	989805652071	CN1061719
EE leak 1	L	10	Global	989805628691	1072623
EE leak 2	S	10	Global	989805645651	1100393
EE leak 2	S	10	China	989805649741	CN1100393
EE leak 2	M	10	Global	989805645661	1100394
EE leak 2	M	10	China	989805649751	CN1100394
EE leak 2	L	10	Global	989805645671	1100395
EE leak 2	L	10	China	989805649761	CN1100395
SE	S	10	Global	989805628701	1072624
SE	M	10	Global	989805628711	1072625
SE	M	10	China	989805649711	CN1072625
SE	L	10	Global	989805628721	1072626
EE leak 1 NE	S	10	Global	989805634591	1072633
EE leak 1 NE	S	10	USA	989805634971	1061733
EE leak 1 NE	M	10	Global	989805634601	1072634
EE leak 1 NE	M	10	USA	989805634981	1061734
EE leak 1 NE	L	10	Global	989805634611	1072635
EE leak 1 NE	L	10	USA	989805634991	1061735

AF531 mask with EE leak 1 elbow and four-point headgear



AF531 mask with EE leak 2 elbow and four-point headgear



AF531 mask with EE leak 1 NE elbow and four-point headgear



AF531 mask with SE elbow and four-point headgear



PerformaTrak oro-nasal mask, single-use

Dual-density foam forehead pads provide patient comfort and mask stability. Swivel clips simplify reapplication by eliminating the need to refit after removal. The PerformaTrak oro-nasal mask is intended for patients > 30 kg.

Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Headgear	Size	Quantity	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 1	CapStrap	S	10	Global	989805610691	1019492
EE leak 1	CapStrap	S	10	USA	989805610631	1019478
EE leak 1	CapStrap	M	10	Global	989805610701	1019498
EE leak 1	CapStrap	M	10	USA	989805610641	1019479
EE leak 1	CapStrap	L	10	Global	989805610711	1019507
EE leak 1	CapStrap	L	10	USA	989805610651	1019480
EE leak 1	Four-point	S	10	Global	989805610481	1018589
EE leak 1	Four-point	S	10	USA	989805610511	1018592
EE leak 1	Four-point	M	10	Global	989805610491	1018590
EE leak 1	Four-point	M	10	USA	989805610521	1018593
EE leak 1	Four-point	L	10	Global	989805610501	1018591
EE leak 1	Four-point	L	10	USA	989805610531	1018594
SE	CapStrap	S	10	Global	989805610811	1019540
SE	CapStrap	S	10	USA	989805610751	1019511
SE	CapStrap	M	10	Global	989805610821	1019541
SE	CapStrap	M	10	USA	989805610761	1019525
SE	CapStrap	L	10	Global	989805610831	1019542
SE	CapStrap	L	10	USA	989805610771	1019533
SE	Four-point	S	10	Global	989805610581	1018605
SE	Four-point	S	10	USA	989805610551	1018596
SE	Four-point	M	10	Global	989805610591	1018606
SE	Four-point	M	10	USA	989805610561	1018597
SE	Four-point	L	10	Global	989805610541	1018595
SE	Four-point	L	10	USA	989805610571	1018598



PerformaTrak single-use oro-nasal mask with EE leak 1 elbow and CapStrap



PerformaTrak single-use oro-nasal mask with EE leak 1 elbow and four-point headgear



PerformaTrak single-use oro-nasal mask with SE elbow and CapStrap



PerformaTrak single-use oro-nasal mask with SE elbow and four-point headgear

Nasal masks

A selection of single-use nasal masks permit oral access and are particularly suitable for long-term noninvasive ventilation.

Contour Deluxe nasal mask, single-use

Dual-density foam forehead pads provide patient comfort and mask stability. Hook-and-loop grab tabs allow quick, easy removal and adjustment of headgear. The Contour Deluxe mask is intended for patients > 30 kg. Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Size	Quantity	Region	Order number	Part number
Petite	10	Global	989805610341	1016983
Petite	5	China	989805649691	CN1016980
Petite	5	USA	989805610311	1016980
S	10	Global	989805610301	1016698
S	10	USA	989805610261	1016694
S	5	Global	989805610291	1016697
S	5	China	989805649681	CN1016697
S	5	USA	989805610251	1016693
M/L	10	Global	989805610281	1016696
M/L	10	USA	989805610241	1016692
M/L	5	Global	989805610271	1016695
M/L	5	China	989805649671	CN1016695
M/L	5	USA	989805610231	1016691



Pediatric patient interfaces

PerforMax pediatric total face masks

Interchangeable elbows available for the PerforMax easily adapt one mask to multiple ventilators. The CleanClip system, available for the PerforMax, supports infection control; see p. 12.

Size XXS and XS interfaces are intended for pediatric patients 1 year or older and > 7 kg. Size S interfaces are intended for patients 7 years or older and > 20 kg. XXS and XS masks have child-friendly design features including colorful bonnets with a soft inner lining, color-matched clips, and a softer silicone material.

PerforMax pediatric total face mask with bonnet, single-use

Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Size	Quantity	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 2	XXS	5	Global	989805645031	1083148
EE leak 2	XXS	5	China	989805651421	CN1083148
EE leak 2	XS	5	Global	989805645021	1083147
EE leak 2	XS	5	China	989805651441	CN1083147
SE	XXS	5	Global	989805645051	1083150
SE	XXS	5	China	989805651431	CN1083150
SE	XS	5	Global	989805645041	1083149
SE	XS	5	China	989805651461	CN1083149

PerforMax total face mask, single-use (size S)

Each mask includes a four-point headgear. Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Size	Quantity	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 2	S	10	Global	989805611281	1052535
EE leak 2	S	10	USA	989805611241	1052531
SE	S	10	Global	989805611301	1052547
SE	S	10	USA	989805611261	1052533



PerforMax single-use pediatric mask with EE leak 2 elbow



PerforMax single-use pediatric mask with SE elbow



PerforMax single-use small mask with EE leak 2 elbow and four-point headgear



PerforMax single-use small mask with SE elbow and four-point headgear

PerforMax pediatric total face mask sets, reusable (sizes XXS and XS)

EE leak 2 mask sets include one mask, two each small pink and blue bonnets, and three additional elbow/tubing assemblies. SE mask sets include one mask and two each small pink and blue bonnets.

Elbow	Size	Order number	Part number
EE leak 2	XXS	989805644921	1083084
EE leak 2	XS	989805644911	1083083
SE	XXS	989805644941	1083086
SE	XS	989805644931	1083085



1083084
1083083

PerforMax total face mask, reusable (size S)

Each mask includes a four-point headgear. Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Size	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 2	S	USA	989805617081	1047426
EE leak 2 and SE	S	Global	989805611091	1044385
EE leak 2 and SE	S	USA	989805611201	1049037



1083086
1083085

PerforMax total face mask set, reusable (size S)

Each mask set includes one mask and four each four-point headgear. Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Size	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 2	S	Global	989805611381	1052555
SE	S	Global	989805611401	1052568
EE leak 2 and SE	S	Global	989805611361	1052553



1052555



1052568



1047426



1044385
1049037



1052553

AF531 oro-nasal mask, single-use (size S)

Interchangeable elbows available for the AF531 can easily adapt one mask to multiple ventilators. The CapStrap headgear system simplifies mask application and routine patient care. The CleanClip system, available for the AF531, supports infection control; see p. 12. This small version of the AF531 mask is intended for pediatric patients 7 years or older and > 20 kg. Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Headgear	Size	Quantity	Region	Order number	Part number
EE leak 1	CapStrap	S	10	Global	989805628731	1072627
EE leak 1	CapStrap	S	10	China	989805652091	CN1072627
EE leak 1	Four-point	S	10	Global	989805628671	1072621
EE leak 2	CapStrap	S	10	Global	989805645621	1100390
EE leak 2	Four-point	S	10	Global	989805645651	1100393
EE leak 2	Four-point	S	10	China	989805649741	CN1100393
SE	CapStrap	S	10	Global	989805628761	1072630
SE	CapStrap	S	10	USA	989805642671	1094755
SE	Four-point	S	10	Global	989805628701	1072624
SE	Four-point	S	10	USA	989805642701	1094788
EE leak 1 NE	CapStrap	S	10	Global	989805634621	1072636
EE leak 1 NE	CapStrap	S	10	USA	989805635001	1072618
EE leak 1 NE	Four-point	S	10	Global	989805634591	1072633
EE leak 1 NE	Four-point	S	10	USA	989805634971	1061733
SE NE	CapStrap	S	10	Global	989805645681	1100396



AF531 mask with EE leak 1 elbow and CapStrap



AF531 mask with EE leak 1 elbow and four-point headgear



AF531 mask with SE elbow and CapStrap



AF531 mask with SE elbow and four-point headgear



AF531 mask with EE leak 2 elbow and CapStrap



AF531 mask with EE leak 2 elbow and four-point headgear



AF531 mask with EE leak 1 NE elbow and CapStrap



AF531 mask with SE NE elbow and CapStrap



AF531 mask with EE leak 1 NE elbow and four-point headgear

Pediatric nasal masks

PN841 pediatric nasal mask, single-patient use

Designed specifically for children, the reusable PN841 applies a child-friendly fabric pattern with a modified cushion curvature to provide a positive experience for the smallest patients. The leak correction dial on the PN841 enables clinicians to fix small leaks and readjust the fit of the cushion on the face. The PN841 is intended for patients > 10 kg (22 lb). Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Elbow	Size	Region	Quantity	Order number	Part number
SE	S	Global	5	989805655501	1130582
SE	S	USA Canada	5	989805655161	1126614
SE	M	Global	5	989805655511	1130583
SE	M	USA Canada	5	989805655171	1126615
SE	L	Global	5	989805655521	1130584
SE	L	USA Canada	5	989805655181	1126616



PN841 mask with SE elbow

⑨ Additional parts and accessories

Trilogy Remote Alarm

The Trilogy Remote Alarm is intended to call attention to an alarm condition with compatible Philips Respironics ventilators at a distance of up to 61 m (200 ft) from the device. An audible tone and a red, flashing indicator indicate that an alarm condition exists.

The Remote Alarm includes a 15-m (50-ft) RJ9 cable and a 9-V battery. The U.S version includes a power supply. If you are ordering the global version, also order a power supply.

Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Description	Order number	Part number
Remote Alarm, Trilogy, USA	989805653751	1118941
Remote Alarm, Trilogy, global	989805653761	1120632

Power supply for Remote Alarm

Order a global part unless a region-specific part is listed.

Description	Order number	Part number
Power supply, Trilogy Remote Alarm, USA	453561536261	1120633
Power supply, Trilogy Remote Alarm, global	453561537551	1120634
Power supply, Trilogy Remote Alarm, UK	453561537541	1127161

Remote Alarm stand

Description	Order number	Part number
Stand, Trilogy Remote Alarm (Not shown)	989805653741	34046

Remote Alarm cables

Description	Order number	Part number
Cable, Trilogy Remote Alarm (RJ9 to RJ9), 15-m (50-ft)	453561536241	1114933
Cable, Trilogy Remote Alarm (RJ9 to RJ9), 61-m (200-ft)	453561537551	1114934



1118941
1120632



1120633
1120634
1127161



1114933
1114934

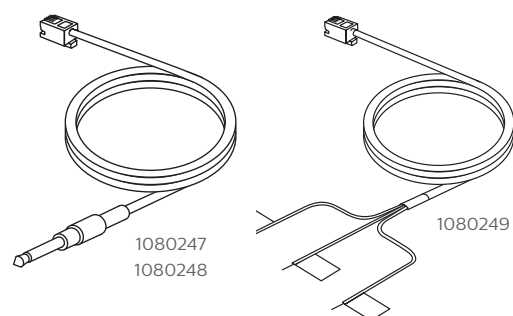
Operator replacement parts

Description	Quantity	Order number	Part number
Battery, Trilogy EV300, detachable, global	1	989805661831	1127889
Battery, Trilogy EV300, detachable, India	1	989805662401	1136881
Filter, air inlet, foam, Trilogy EV300	10	989805662311	1134591
Filter, particulate, Trilogy EV300	10	989805662301	1134430
Clamp, power cord, Trilogy EV300 (Not shown)	1	989805662271	1134347
Quick-connect insert, O ₂ , Trilogy	2	989805647691	1040390



Nurse call cables

Description	Order number	Part number
Cable, nurse call, RJ9 to 1/4-in. mono jack, normally open (alarm state = closed), 3.65-m (12-ft)	989805635491	1080247
Cable, nurse call, RJ9 to 1/4-in. mono jack, normally closed (alarm state = open), 3.65-m (12-ft)	989805635501	1080248
Cable, nurse call, RJ9 to open end, 3-m (9.8-ft)	989805635511	1080249



Power cables

Description	Order number	Part number
Cable, 12/24-V battery, with terminals	989805662001	1127401
Cable, 12/24-V battery, with car adapter	989805662011	1127402



Patient monitor interface cables

Not shown.

Description	Order number	Part number
Cable, USB to DB9, isolated. Interfaces the EV300 with a hospital monitor such as the Alice 6 PSG System, or with a computer that is running Omnilab Direct.	989805662041	1127405
Cable, USB to RJ45, isolated. Interfaces the EV300 with a hospital monitor such as the Philips IntelliVue.	989805662021	1127403

Carrying case

The carrying case may be used while the ventilator is operating.

Description	Order number	Part number
Carrying case, Trilogy EV300, in-use	989805662261	1133930



1133930

Service manual

Description	Order number	Part number
Service manual, Trilogy EV300 (English) (Not shown)	989805661931	1144577

Test lung

A test lung is required for ventilator testing. 1-liter capacity. Latex free.

Description	Order number	Part number
Test lung, hard-sided (low-compliance)	989805611871	1021671



1021671

Part number index

Numbers

936 19	1048899 13	1080423 24	1121825 21	1133674 27
936P 19	1049037 24, 33	1080424 23	1126614 35	1133675 27
6063-00 19	1049038 24	1080425 23	1126615 35	1133676 26
6312-00 19	1052531 23, 32	1080517 23	1126616 35	1133677 26
7007-01 19	1052532 23	1083083 33	1127161 36	1133678 26
7053-01 19	1052533 23, 32	1083084 33	1127303 16	1133679 26
22104 20	1052534 23	1083085 33	1127304 16	1133680 27
22161 20	1052535 23, 32	1083086 33	1127306 16	1133681 27
22164 20	1052536 23	1083147 32	1127307 16	1133682 27
22184 20	1052547 23, 32	1083148 32	1127401 37	1133683 27
34046 36	1052548 23	1083149 32	1127402 37	1133684 26
311107 12	1052553 24, 33	1083150 32	1127403 37	1133685 26
332497 12	1052554 24	1084284 20	1127404 19	1133686 26
342077 18	1052555 24, 33	1094755 34	1127405 37	1133687 26
1001659 9	1052556 24	1094788 34	1127889 37	1133848 20
1001663 9	1052568 24, 33	1100390 28, 34	1128070 20	1133930 38
1001664 7, 9	1052569 24	1100391 28	1128391 17	1134347 6, 37
1002229 13	1052863 13	1100392 28	1129565 21	1134399 20
1002230 13	1054832 7, 9	1100393 29, 34	1129640 19	1134403 20
1002497 13	1054833 7, 9	1100394 29	1130582 35	1134404 20
1002506 13	1054834 7, 9	1100395 29	1130583 35	1134414 20
1002556 9	1054835 9	1100396 28, 34	1130584 35	1134416 20
1003661 12	1054836 7, 9	1100397 28	1131463 11	1134418 20
1009753 13	1061733 29, 34	1100438 28	1131661 18	1134430 6, 37
1016691 31	1061734 29	1109602 11	1131790 21	1134591 37
1016692 31	1061735 29	1109881 11	1131791 21	1134592 18
1016693 31	1062978 7, 9	1113371 11	1131792 21	1134668 19
1016694 31	1070692 19	1113392 11	1131793 21	1134711 18
1016695 31	1070693 19	1114933 36	1132041 11	1134712 18
1016696 31	1070694 19	1114934 36	1132106 18	1135776 18
1016697 31	1071789 9	1118941 36	1132107 18	1136694 21
1016698 31	1071790 7, 9	1120221 17	1132110 18	1136845 8
1016980 31	1071791 7, 9	1120632 36	1132339 14	1136881 37
1016983 31	1071792 9	1120633 36	1132340 6, 14	1139436 18
1018589 30	1072618 28, 34	1120634 36	1132341 14	1139909 14
1018590 30	1072619 28	1120910 26	1132342 14	1139912 18
1018591 30	1072620 28	1120911 26	1132343 15	1141427 17
1018592 30	1072621 29, 34	1120912 26	1132344 15	1141548 17
1018593 30	1072622 29	1120913 26	1132345 15	1141764 11
1018594 30	1072623 29	1120915 25	1132346 15	1141765 11
1018595 30	1072624 29, 34	1120916 25	1133284 7, 8	1141766 11
1018596 30	1072625 29	1120917 25	1133286 8	1143216 10
1018597 30	1072626 29	1120918 25	1133287 7, 8	1143217 7, 10
1018598 30	1072627 28, 34	1120920 26	1133468 7, 8	1143278 7, 10
1018605 30	1072628 28	1120921 26	1133469 7, 8	1143279 7, 10
1018606 30	1072629 28	1120922 26	1133470 8	1143280 7, 10
1019478 30	1072630 28, 34	1120923 26	1133471 7, 8	1143281 10
1019479 30	1072631 28	1120925 25	1133472 7, 8	1143282 7, 10
1019480 30	1072632 28	1120926 25	1133609 20	1143284 10
1019492 30	1072633 29, 34	1120927 25	1133626 27	1143285 7, 10
1019498 30	1072634 29	1120928 25	1133627 27	1143286 10
1019507 30	1072635 29	1120930 26	1133658 27	1143287 7, 10
1019511 30	1072636 28, 34	1120931 26	1133659 27	1143288 7, 10
1019525 30	1072637 28	1120932 26	1133660 26	1143289 7, 10
1019533 30	1072638 28	1120933 26	1133661 26	1143290 10
1019540 30	1073863 17	1120935 25	1133662 26	1143291 10
1019541 30	1073902 17	1120936 25	1133663 26	1143292 10
1019542 30	1073903 17	1120937 25	1133664 27	1143293 7, 10
1021671 38	1073904 17	1120938 25	1133665 27	1143295 7, 10
1024934 20	1076430 12	1120940 26	1133666 27	1143296 10
1025039 20	1080247 37	1120941 26	1133667 27	1143297 10
1040390 37	1080248 37	1120942 26	1133668 26	1143298 10
1044385 24, 33	1080249 37	1120943 26	1133669 26	1143299 7, 10
1044386 24	1080419 24	1120945 25	1133670 26	1143300 7, 10
1047426 33	1080420 24	1120946 25	1133671 26	1143301 10
1047427 24	1080421 24	1120947 25	1133672 27	1143302 7, 10
	1080422 24	1120948 25	1133673 27	1143303 7, 10

1143304 7, 10	989805611391 24	989805642671 34	989805653961 25	989805660781 11
1143305 7, 10	989805611401 24, 33	989805642701 34	989805653971 26	989805660791 11
1143306 7, 10	989805611411 24	989805642931 20	989805653981 26	989805661831 37
1143307 10	989805611511 13	989805642951 20	989805653991 26	989805661841 5
1143308 10	989805611871 38	989805642961 20	989805654001 26	989805661851 5
1143309 7, 10	989805612421 9	989805643161 14	989805654011 25	989805661861 5
1143310 7, 10	989805612551 7, 9	989805643671 19	989805654021 25	989805661871 5
1143311 7, 10	989805612691 9	989805643681 19	989805654031 25	989805661881 5
1143312 10	989805612701 9	989805643691 19	989805654041 25	989805661891 5
1144577 38	989805613101 20	989805644911 33	989805654051 26	989805661911 5
1146497 18	989805613131 13	989805644921 33	989805654061 26	989805661931 38
1146558 18	989805613291 13	989805644931 33	989805654071 26	989805661961 16
453561506591 13	989805613311 13	989805644941 33	989805654081 26	989805661971 16
453561507401 12	989805613541 13	989805645021 32	989805654091 25	989805661981 16
453561517001 20	989805613851 7, 9	989805645031 32	989805654101 25	989805661991 16
453561536241 36	989805615961 7, 9	989805645041 32	989805654111 25	989805662001 37
453561536261 36	989805615971 7, 9	989805645051 32	989805654121 25	989805662011 37
453561537541 36	989805616201 7, 9	989805645621 28, 34	989805654511 20	989805662021 37
453561537551 36	989805616871 9	989805645631 28	989805654581 17	989805662031 19
989803142651 19	989805616881 7, 9	989805645641 28	989805654761 21	989805662041 37
989805603171 19	989805616981 20	989805645651 29, 34	989805655161 35	989805662051 19
989805605731 13	989805617081 33	989805645661 29	989805655171 35	989805662061 18
989805606971 19	989805617091 24	989805645671 29	989805655181 35	989805662071 18
989805609521 18	989805617961 12	989805645681 28, 34	989805655501 35	989805662081 18
989805610231 31	989805618801 19	989805645691 28	989805655511 35	989805662091 14
989805610241 31	989805618811 19	989805645701 28	989805655521 35	989805662101 6, 14
989805610251 31	989805618901 19	989805647691 37	989805655781 21	989805662111 14
989805610261 31	989805618921 19	989805648241 11	989805655791 21	989805662121 14
989805610271 31	989805621681 9	989805648741 11	989805655801 21	989805662131 15
989805610281 31	989805621691 7, 9	989805648891 12	989805655811 21	989805662141 15
989805610291 31	989805621701 7, 9	989805649671 31	989805656061 11	989805662151 15
989805610301 31	989805621711 9	989805649681 31	989805656081 11	989805662161 15
989805610311 31	989805627181 12	989805649691 31	989805656231 20	989805662171 7, 8
989805610341 31	989805628671 29, 34	989805649711 29	989805656241 20	989805662191 8
989805610481 30	989805628681 29	989805649741 29, 34	989805656251 27	989805662201 7, 8
989805610491 30	989805628691 29	989805649751 29	989805656261 27	989805662211 7, 8
989805610501 30	989805628701 29, 34	989805649761 29	989805656271 27	989805662221 7, 8
989805610511 30	989805628711 29	989805650181 11	989805656281 27	989805662231 8
989805610521 30	989805628721 29	989805650191 11	989805656291 26	989805662241 7, 8
989805610531 30	989805628731 28, 34	989805651421 32	989805656301 26	989805662251 7, 8
989805610541 30	989805628741 28	989805651431 32	989805656311 26	989805662261 38
989805610551 30	989805628751 28	989805651441 32	989805656321 26	989805662271 6, 37
989805610561 30	989805628761 28, 34	989805651461 32	989805656331 27	989805662301 6, 37
989805610571 30	989805628771 28	989805651481 23	989805656341 27	989805662311 37
989805610581 30	989805628781 28	989805651491 23	989805656351 27	989805662321 18
989805610591 30	989805633921 17	989805651501 23	989805656361 27	989805662341 19
989805610631 30	989805633931 17	989805651511 23	989805656371 26	989805662351 18
989805610641 30	989805633941 17	989805651551 24	989805656381 26	989805662361 18
989805610651 30	989805633951 17	989805651561 24	989805656391 26	989805662371 18
989805610691 30	989805634131 20	989805652071 29	989805656401 26	989805662381 8
989805610701 30	989805634591 29, 34	989805652081 28	989805656411 27	989805662401 37
989805610711 30	989805634601 29	989805652091 28, 34	989805656421 27	989805662411 18
989805610751 30	989805634611 29	989805652101 28	989805656431 27	989805662421 18
989805610761 30	989805634621 28, 34	989805652821 17	989805656441 27	989805662431 10
989805610771 30	989805634631 28	989805653111 21	989805656451 26	989805662441 7, 10
989805610811 30	989805634641 28	989805653741 36	989805656461 26	989805662451 7, 10
989805610821 30	989805634761 24	989805653751 36	989805656471 26	989805662461 7, 10
989805610831 30	989805634771 24	989805653761 36	989805656481 26	989805662471 7, 10
989805611091 24, 33	989805634781 24	989805653811 26	989805656491 27	989805662481 10
989805611101 24	989805634791 24	989805653821 26	989805656501 27	989805662491 7, 10
989805611201 33	989805634801 24	989805653831 26	989805656511 27	989805662511 10
989805611211 24	989805634811 23	989805653841 26	989805656521 27	989805662521 7, 10
989805611241 23, 32	989805634821 23	989805653851 25	989805656531 26	989805662531 10
989805611251 23	989805634841 23	989805653861 25	989805656541 26	989805662541 7, 10
989805611261 23, 32	989805634971 29, 34	989805653871 25	989805656551 26	989805662551 7, 10
989805611271 23	989805634981 29	989805653881 25	989805656561 26	989805662561 7, 10
989805611281 23, 32	989805634991 29	989805653891 26	989805656631 20	989805662571 10
989805611291 23	989805635001 28, 34	989805653901 26	989805656641 20	989805662581 10
989805611301 23, 32	989805635011 28	989805653911 26	989805656681 20	989805662591 10
989805611311 23	989805635021 28	989805653921 26	989805656691 20	989805662601 7, 10
989805611361 24, 33	989805635491 37	989805653931 25	989805656711 20	989805662621 7, 10
989805611371 24	989805635501 37	989805653941 25	989805656721 20	989805662631 10
989805611381 24, 33	989805635511 37	989805653951 25	989805660771 11	989805662641 10

989805662651 10	GB2200X15B 5
989805662661 7, 10	
989805662671 7, 10	IA2200X15B 5
989805662681 10	IN2200X15B 5
989805662691 7, 10	IT2200X21B 5
989805662701 7, 10	
989805662711 7, 10	KR2200X15B 5
989805662721 7, 10	
989805662731 7, 10	M2501A 19
989805662741 10	
989805662751 10	ND2200X15B 5
989805662761 7, 10	
989805662771 7, 10	RU2200X15B 5
989805662781 7, 10	
989805662791 10	TR2200X15B 5
989805662891 17	
989805662901 17	
989805663001 5	
989805663011 5	
989805663041 21	
989805663381 5	
989805663391 5	
989805663401 5	
989805663411 5	
989805663421 5	
989805663431 5	
989805663441 5	
989805663451 5	
989805663461 5	
989805663541 18	
989805664651 18	
989805664661 18	
989805667221 5	
BL2200X15B 5	
BR2200X18B 5	
CA2200X12B 5	
CN2200X17B 5	
CN105235 23	
CN1016695 31	
CN1016697 31	
CN1016980 31	
CN1052535 23	
CN1052536 23	
CN1052547 23	
CN1052548 23	
CN1052555 24	
CN1052556 24	
CN1061719 29	
CN1061728 28	
CN1072625 29	
CN1072627 28, 34	
CN1072629 28	
CN1083147 32	
CN1083148 32	
CN1083149 32	
CN1083150 32	
CN1100393 29, 34	
CN1100394 29	
CN1100395 29	
DE2200X13B 5	
DS2200X11B 5	
EE2200X15B 5	
ES2200X15B 5	
EU2200X15B 5	
EU2200X19 5	
FR2200X14B 5	
FX2200X15B 5	

Alphabetic index

A

active exhalation valves 18
AF531 oro-nasal mask
 adult 28
 pediatric 34
AF541 oro-nasal mask 25
airway adapters, CO₂ sensor 19
arm, support. *See* support arm

B

battery, detachable external 37
brackets, mounting
 CleanClip mask storage system 12
 support arm 12
breathing circuits. *See* patient circuits

C

cables 37
carrying case 38
cart. *See* stand, roll
circuits, patient. *See* patient circuits
CleanClip mask storage system 12
CO₂ sensor and accessories 19
Contour Deluxe nasal mask 31
cylinder holder, O₂ 11

E

exhalation port, swivel 14
exhalation valves, active 18

F

face masks. *See* total face masks, oro-nasal masks, or name of specific mask
filter
 air inlet 37
 bacterial/viral 18
 particulate 37
FiO₂ sensor 19
Fisher & Paykel MR850 humidifier and accessories 20
fittings, O₂ 9
flex arm. *See* support arm
flow sensor 18
full face masks. *See* oro-nasal masks or name of specific mask

H

hanger, tubing 12
hoses, O₂ 9
humidifiers 20
 Fisher & Paykel MR850 20
 WILMed AIRcon 21

I

idle mask storage bracket 12

M

manuals, technical 10, 38
masks. *See* patient interfaces or name of specific mask
mounting brackets. *See* brackets, mounting
MR850 humidifier. *See* Fisher & Paykel MR850 humidifier and accessories

N

nasal masks. *See also* name of specific mask
 adult 32
 pediatric 35

O

O₂ cylinder holder. *See* cylinder holder, O₂
O₂ fittings 9
O₂ hoses 9
O₂ manifold/transport kit 11
O₂ sensor 19
operator replacement parts 37
oro-nasal masks 25. *See also* name of specific mask

P

patient circuits 14–19
patient interfaces 22–32
 AF531 oro-nasal mask 28, 34
 AF541 oro-nasal mask 25
 Contour Deluxe nasal mask 31
 nasal masks
 adult 31
 pediatric 35
 oro-nasal masks
 adult 25
 pediatric 32
 PerformaTrak oro-nasal mask
 single-use 30
 PerforMax total face mask
 reusable, adult 24
 reusable, pediatric 33
 single-use, adult 23
 single-use, pediatric 32
 PN841 pediatric nasal mask 35
 total face masks
 adult 23
 pediatric 32
 PerformaTrak nasal mask 31
 PerformaTrak oro-nasal mask 30
 single-use 30
 PerforMax total face mask
 reusable
 adult 24
 pediatric 33
 single-use
 adult 23
 pediatric 32
 PN841 pediatric nasal mask 35
power cords 8
pulse oximeter and accessories 19

R

Remote Alarm 36
roll stand 11

S

sensor
 CO₂ 19
 FiO₂ 19
 flow 18
service manual 38
small product roll stand (SPRS-2) conversion kit 11

support arm 12
swivel exhalation port 14

T

technical manuals 10
test lung 38
total face masks
 adult 23
 pediatric 32
transport kit, O₂ 11
Trilogy Remote Alarm 36
trolley. *See* stand, roll
tubing circuits. *See* patient circuits
tubing hanger 12

U

universal stand. *See*
user manuals 10

V

valves, exhalation, active 18
ventilator circuits. *See* patient circuits

W

water bag holders 13
WILMed AIRcon humidifier 21





Accessory guide



Table of contents

3	Carry case, mounts and battery
4	Roll stand
5	Mouthpiece ventilation
7	Circuits and circuit accessories
9	Humidification
9	Exhalation valves
10	Electronic flow sensors
11	Trach adapters and connectors
11	Filters
12	Oxygen accessories
12	SpO ₂ accessories
14	CO ₂ accessories
14	Cables and other electronic accessories
15	Nurse call cables

Carry case, mounts and battery

Experience complete mobility

Trilogy Evo is designed to transition with patients in changing environments and conditions. With Trilogy Evo’s in-use bag, rollstand and wheelchair mounts, and hot-swappable batteries, patients have options to help enable exceptional mobility and freedom.

Carrying cases

Part number	Description
1133930	Trilogy Evo in-use case
1134428	Trilogy Evo travel bag



Trilogy Evo in-use case
(1133930)



Trilogy Evo travel bag
(1134428)



Wheelchair mounting kit
(includes mounting plate)
(1134633)



Stand-alone mounting plate
(1144668)

Wheelchair accessories

Part number	Description
1134633	Wheelchair mounting kit (includes mounting plate)
1144668	Stand-alone mounting plate (for roll stand and/or wheelchair)

Trilogy Evo detachable battery (1127889)

A fully-charged, detachable battery will supply at least 7.5 hours of usage under normal usage conditions.*
Hot-swappable on the go.

Detachable battery accessories

Part number	Description
1127889	Trilogy Evo detachable battery



*AC mode, active flow circuit, PEEP of 3 cmH₂O and Vt 800 ml

Roll stand

Roll stand accessories

Part number	Description
1134429	Trilogy Evo Roll stand
332497	Circuit support arm, three-section (non-EU)
1148492	Circuit support arm, three-section
311107-10	Tubing hanger, single limb, 22 mm (10/pack)
1003661	Tubing hanger, dual limb, 22 mm
1009753	Mounting kit, F&P humidifier with water bag holder
1145471	Roll stand conversion kit
1002230	Roll stand clamp for humidifier
1052863	Roll stand bracket for water bag pole, C-clamp style
1002506	Water bag pole



Roll stand conversion kit
(1145471)

Trilogy Evo Roll stand (1134429) includes a mounting plate kit, basket, handle, attachment part for the circuit support arm/water bag pole, humidifier mount and oxygen tank holder.

Mounting kit F&P (1009753) includes a roll stand clamp (1002230), a water bag pole bracket and a water bag pole (1002506).



332497 (non-EU)
or 1148492

311107-10

1002506

1052863

Mouthpiece ventilation

Giving patients freedom and flexibility

Our mouthpiece ventilation and circuit support system help ventilation patients breathe on demand.



Mouthpiece ventilation (MPV)

A kiss® trigger with signal flow technology detects when a patient engages and disengages from the mouthpiece to deliver on-demand ventilation. Combine mouthpiece ventilation with an optional MPV support system to enhance patients' ease of use.

MPV circuit support system (1102862)

This interlocking support system combines with Trilogy's breathing circuit to provide easy usage for patients. The support system can be attached to various surfaces in many configurations with the use of a clamp designed for use on flat or rounded surfaces. The interlocking support circuit can be adjusted to enhance comfort and accessibility.

Each system includes a clamp, 2' bendable tube holder and one MPV disposable circuit.

MPV disposable circuit (1102866)

Each system contains a bacteria filter, 6' (15 mm) tube, miniature flex tube, angled mouthpiece, straw mouthpiece and all necessary adapters.

Part number	Description	Box quantity
1102866	MPV disposable circuit	10/pack
1118840	MPV replacement straw kit	10/pack
FC06566	Angled replacement mouthpiece, 22 mm	1/pack
1102862	MPV circuit support system	1/pack

A side-profile photograph of a man with short grey hair sitting in a black motorized wheelchair. He is wearing a dark blue and grey striped long-sleeved shirt. A medical device, a portable ventilator, is mounted on the back of the wheelchair. A clear plastic corrugated tube connects the device to a mask that is positioned over the man's mouth and nose. The background is a blurred outdoor setting with a glass railing and some greenery.

MPV replacement straw kit
(1118840)

MPV circuit support system
(1102862)

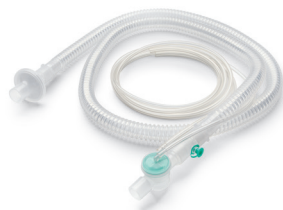
Circuits and circuit accessories

For every patient and every need

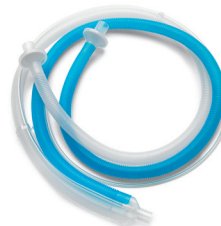
Our family of circuits is designed to deliver quality respiratory care to pediatric and adult patients with a wide variety of needs.



(15mm 1132339)
(22mm 1132340)



(15mm 1132343)
(22mm 1132344)



(15mm 1127307)
(22mm 1127306)

Disposable Non-Heated Circuits

Part number	Description	Box quantity
1132339	15 mm passive circuit w/ swivel exhalation, non-heated, smooth bore	10/pack
1132340	22 mm passive circuit w/ swivel exhalation, non-heated, smooth bore	10/pack
1132343	15 mm active circuit w/ disposable AEV, non-heated, smooth bore	10/pack
1132344	22 mm active circuit w/ disposable AEV, non-heated, smooth bore	10/pack
1127307	15 mm dual limb circuit, non-heated	10/pack
1127306	22 mm dual limb circuit, non-heated	10/pack



(15mm 1132341)
(22mm 1132342)



(15mm 1132345)
(22mm 1132346)



(15mm 1127304)*
(22mm 1127303)*

Disposable Heated Circuits

Part number	Description	Box quantity
1132341	15 mm passive circuit w/ swivel exhalation port, heated wire	10/pack
1132342	22 mm passive circuit w/ swivel exhalation port, heated wire	10/pack
1132345	15 mm active circuit w/ disposable AEV, heated wire	10/pack
1132346	22 mm active circuit w/ disposable AEV, heated wire	10/pack
1127304*	15 mm dual limb circuit, heated wire, humidifier chamber included	10/pack
1127303*	22 mm dual limb circuit, heated wire, humidifier chamber included	10/pack

*Includes chamber



Fisher & Paykel 900MR810 reusable circuit (1141549)



RT202 adult single limb heated circuit kit (1141426)



RT265 Fisher & Paykel infant dual limb (1141548)

Fisher & Paykel Circuits

Part number	Description	Box quantity
1141549	F&P 900MR810 Evatherm circuit smooth single limb adult reusable	10/pack
1141426	F&P RT202 adult insp Htd w/autoF chamber for MR850 and HC550	10/pack
1141548	F&P RT265 infant Evaqua 2 dual limb Htd w/autoF chamber and P line circuit for MR850	10/pack
1120221	F&P RT111 adult dual limb Htd w/P line for MR850	10/pack
1144701	F&P RT385 dual limb adult breathing circuit kit w/ Evaqua 2 technology and pressure line	10/pack

Humidification

Have more control over the humidity level

HMEs

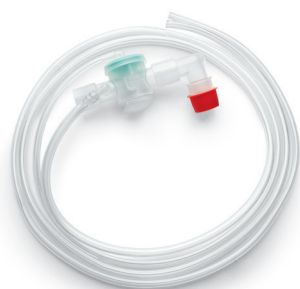
Part number	Description	Box quantity
C06274	Airlife, adult	1/pack



Airlife, adult (C06274)

Exhalation valves

Comfort, ease and accessibility



Disposable active exhalation valve (1131661 10/pack)



New Disposable swivel passive exhalation port (1139909 10/pack)



Dual limb AEV (1139436 10/pack)
(1132110 1/pack)



Whisper swivel II (332113)

Disposable exhalation valves

Part number	Description	Box quantity
1131661	Disposable active exhalation valve	10/pack
1139909	Disposable swivel passive exhalation port New	10/pack

Reusable exhalation valves

Part number	Description	Box quantity
1139436	Dual Limb AEV	10/pack
1132110	Dual Limb AEV	1/pack
332113	Whisper swivel II packaged	1/pack
1139912	Dual Limb AEV Diaphragm replacement	10/pack



Electronic flow sensors

Accurate and innovative



Electronic flow sensor accessory with cable, adult/ped (1132106)



Electronic flow sensor cable (1134592)



Electronic flow sensor, adult and infant (1134711) (1134712)



Disposable electronic flow sensor, adult and infant (1146497) (1146558)

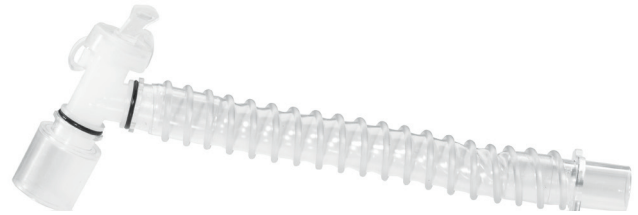
Part number	Description
1132106	Electronic flow sensor accessory with cable, adult/ped
1132107	Electronic flow sensor accessory with cable, ped/infant
1134592	Electronic flow sensor cable
1134711	Electronic flow sensor accessory, adult/ped
1134712	Electronic flow sensor accessory, ped/infant
1146497	Disposable electronic flow sensor, adult/ped
1146558	Disposable electronic flow sensor, ped/infant

Trach adapters and connectors

Customized care



Flexible trach adapter with 22 mm connection (1073902/pack)
Connects to exhalation ports used with the passive circuit.



Flexible trach adapter with 15 mm connection (1073863 10/pack)
Connects to the flow sensor of the active exhalation valve.

Part number	Description	Box quantity
1073902	Flexible trach adapter with 22 mm connection	10/pack
1073863	Flexible trach adapter with 15 mm connection	10/pack
C06334	Connector 22 mm x 22 mm ID, female	1/pack
1044191	Adapter 22 mm x 15 mm OD	1/pack
1044186	Adapter 22 mm x 22 mm OD	1/pack



Connector 22 mm x 22 mm ID, female (C06334)



Adapter 22 mm x 15 mm OD (1044191)

Filters

Cleaner air with each breath



Air Inlet Foam Filter (1134591 10/pack)



Particulate filter (1134430 10/pack)



Bacterial/viral filter (1147018 10/pack)



Bacterial filter (342077 10/pack)

Part number	Description	Box quantity
1134591	Air inlet foam filter	10/pack
1134430	Particulate filter	10/pack
1147018	Bacterial/viral filter	10/pack
342077	Bacterial filter	10/pack

Oxygen accessories



FiO₂ sensor assembly
(1134668)



Oxygen inlet adapter
(1040390)

Oxygen accessories

Part number	Description	Box quantity
1134668	FiO ₂ sensor assembly	1/pack
1040390	Oxygen inlet adapter	2/pack

SpO₂ accessories



External pulse oximeter
(Nonin XPOD - USB cable)
(1129640)



Pulse oximeter sensor,
adult (1070692),
pediatric (1070693),
infant (1070694)



Re-usable adult SpO₂ sensor
(Nonin) - pediatric (936P),
adult (936)

Nonin SpO₂ accessories

Part number	Description	Box quantity
1129640	External pulse oximeter (Nonin XPOD - USB cable)	1/pack
1070692	Pulse oximeter sensor, adult	24/pack
1070693	Pulse oximeter sensor, pediatric	24/pack
1070694	Pulse oximeter sensor, infant	24/pack
936P	Re-usable ped SpO ₂ sensor (Nonin)	1/pack
936	Re-usable adult SpO ₂ sensor (Nonin)	1/pack

SpO₂ accessories

Masimo SpO₂ accessories

Part number	Description	Box quantity
1145408	External pulse oximeter (Masimo USB Cable)	1/pack
1065303	Pulse oximeter sensor, adult	20/pack
1065304	Pulse oximeter sensor, pediatric	20/pack
1065305	Pulse oximeter sensor, infant	20/pack
1065306	Pulse oximeter sensor, neonatal	20/pack
1072878	Re-usable ped finger clip SpO ₂ sensor (Masimo)	1/pack
1081516	Re-usable adult soft SpO ₂ sensor (Masimo)	1/pack
1081984	Re-usable adult finger clip SpO ₂ sensor (Masimo)	1/pack
1081985	Re-usable multisite SpO ₂ sensor (Masimo)	1/pack



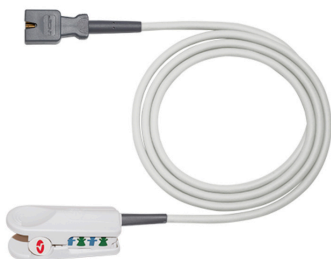
External pulse oximeter
(Masimo USB cable)
(1145408)



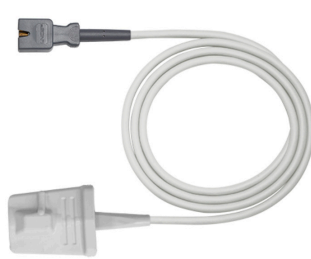
Pulse oximeter sensor, neonatal
(1065306)



Re-usable multisite SpO₂ sensor
(Masimo) (1081985)



Re-usable ped finger clip SpO₂ sensor
(Masimo) (1072878)



Re-usable adult soft SpO₂ sensor
(Masimo) (1081516)



Re-usable adult finger clip SpO₂ sensor
(Masimo) (1081984)

CO₂ accessories



Capnostat airway adaptor
(6312-00) (6063-00)



Capnostat USB adaptor
(1127404)



Capnostat cable
(M2501A)

CO₂ accessories

Part number	Description	Box quantity
M2501A	Philips medical CAPNOSTAT 5, M2501A	1/pack
6312-00	SPU infant airway adapter, Philips	10/pack
6063-00	SPU adult airway adapter, Philips	10/pack
1127404	USB to EtCO ₂ adapter cable	1/pack

Note: Capnostat and airway adapters are only available through Philips Hospital Respiratory Care.

Cables and other electronic accessories



Cable, 12/24V battery with
terminals (1127401)



Cable, 12/24V battery with
car adaptor (1127402)



Power cord, straight C7
end - 8ft



Cable, isolated, USB to DB9
(1127405)

Cable and electronic accessories

Part number	Description
1127401	Cable, 12/24V battery with terminals
1127402	Cable, 12/24V battery with car adaptor
1127405	Cable, isolated, USB to DB9

Trilogy EVO power cords and supplies

Part number	Description
1133284	Power cord, straight C7-End, 8-ft, Europe
1133286	Power cord, straight C7-End, 8-ft, Australia
1133287	Power cord, straight C7-End, 8-ft, USA/Canada
1133470	Power cord, straight C7-End, 4m, USA/Canada
1133468	Power cord, straight C7-End, 8-ft, Brazil
1133469	Power cord, straight C7-End, 8-ft, China
1133471	Power cord, straight C7-End, 8-ft, UK
1133285	Power cord, straight C7-End, 8-ft, Japan
1133472	Power cord, straight C7-End, 8-ft, India
1136845	Power cord, straight C7-End, 8-ft, Argentina
1074237	Power cord, straight C7-End, 8-ft, Korea
1134347	Trilogy Evo power cord clamp

Nurse call cables

Part number	Description
1080247	RJ9 to 0.25" nurse call cable alarm, closed
1080248	RJ9 to 0.25" nurse call cable alarm, open
1080249	RJ9 nurse call cable assembly adapter, open end

Test lung

Part number	Description
1021671	Test lung



Test lung (1021671)



Empower you and your team

- Download, analyze and store therapy data based on your needs
- Manage prescription through the use of removeable media

Learn more

Contact your Philips Respironics sales representative about Care Orchestrator and Care Orchestrator Essence at 1-800-345-6443.





 Respiration Inc.
1001 Murry Ridge Lane
Murrysville, PA 15668 USA

 Respiration Deutschland GmbH & Co. KG
Gewerbestrasse 17
82211 Herrsching.



 1143742

1143742 R04
KPG 05/12/2021